



# ElegantBook：优美的 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 书籍模板

## ElegantL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 经典之作

作者：Ethan Deng & Liam Huang & syvshc & sikouhjw & Osbert Wang

组织：ElegantL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Program

时间：2022/12/31

版本：4.5

自定义：信息



ElegantL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Program

注意：本模板自 2023 年 1 月 1 日开始，不再更新和维护！

## Dedication

# 目录

<b>第一部分 语法</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>第一章 拼写与语音</b>	<b>2</b>
1.1 书写系统和读音 . . . . .	2
1.2 音节和重音 . . . . .	4
<b>第二章 动词与变位法</b>	<b>6</b>
2.1 动词的概述 . . . . .	6
2.2 强动词的变位法 . . . . .	7
2.2.1 强动词的主动词尾 . . . . .	8
2.2.2 强动词的中动词尾 . . . . .	10
2.2.3 第一强变位法 . . . . .	12
2.2.4 第二强变位法 . . . . .	13
2.2.5 第三强变位法 . . . . .	15
2.2.6 第四强变位法 . . . . .	16
2.2.7 第五强变位法 . . . . .	18
2.2.8 第六强变位法 . . . . .	22
2.2.9 第七强变位法 . . . . .	24
2.3 弱动词的变位法 . . . . .	28
2.3.1 弱动词的主动词尾 . . . . .	29
2.3.2 弱动词的中动词尾 . . . . .	30
2.3.3 第一弱变位法 . . . . .	32
2.3.4 第二弱变位法 . . . . .	36
2.3.5 第三弱变位法 . . . . .	38
2.4 过去-现在混合动词 . . . . .	40
2.5 不规则动词 . . . . .	44
<b>第三章 形容词与变格法</b>	<b>46</b>
3.1 形容词的概述 . . . . .	46
3.2 形容词的强变格法 . . . . .	47
3.3 形容词的弱变格法 . . . . .	49
3.4 形容词的比较级和最高级 . . . . .	50
3.5 不规则形容词 . . . . .	52
3.6 副词 . . . . .	54
3.6.1 副词的构成 . . . . .	54
3.6.2 肯定副词与否定副词 . . . . .	55
3.6.3 方位性副词 . . . . .	55
3.6.4 副词的比较级和最高级 . . . . .	55
3.7 分词 . . . . .	56
3.7.1 现在分词 . . . . .	56
3.7.2 过去分词 . . . . .	56

<b>第四章 代词</b>	<b>59</b>
4.1 人称代词 . . . . .	59
4.2 物主代词 . . . . .	60
4.3 指示代词 . . . . .	62
4.4 关系代词 . . . . .	63
4.5 疑问代词 . . . . .	63
4.6 不定代词 . . . . .	65
<b>第五章 数词</b>	<b>69</b>
5.1 基数词与序数词 . . . . .	69
5.1.1 数词的变形 . . . . .	70
<b>第六章 介词</b>	<b>72</b>
6.1 介词的概述 . . . . .	72
6.2 介词的补语 . . . . .	72
6.2.1 支配宾格的介词 . . . . .	72
6.2.2 支配与格的介词 . . . . .	73
6.2.3 支配属格的介词 . . . . .	76
6.2.4 支配与格和宾格的介词 . . . . .	77
6.2.5 其他接多个格的介词 . . . . .	82
6.2.6 介词的从句补语 . . . . .	82
6.3 省略补语的介词用法 . . . . .	83
<b>第二部分 读本</b>	<b>84</b>
<b>第一章 诗体埃达选读</b>	<b>85</b>
1.1 女巫的预言 (Völuspá) 选读 . . . . .	85
1.2 高人的箴言 (Hávamál) 选读 . . . . .	89
<b>第二章 巴德尔之死</b>	<b>94</b>
2.1 巴德尔之梦 (Baldrs draumar) 选读 . . . . .	94
2.2 欺骗古洛菲 (Gylfaginning) 选读 . . . . .	99
<b>第三章 冰岛人萨迦选读</b>	<b>107</b>
3.1 尼亚尔萨迦 (Njáls saga) 选读 . . . . .	107
3.2 格雷蒂尔萨迦 (Grettis saga) 选读 . . . . .	113
3.3 埃吉尔萨迦 (Egils saga) 选读 . . . . .	117
<b>第四章 第一文法论 (Fyrsta Málfræðiritgerðin)</b>	<b>133</b>
4.1 引言 . . . . .	133
4.2 元音论 . . . . .	135
4.3 辅音论 . . . . .	144
<b>第五章 中世纪手稿选读</b>	<b>154</b>
5.1 基础知识 . . . . .	154
5.1.1 字体 . . . . .	154
5.1.2 合体字 . . . . .	155

---

5.1.3 速写记号 . . . . .	155
5.1.4 正字法 . . . . .	155
5.2 例文 . . . . .	156
<b>第六章 冰岛历史选读</b>	<b>160</b>
6.1 移民书（Landnámabók）选读 . . . . .	160
6.2 冰岛人之书（Íslendingabók）选读 . . . . .	168
<b>索    引</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>参考文献</b>	<b>178</b>

第一部分

语法

# 第一章 拼写与语音

## 章节要点

- 古诺尔斯语的两种书写系统
- 音节划分规则
- 古诺尔斯语字母的音值及单词拼读
- 古诺尔斯语的音变

### 1.1 书写系统和读音

古诺尔斯语主要使用两种字母书写。其一是较早期的卢恩字母（Rune），后来则采用拉丁字母。最早发现的卢恩文字可追溯到公元 2 世纪。此时的古诺尔斯语尚处在非常原始的时期，故称为原始诺尔斯语。卢恩一词在日耳曼语中的意思是“秘密”，据神话记载，奥丁曾将自身作为祭品倒挂在世界之树上，在历经九夜的折磨后终于拾起了卢恩文字。这个神话的象征是奥丁通过苦行获得了智慧和奥义，因而卢恩的含义远不止一种书写系统那么简单。维京人认为卢恩可以用于占卜，到了中世纪晚期，北欧的文化已经受到了严重的基督教影响，其文字大量被拉丁化，卢恩字母丧失了日常沟通的功能，反而更加往神秘学的方向发展。

卢恩文字最初有 24 个，这套字母表称之为 Elder Futhark，futhark 是前六个字母的读音，和 alphabet 的含义（希腊字母表的前两个字母）类似。后来卢恩字母也发展出了 16 个字母的版本，称为 Younger Futhark.

Elder Futhark

ᚠ	ᚢ	ᚦ	ᚩ	ᚱ	ᚲ	ጀ	ᚴ	ᚷ	ᚹ	ᚻ	ᚵ	ᚶ	ᚷ	ᚸ	ᚺ	ᚻ	ᚻ	ᚻ	ᚻ	ᚻ	ᚻ	ᚻ	ᚻ
f	u	p	a	r	k	w	h	n	i	j	p	ī	z	s	t	b	e	m	l	ŋ	d	o	

Younger Futhark

ᚠ	ᚢ	ᚦ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ	ጀ
f/v	u/v/w, y, o, ø	p, ð a, o, æ	r	k, g, ŋ	h	n	e	a, æ, e	R	s	t, d	b, p	m	l									

卢恩文字或许有非常隐秘的作用，但这不在本书的讨论范围内。对于大部分中世纪的手稿而言，古诺尔斯语已经用上了我们熟悉的拉丁字母。

除了有最常见的 26 个字母外，古诺尔斯语的字母表中还包括几个特殊的辅音字母、元音字母和长音字母。这里我们只谈标准正字法下的字母，关于原始手稿中更复杂的情况，将在读本中进一步探索。

小写字母	大写字母	发音（国际音标）	环境
á	Á	ɔ:	
a	A	ɑ	
b	B	b	
c	C	k	
d	D	d	
ð	Ð	ð	
é	É	e:	
e	E	e	
f	F	(1) f (2) v	词首 除词首外的其他位置
g	G	(1) g (2) x (3) ɣ	词首, 双写时, 或在 <gn> 中 在 <gs> 或 <gt> 中 在 <gh> 中
h	H	h	
í	Í	i:	
i	I	i	
j	J	j	
k	K	(1)k (2)x	除了下面的情况 在 <ks> 或 <kt> 中
l	L	l	
m	M	m	
n	N	n	
ó	Ó	o:	
o	O	o	
p	P	(1) p (2) f	除了下面的情况 <ps> 或 <pt> 中
q	Q	k	总和 u 一起出现, qu 和 kv 是一样的
r	R	r	
s	S	s	
t	T	t	
ú	Ú	u:	
u	U	u	
v	V	v	
w	W	w	
x	X	xs	
ý	Ý	y:	
y	Y	y	
z	Z	ts	极少出现, 主要是-t/-d/-ð 和-s 的合写
þ	Þ	θ	
æ	Æ	ɛ:	
ɸ	ɸ	ɔ:	
ø	Ø	ɔ	
œ	Œ	ø:	

总体来说，古诺尔斯语有 9 个对立的基本元音音素，每个元音都有一个对应地长音。要构成长音，只需要在短音字母上添加锐音符 ‘。但有 3 个例外：

1. a 的长音 á，在 12 世纪的古诺尔斯语已经与 ø 合流，所以当时的音系中并没有一个长的 a /a:/。
2. æ 总是长元音，没有短元音与之对应<sup>1</sup>
3. ø 的长元音是 œ，一般不写 †ø 这种字母（但手稿中也有记载）。

这些音素，以及对应的字母在下表中标出，后面用尖括号 <> 标出的是这个元音的写法。关于前元音、后元音等术语，不熟悉的读者可以参照 1.3 节中关于元音性质的描述。

前元音				后元音	
	非圆唇	圆唇		非圆唇	圆唇
高元音	i <i>	i: <í>	y <y>	y: <ý>	u <u>
中元音	e <e>	e: <é>	ø <ø>	ø: <œ>	o <o>
低元音	ɛ	ɛ: <æ>		a <a>	ɔ <q>
				\	ɔ: <ó>

古诺尔斯语还有 3 个双元音/ei/, /ɔu/, /øy/ 拼作 <ei>, <au>, <ey>.

低元音/ɛ/只出现在上述的双元音中。

古诺尔斯语的辅音比较规则，少数的例外一般表现为：

s/t 之前的塞音会变成对应发音部位的清擦音。<sup>2</sup>

古诺尔斯语的辅音也成对出现，双辅音与单辅音的区别仅在于前者的音值更长一些。j 和 v 是半元音，它们的性质分别与 i 和 u 相似，在古诺尔斯语中经常发生音变（见 1.4.3）。

## 1.2 音节和重音

音节是构成语音序列的单位，也是语音中最自然的语音结构单位。英文中的 water 就分为 wa- 和 -ter 两个音节。以英语为母语的人在拼读这个词的时候可能在 t 前停顿，但不可能在 t 后停顿，把 water 读成 wat’er 这样的形式。不同语言常有不同的音节划分规则，音节的类型也影响语言的韵律甚至是形态。

包括古诺尔斯语在内的大多数早期日耳曼语有复杂的音节划分模式，目前尚无一个统一的理论能够解释这些语言中的所有现象。语言学家主要从两个方面推测古代语言的音节划分，一是根据诗歌的规则；二是通过观察手稿中单词的记法。特别地，当一个单词出现在一行的末尾而恰好写不下时，这个词如何被拆分能够很好地反映它的音节情况。

就语法而言，古诺尔斯语的音节类型会影响部分动词（见 3.3.3）和名词（见 2.2.2 ja-词干名词）的变形，因此掌握音节的划分十分重要。有两种音节划分的方法可供参考，一种称为传统式，另一种称为格律式。如果读者之前没有接触过音韵学的知识，用传统式的划分已经可以很好地解决古诺尔斯语的问题（但通常这种方式和其他语言的音节划分不一样）。格律式划分和希腊语、拉丁语等划分一致，也更偏向于现代语音学的划分方法，因此介绍起来相对复杂些。

<sup>1</sup> 更早期的古诺尔斯语实际上有短的/ɛ/，这是 a 发生 i- 变异（参见 1.3）的结果。

<sup>2</sup> 这个规律是原始语发生日耳曼语擦音定律（Germanic spirant law）的残留。擦音定律和格林定律、维尔纳定律密切相关，涉及较为复杂的历史音变，请有兴趣的读者自查。

## 传统式

古诺尔斯语中有许多单音节词，例如 á, til, at, rann. 单音节词只有一个元音，可以是长元音也可以是短元音。在多音节词中，如果这个词不是合成词，那么根据元音的位置划分音节（即非词首音节总以元音开头），例如 far-a, kall-a, gorð-um, gam-all-a, hundr-að-a。在合成词中，根据组词的语素划分音节，例如 vápn-lauss (< vápn + lauss, weapon-less), vík-ing-a-hófð-ing-i (< víkinga + hófðingi, Viking's chieftain)。由于元音和辅音有长短之分，音节也被分成以下四类：

	种类	描述	举例
1	短	短元音 + 短辅音	bað
2	长	短元音 + 辅音簇	rann, qnd
3	长	长元音 + 短辅音/零辅音	hús, fé, gnúa
4	加长	长元音 + 辅音簇	nótt, blástr

辅音簇（Consonant cluster）的意思是多个辅音的集合。

## 格律式

格律式的划分方法与大多数音系学的理论一致，一个音节一般包括以下 3 个结构：

### 1. 音节首 (Onset)

音节首总是由辅音充当。音节首可以是单辅音，也可以是多个辅音（辅音簇）。古诺尔斯语有些单音节词以元音开头，这时没有音节首。

### 2. 音节核 (Nucleus)

音节核是一个响音，即可以是元音或者成音节的辅音。这是大多数语言的必有成分。

### 3. 音节尾 (Coda)

由辅音充当，没有音节尾的音节是开音节，反之是闭音节。

## 第二章 动词与变位法

### 章节要点

- 古诺尔斯语的动词系统
- 各类动词的变位法
- 动词的范畴
- 不规则动词
- 动词词干的分类

### 2.1 动词的概述

和我们已经介绍过的名词一样，动词也有“强动词”和“弱动词”两种类型（或称“强变化”和“弱变化”动词）。不过需要注意，动词的强弱和名词的强弱指的不是同一个东西。简单来说，强动词可以理解为以元音交替（Ablaut）为特征的“不规则动词”（这里的不规则是借用英语的概念来说的，读者通过下文不难发现，这些变化实际上遵守一定的规律），这些动词的词根元音随时态和人称的变化而改变；对应地，弱动词可以类比为英语的规则动词，这些动词的词根元音在变形过程中保持不变，除非其受到人称词尾中的 i-/u- 变异的影响。和名词类似，动词的强弱也只有类型学上的意义，它们完全可以用“I型动词”和“II型动词”这样的术语来代替。

我们在这里简单介绍一下元音交替的来历。元音交替是原始印欧语的重要特征，它可用于同根词的进一步变形。根据历史比较语言学的发现，原始印欧语的词根结构通常是 \*CeC，即两个辅音之间包含一个元音 \*e。从这个词根出发，将 \*e 变成其他元音（如 \*o, \*ē, \*ō 等）甚至使其完全脱落，以此改变词意的过程就是元音交替。更一般地来说，元音交替不仅发生在词根中，在许多后缀里也有相似的现象，因此，这个过程对印欧语的形态学具有很大的意义：在名词中，元音交替可以区分变格；在动词中它则可以区分变位。参考古希腊语中 πατήρ ‘father’ 的元音交替：

古希腊语	格	元音
πα-τέρ-α	pa-tér-a	单数宾格 短 e
πα-τήρ	pa-tér	单数主格 长 e
πα-τρ-ός	pa-tr-ós	单数属格 无元音

在动词中，元音交替的现象完好地保留在梵语等更早的语言（梵语成文时期比古诺尔斯语早十余个世纪）中。在英语中，能体现元音交替是一些所谓的不规则动词：

ride rode ridden

sing sang sung

fly flew flown

但是，元音交替作为一种非常古老的构词方法，在原始日耳曼语从原始印欧语分离出来的时候，已经逐渐被舍弃了，因此原始日耳曼语采用了新的方法来衍生动词，这就是“弱变化”规则（英文对应-ed 式规则动词）。继承于原始印欧语的更古老的动词仍然保留了强变化规则，不过随着时间的推移，强变化愈发被人遗忘，许多历史上的强动词也归入弱动词之中。

#### 语法范畴

古诺尔斯语动词根据人称、时态、语态、语气发生屈折。这些与词形变化相关的语法意义的概括就是语法范畴。古诺尔斯语的动词系统具有如下的范畴：

**三种人称 (Person)**: 第一、第二和第三人称。在每个人称中，还区分单数和复数。更古老的日耳曼语中出现的双数形式也在古诺尔斯语中消失。

**两种时态 (Tense)**: 现在 (Present) 和过去 (Preterite)。读者最好把二者理解为过去和非过去，因为简单来说，现在时既支配现在的动作，也支配未来的动作。相同地，古诺尔斯语的过去式同样可以和英语的若干与过去有关的时态有关。有英语基础的读者会经常联想到英语中复杂的时态系统，但事实上，这些表达严格来说叫作“体”或“体貌” (Aspect)，例如英语中的完成时实际上是一种体，而非时态。时态用来区分动词在时间尺度上的位置；体貌则描述关于该动作的开始、持续、完成或重复等方面的情况，但不涉及该动作发生的时间。当然，许多动词的表达既涉及时态又涉及体貌，例如英语中的现在完成时描述了完成体，但隐含的意思是一个现在的状态。因此在许多印欧语中，这个时态（暂且仍粗略地使用这个不太准确的术语）采取动词现在时的词干并加上一些派生后缀。在古诺尔斯语中，表达体态的方法是添加助动词，而非词形屈折。

**两种语态 (Voice)**: 主动 (Active) 和中动 (Middle/Mediopassive)。中动态在古诺尔斯语中一方面有一定被动的含义，另一方面还表达一些反身的动作，详见（待完成）

**三种语气 (Mood)**: 直陈 (Indicative)，虚拟 (Subjunctive)，祈使 (Imperative)。直陈语气表示一般地陈述；虚拟语气主要表示可能发生但尚未发生的动作或愿望；祈使语气表示命令。

## 2.2 强动词的变位法

强动词的特征是元音交替。如2.1所述，元音的交替仍然保留在英语中，例如 sing-sang-sung-song。词干部分 s-**ng** 加上 i 得现在时，加 a 得过去式，加 u 得过去分词，加 o 得衍生的名词。但不是每个动词的元音交替模式都是一致的，比如 hang-hung-hung，它不仅采取不同的元音添加，也没有对应的衍生名词。

在古诺尔斯语中，根据元音交替的模式（例如上面的 i-a-u 和 a-u-u）可以将强动词分为七类。前六类动词比较规则，第七类动词则是一些历史上不太规则的动词的残留。接下来，为了描述这些强动词元音交替的模式，我们需要选择动词的一些形式作为基础。在上面英语的例子中，我们使用现在时、过去时和过去分词（英语动词的人称范畴基本退化了，因此我们没有指明人称）的词形就可以描述出 i-a-u 这套元音交替模式。在古诺尔斯语中，也有类似的情况。

在进一步了解词形的变化，必须首先明确古诺尔斯语动词的最基本形式：不定式。不定式在句法上属于非限定动词的一种，即这种动词还没有人称、时态等的“限定”，但我们在这一章从形态学角度谈到的不定式只是动词词形的一种形式。不定式通常很简单，未经过变形，并能引导我们推断出动词的其他形式。有时情况下，这种基本的形式也被称为词典形 (Dictionary form)，即词典上提供的基本形态。古诺尔斯语的不定式可以和以下几种语言的“不定式”<sup>1</sup>类比：拉丁语 portare，德语 liben，日语考える。动词变化丰富的语言基本都有不定式的标记，用蓝色字体标出，蓝色之外的部分可以认为是词干。就古诺尔斯语而言，不定式的标记是-a，-a 前面的部分是词干。词干有时以半元音-j-或者-v-结尾，半元音的出现（特别是-j-）有时会引起进一步的音变（西弗斯定律的作用，见??）。

下面，我们可以从前六类动词的各个形态中初步发现元音交替的模式。参考 bíta ‘bite’，skjóta ‘shoot’，bresta ‘burst’，bera ‘bear, carry’，reka ‘drive’，fara ‘go/fare’ 的变位：

类	不定式	三单现在时	三单过去时	三复过去时	三单过去虚拟式	过去分词
I	bíta	bítr	beit	bitu	biti	bitinn
II	skjóta	skytr	skaut	skutu	skyti	skotinn
III	bresta	brestr	brast	brustu	brysti	brostinn
IV	bera	berr	bar	báru	bæri	borinn
V	reka	rekr	rak	ráku	ræki	rekinn

<sup>1</sup> 词典形是形态学的概念，而不定式是句法的概念。有许多语言的词典形就是属于非限定动词的不定式，但还有一些语言的词典形是限定动词，例如古希腊语常用第一人称现在时单数式作为词典形，梵语常用第三人称现在时单数式。只要形式简单基本，就可以作为词典形。

类	不定式	三单现在时	三单过去时	三复过去时	三单过去虚拟式	过去分词
VI	fara	ferr	fór	fóru	föri	farinn

通过上表可以发现：

1. 单数现在时的元音要么和不定式一致，要么由它发生 i- 变异得到。
2. 单数过去式的元音是独立的。
3. 复数过去式的元音是独立的。
4. 过去虚拟式的元音由直陈复数过去式的元音 i- 变异得到。
5. 过去分词的元音是独立的。

因此，古诺尔斯语的强动词系统中有四种元音的交替。那么，最少用四个动词形式即可推断出整个变位表的形式，这四个形式称为四个基本元（Principal parts）。这四个基本元在词典上一般选用：

第一基本元：不定式，或词典形；

第二基本元：第三人称单数过去式；

第三基本元：第三人称复数过去式；

第四基本元：过去分词。

有时词典中也额外标记第三人称单数现在时。例如 *bera* 在 Cleasby & Vigfússon 的 An Icelandic-English Dictionary 上就记为：

*BERA, bar, báru, borit, pres. berr*

### 2.2.1 强动词的主动词尾

古诺尔斯语的动词分为主动词尾和中动词尾，主动态动词添加主动词尾，其含义和英文的主动态没有区别。强动词的主动词尾如下所示：

强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	-∅	-a	
2	-r	-ir	-∅
3	-r	-i	
复数现在时			
1	-um	-im	-um
2	-ið	-ið	-ið
3	-a	-i	
单数过去时			
1	-∅	-a	
2	-t	-ir	
3	-∅	-i	
复数过去时			
1	-um	-im	
2	-uð	-ið	

强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
3	-u	-i	

-ø 表示无须添加词尾，表格中的空白指这种形式不存在。这完全体现在动词的祈使式上，只有单复数的现在时第二人称、复数现在时第一人称有祈使式。即祈使式可以用在下面两种情况下：

1. 要求你、你们做，参考英语 ‘do it!';
2. 提议我们做，参考英语 ‘let's do it!'.

在不同时态、数的词尾前，要选取不同的基本元，其变化方式如下：

单数现在直陈式：取不定式词干，如果词干有后元音，则施加 i-变异，加词尾；  
 复数现在直陈式/一切现在虚拟式：取不定式词干，加词尾；  
 单数过去直陈式：取第二基本元词干，加词尾；  
 复数过去直陈式：取第三基本元词干，加词尾；  
 一切过去虚拟式：取第三基本元词干，如果词干有后元音，则施加 i-变异，加词尾；  
 一切祈使式：取不定式词干，加词尾；  
 现在分词：取不定式词干，加词尾；  
 过去分词：取第四基本元词干，加词尾。

注意，某些情况下，非圆唇元音受-um 的影响有可能会发生 u-变异，这是规则音变的结果。用 (1), (2), (3), (4) 分别标记四个基本元，变形方式如下：

强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
<b>单数现在时</b>			
1	(1) + (i-变异) -ø	(1) +-a	
2	(1) + (i-变异) -r	(1) +-ir	(1) +-ø
3	(1) + (i-变异) -r	(1) +-i	
<b>复数现在时</b>			
1	(1) +(u-变异) -um	(1) +-im	(1) +(u-变异) -um
2	(1) +-ið	(1) +-ið	(1) +-ið
3	(1) +-a	(1) +-i	
<b>单数过去时</b>			
1	(2) +-ø	(3) + (i-变异) -a	
2	(2) +-t	(3) + (i-变异) -ir	
3	(2) +-ø	(3) + (i-变异) -i	
<b>复数过去时</b>			
1	(3) +-um	(3) + (i-变异) -im	
2	(3) +-uð	(3) + (i-变异) -ið	
3	(3) +-u	(3) + (i-变异) -i	
不定式	(1) +-a		
现在分词	(1) +-andi		
过去分词	(4) +-inn		

说明：

1. 现在时的单数直陈式中普遍地出现了 i- 变异，但没有任何 i 的痕迹。在其他西日耳曼语中，只有第二人称和第三人称出现了 i- 变异，例如古英语的单数现在时 bēode-bētst-bētst，这表明古诺尔斯语中第一人称的 i- 变异是类推的影响。从中动态（见2.2.2）的词尾来看，第一人称的词尾本是 \*u. 第二人称的 -r 由 -ir 演变而来，第三人称的 -r 也由第二人称类推得到，在卢恩铭文中记载到了早期的 -ip 形式。
2. 绝大多数情况下（除了过去虚拟式）词尾 -ið 不造成 i- 变异。在原始日耳曼语中，这个词尾已经是 \*-id 了，其不能造成 i- 变异应当是受同时态的其他词形的影响。
3. 虚拟式的词尾都是一样的，但现在虚拟式和过去虚拟式由词干的 i- 变异所区分。在原始日耳曼语中，现在时的词尾包含一个双元音 \*ai（相当于比过去式的词尾多了 \*-a-），双元音发生缩略变为 \*e，后来抬升为 i. 这样，例如第二人称现在时词尾 \*-aiz > \*-ez > -ir 就没有 i- 变异条件。在过去式中则不存在这样的双元音，i- 变异正常发生。无疑，类推作用使得过去式中某些本不能造成 i- 变异的词尾也引起了元音变异，这样才能与现在时区分开来。
4. -um 词尾比较规则地引起 u- 变异，这和名词中的情况类似。复数过去直陈式的词尾都含有 -u，理论上都能造成 u- 变异，但是古诺尔斯语中保留下来的复数过去式词干没有可以发生 u- 变异的元音。

## 2.2.2 强动词的中动词尾

动词的语态的概念涉及给定陈述中施事和受事发挥作用的方式。施事是一个动作的逻辑执行者；受事是动作的逻辑接受者，或其对象。施事可能是但也可能不是其分句的语法主语，同样地，受事也可能是也可能不是其分句的直接宾语。当述语处于主动态时，施事也是语法主语；在这种情况下，如果存在受事，它就是直接宾语。例如“狗咬人”一句中，狗既是行动的逻辑执行者，也即施事，同时也是动词“咬”的语法主语。因此，这个表述是主动的；受事“人”，是直接宾语。当述语处于被动态时，受事成为语法主语。同样的句子可以改写为“人被狗咬”。动作的逻辑执行者“狗”仍然是施事。但它不再是语法主语了；而受事“人”，是动词“被咬”的语法主语，使之成为被动陈述。

中动态，正如其名字暗示的那样，处于主动和被动之间，是一种很难准确定义的语态。中动态表达的动作是对施事产生某种影响的，比如简单的反身动作 (I washed myself)，影响个人利益的动作 (I had a sacrifice performed)，或是内在变化 (I called to mind what he said) 还有一些其它差异不大的表达。在古诺尔斯语中，中动态也有被动态的含义。

中动态的表达最初是由主动态增加人称代词。第一人称单数添加 mik ‘me’，其他人称都添加反身代词 sik，参见4.1。后来这个表达固定成了词尾，其形式一般就是在主动态后加 -sk，第一人称单数则是加 -mk，同时进行一些语音变化。比较明显的有：

1. -r + -sk > \*-ssk > -sk
2. -t + -sk > -zk
3. -ð + -sk > -zk

	强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时				
1		-umk	-umk	
2		-sk	-isk	-sk
3		-sk	-isk	
复数现在时				
1		-umsk	-imsk	-umsk
2		-izk	-izk	-izk
3		-ask	-isk	
单数过去时				
1		-umk	-umk	

强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
2	-zk	-isk	
3	-sk	-isk	
复数过去时			
1	-umsk	-imsk	
2	-uzk	-izk	
3	-usk	-isk	

说明：

- 单数第一人称的词尾-umk 反应了原始语直陈式的元音词尾 \*-u，而在主动态中，-u 已经脱落。虚拟式的-umk 可能是从直陈式借来的。
- \*-rsk > -sk 的变化实则有一点可疑，因为 s 在 r 之后本不会发生同化音变，例如 sumar ‘summer’ 的属格 sumars 中 r 和 s 不同化。
- umk 可能会导致前面的前元音发生 u-变异，加上词干后，其变化表如下：

强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	(1) + (u-变异) -umk	(1) + (u-变异) -umk	
2	(1) + (i-变异) -sk	(1) +-isk	(1) +-sk
3	(1) + (i-变异) -sk	(1) +-isk	
复数现在时			
1	(1) +(u-变异) + -umsk	(1) +-imsk	(1) +(u-变异) + -umsk
2	(1) +-izk	(1) +-izk	(1) +-izk
3	(1) +-ask	(1) +-isk	
单数过去时			
1	(3) + (u-变异) -umk	(3) + (i-变异) -umk	
2	(2) +-zk	(3) + (i-变异) -isk	
3	(2) +-sk	(3) + (i-变异) -isk	
复数过去时			
1	(3) + (u-变异) + -um	(3) + (i-变异) -imsk	
2	(3) +-uzk	(3) + (i-变异) -izk	
3	(3) +-usk	(3) + (i-变异) -isk	
不定式	(1) + -ask		
现在分词	(1) + -andisk		
过去分词	(4) + -izk		

说明：

- 第一人称单数直陈过去式用了复数词干。造成这个现象的原因是对词尾成分的误读和重解。由于第一人称单数在主动直陈式中没有词尾，在主动虚拟式中只有词尾-a，中动态词尾-umk 可能被重新理解为-um + -k，而-um 是复数式第一人称的词尾（无论是现在时还是过去时），因此所有的单数第一人称的词干全部采用了复数形式。在现在时中，单复数都采用了同一种词干，因此无法看出任何异常，而在过去时中，单数词干和复数词干不一致，就出现了单数中两种词干的混用。
- 第一人称单数虚拟过去式的-umk 没有造成 u-变异，反而造成了 i-变异。读者应该不难想到，这个 i-变异是从其他过去时类推的结果，用以和现在时进行区分。否则，第一人称的现在时和过去时将无法区分。

### 2.2.3 第一强变位法

古诺尔斯语的每一种强变位法都有自己的特征元音交替模式，第一强变位法的动词最基本的元音交替特征如下：

**i — ei — i — i**

少数不定式词干以-g 结尾的一类强动词 hníga ‘fall’，míga ‘piss’，síga ‘sink’，stíga ‘step’ 的第一或第三人称单数过去式还有另一种形式。这时，元音 i 变为长元音 é 而不是 ei，同时词干结尾的 g 脱去<sup>2</sup>：

stíga > steig, steigt, steig 或 sté, stétt, sté

注意这里变化得到的长元音加词尾-t 时会触发??中的辅音延长音变，因此第二人称单数直陈过去式为 stétt 而不是 †stét.

我们以一类强动词 bíta ‘bite’ 为例，展示其完整的变位。词典中会给出其四个基本元 bíta — beit — bitu — bitinn. 主动态：

一类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	bít	bíta	
2	bítr	bítir	bít
3	bítr	bíti	
复数现在时			
1	bítum	bítim	bítum
2	bítið	bítið	bítið
3	bíta	bíti	
单数过去时			
1	beit	bita	
2	beizt	bitir	
3	beit	biti	
复数过去时			
1	bitum	bitim	
2	bituð	bitið	
3	bitu	biti	
不定式			
	bíta		
现在分词			
	bítandi		
过去分词			
	bitinn		

中动态：

一类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	bítumk	bítumk	

<sup>2</sup> 造成词尾-g 脱落的原因是浊塞音 g 在原始诺尔斯语的词尾变成其音位变体 h，但后来又系统地发生了词尾-h 的脱落，如古诺尔斯语 þó (比如 Go. þauh; OE þeah; 现代英语 **though**)，因此例如 sté 这样的形式是更早期的词形的反映。ei > é 的音变是一种元音缩合，但主要只出现在这类动词变形中。类似地，原始诺尔斯语还有大量的 ai > á 的缩合 (ON. sár vs Go. sair ‘wound’)，因此这个音变并不奇怪。

一类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
2	bízk	bítisk	bízk
3	bízk	bítisk	
复数现在时			
1	bítumsk	bítimsk	bítumsk
2	bítizk	bítizk	bítizk
3	bítask	bítisk	
单数过去时			
1	bitumk	bitumk	
2	beizk	bitisk	
3	beizk	bitisk	
复数过去时			
1	bitumsk	bitimsk	
2	bituzk	bitizk	
3	bitusk	bitisk	
不定式			
现在分词		bítandisk	
过去分词		bitizk	

说明：

- 以-t 为词干末尾的动词接续-t 词尾时，发生 \*-tt > \*-tst > -zt，这是古老的日耳曼语擦音定律的残留。中动态-zk 发生了类似的音变。这种现象十分常见，在后续出现时，不做过多说明。

## 2.2.4 第二强变位法

第二变位法的不定式词干的特征元音是双元音 jú，其元音交替模式如下：

jú, jó(y) — au — u(y) — o

其中，用圆括号标记的是 i-变异下的词根元音音变后的形式。

当跟随词根元音的辅音是齿音 (ð, d, s, t) 时，jú 分割成 jó，例如下列动词 brjóta ‘break’，ljósta ‘smite’，skjóta ‘shoot’，bjóða ‘offer’，þróta ‘come to an end’，kjósa ‘choose’，由于双元音 jú, jó 都是后元音，再加某些词尾前需要将其 i-变异。jú 首先变成 \*jý，进一步变成 ý，这是由于 j 在 y 前规则地脱去，我们已经在??提到了。

在一类强动词中提到的词尾-g 脱落现象在二类强动词中仍然存在，这种情况下，对应的元音变成 ó。例如动词 fljúga ‘fly’ 的词干 fljúg- 在单数过去式中有 fló- 和 flaug- 两种形式，类似地，smjúg- ‘creep’ 有 smó- 和 smaug- 两种形式，如2.2.3所讲的一样，这里的长元音也会触发词尾的辅音延长音变。

二类动词中有以下一些不太规则的动词：

- 以咝音 s 结尾的动词 frjósa ‘freeze’ 和 kjósa ‘choose’ 的过去式可以按照弱变位法（见2.3.4）变位，词干分别是 frør- 和 kór-，出现在东部的冰岛方言中。例如单数过去式 frøra, frørir, frøri，这里没有塞音的痕迹。
- 三个动词 lúka ‘finish’，súpa ‘sip’，lúta ‘bow’ 词干中没有 j.<sup>3</sup>

我们选用规则的动词 skjóta 来展示二类动词的强变位法。

主动态：

<sup>3</sup> 这些动词来源古老，仅在印度语支和日耳曼语中有所保留。简单来说，它们的现在时词干和正常的动词有所区别（因此在古诺尔斯语中反映为元音的不同），以表达某些一次性事件。介绍这些动词的元音交替需要大量 PIE 知识，读者可自查所谓的 tudáti-type（命名来自梵语）。

二类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	skýt	skjóta	
2	skýtr	skjótir	skjót
3	skýtr	skjóti	
复数现在时			
1	skjótum	skjótim	skjótum
2	skjótið	skjótið	skjótið
3	skjóta	skjóti	
单数过去时			
1	skaut	skyta	
2	skauzt	skyfir	
3	skaut	skyti	
复数过去时			
1	skutum	skytim	
2	skutuð	skytið	
3	skutu	skyti	
不定式			
现在分词			
过去分词			
	skjótandi		
	skotinn		

中动态：

二类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	skýtumk	skjótumk	
2	skýzk	skjótisk	skjózk
3	skýzk	skjótisk	
复数现在时			
1	skjótumsk	skjótimsk	skjót
2	skjótizk	skjótizk	skjót
3	skjótask	skjótisk	
单数过去时			
1	skutumk	skyrumk	
2	skauzk	skytsk	
3	skauzk	skytsk	
复数过去时			
1	skutumsk	skytim	
2	skutuzk	skytsk	
3	skutusk	skytsk	
不定式			
现在分词			
过去分词			
	skjótandisk		
	skotizk		

## 2.2.5 第三强变位法

第三强变位法动词不定式的词干总是以一个双辅音结尾，其词根的元音是 e 或 i，其元音交替模式如下：

**e, i — a — u(y) — u, o**

三类强动词的基础元音是 e，但如果元音后面紧随着 n，这个元音抬升为 i。同样重要的元音音变发生在过去分词中，一般来说过去分词词根的元音都是 u，但当它后面紧随着 l 或 r 时，u 变为 o。第三强变位法涉及一些重要的语音规则，最显著的几个列举如下：

- 单数过去式中词干结尾的 -nd > -tt; -ng > -kk:

binda ‘bind’ > batt, batzt, batt  
springa ‘spring, jump’ > sprakk, sprakkt, sprakk  
注意词尾和词干相接触时 \*-tt > -zt 的变化

- 单数过去式中词干结尾的 -ld > -lt:

gjalda ‘pay’ > galt, galzt, galt  
复数形式 guldum, gulduð, guldu 不变

- 在即以 l 或 r 开头的辅音簇前，e 分割为 ja。这条规则对单数直陈现在时以外的词形都有效，因此可以理解为这类动词的单数直陈现在时是特殊的：

不定式 gjalda > 单数现在时 geld, geldr, geldr  
复数现在时 gjöldum, gjaldið, gjalda ɔ 是 u-变异后的结果  
不定式 bjarga ‘rescue’ > bergr vs. bjargið  
一个特殊的动词是 skjálfa ‘shiver’ 这里 e 分割为长元音 já，例如第一人称复数 skjálfum, 而其他形式如 skelf, skalf, skulfum, skolfinn 等没有长元音。

- v 在 o 或 u 前脱去。这条规则在古诺尔斯语中是通用的，但在第三强变格法中值得特别提及。例如 verða ‘become’ 的四个基本元的词干分别是 verð-, varð-, urð-, orð-.
- 一部分动词的不定式-a 前有半元音-v-, 这导致了这些动词中保留了一些古老的 u-变异：a > ɔ, i > y, e > ø. 因此 sòkkva ‘sink’ 的基本元是 sekk-v-, sòkk-v-, sukk-; sangv- > song. 注意，这里的 -ng 不会变成 -kk，因为词干是包括 -v- 的。

上述规则也有一些例外：

- brenna ‘burn’ 和 renna ‘run’ 的现在时词干中的 e 并没有变成 i.
- 常见动词 finna ‘find’ 的词干本是 \*finþ-, 但原始诺尔斯语晚期发生了 \*nþ > nn 的音变。在第三第四基本元中，按照维尔纳定律发生了 \*nþ > nd 的浊化，因此在古诺尔斯语中有不规则的词干 finn-, fann-, **fund-**, **fund-**.
- bregða ‘hasten’ 的第二基本元可以像第二变位法一样先脱去词尾辅音再变成长元音，得到不规则的 brá-, 且有 brá, brátt, brá 的不规则变形。

以规则动词 springa 为例，展示第三强变位法。

主动态如下：

	三类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时				
1		spring	springa	
2		springr	springir	spring
3		springr	springi	
复数现在时				

三类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
1	springum	springim	springum
2	springið	springið	springið
3	springa	springi	
单数过去时			
1	sprakk	sprynga	
2	sprakkt	spryngir	
3	sprakk	spryngi	
复数过去时			
1	sprungum	spryngim	
2	sprunguð	spryngið	
3	sprungu	spryngi	
不定式			
	springa		
现在分词			
	springandi		
过去分词			
	sprunginn		

中动态如下：

三类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	springumk	springumk	
2	springsk	springisk	springsk
3	springsk	springisk	
复数现在时			
1	springumsk	springimsk	springumsk
2	springizk	springizk	springizk
3	springask	springisk	
单数过去时			
1	sprungumk	spryngumk	
2	sprakkzk	spryngisk	
3	sprakksk	spryngisk	
复数过去时			
1	sprungumsk	spryngimsk	
2	sprunguzk	spryngizk	
3	sprungusk	spryngisk	
不定式			
	springask		
现在分词			
	springandisk		
过去分词			
	sprungizk		

## 2.2.6 第四强变位法

第四类强动词数量不多，它们的不定式词干以响音 l, m, r, n 结尾，词根的元音是 e，其元音交替模式是：

e — a — á(æ) — o

一般来说，过去分词词根的元音是 o，极少数情况下是 u<sup>4</sup>。比较下列的两个动词：

bera ‘carry’，bera — bar — báru — borinn — 分词元音是 o

nema ‘take’，nema — nam — námu — numinn — 分词元音是 u

四类强动词中有一个常见动词略不规则：koma ‘come’ < PGmc. \*kwemaną, 它的直陈式变位如下：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	køm, kem	kom, kvam	
2 单	kømr, kemr	komt, kvamt	
3 单	kømr, kemr	kom, kvam	
1 复	komum	kómum, kvámum	
2 复	komið	kómuð, kvámuð	
3 复	koma	kómu, kvámu	

也就是说，koma 的四个基本元可以是：(1)kom- (2)kom-/kvam- (3) kóm-/kvám (4)kom-. 现在时中 ø 和 e 的交替是古诺尔斯语，特别是古冰岛语的常见现象，没有完全的规则能解释其发生的条件。

以规则动词 bera 为例，变位如下：

主动态：

	四类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时				
1		ber	bera	
2		berr	berir	ber
3		berr	beri	
复数现在时				
1		berum	berim	berum
2		berið	berið	berið
3		bera	beri	
单数过去时				
1		bar	bæra	
2		bart	bærir	
3		bar	bæri	
复数过去时				
1		bárum	bærim	
2		báruð	bærið	
3		báru	bæri	
不定式				
现在分词		berandi		
过去分词		borinn		

中动态：

<sup>4</sup> PGmc. 过去分词的元音曾经是 \*u，但按照音变规律 \*u 受到后面词尾中 \*a 的作用应该规则地下降为 o（这个音变叫作 a-Umlaut）。nema 在一些古挪威语的文献中也有过去分词 nominn 的形式，但在冰岛语中似乎恢复了古老的 \*u。除此之外唯一常见的过去分词元音是 u 的四类强动词是 svima ‘swim’，其中词干的 i 是有 e 下降所得。

	四类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时				
1		berumk	berumk	
2		bersk	berisk	bersk
3		bersk	berisk	
复数现在时				
1		berumsk	berimsk	berumsk
2		berizk	berizk	berizk
3		berask	berisk	
单数过去时				
1		bárumk	bærumk	
2		barzk	bærisk	
3		barsk	bærisk	
复数过去时				
1		bárumsk	bærimsk	
2		báruzk	bærizk	
3		bárusk	bærisk	
不定式				
现在分词		berask		
过去分词		berandisk		
		borizk		

## 2.2.7 第五强变位法

第五强变位法的元音交替模式和第四强变位法基本相同，它们的区别在于词干末尾的辅音，对于除 l, r, m, n 以外的单辅音结尾的动词要按第五变位法变位。另外第五强变位法过去分词词根的元音一般是 e.

e — a — á(æ) — e

五类强动词中包括许多稍不规则的情况：

### 1) -j-词干动词

原始日耳曼语中的一部分派生动词在词根后插入 \*-ye- 构成现在时，这个后缀在古诺尔斯语中就表现为词干末尾的 -j-. 通常，这些派生动词都是第一类弱动词（参见2.3.3），但有极少数是强动词。**-j-** 只在现在时中出现，这使得这些强动词的现在时变位和弱动词一致，因此它们被称为“-j-词干强动词”（Strong verb with j-present）或是“弱现在时的强动词”（Strong verb with weak present）。在我们已经介绍过的强动词类别中，只有第一和第二类偶尔包含 -j- 词干动词，但这些动词绝大多数时候都按弱动词变位。

第五类强动词中有许多常用的 -j- 词干动词，在现在时变位中，-j- 使得元音 e > i. 过去时中，-j- 脱落，因此它们的过去时都是规则的。常见的例子是 biðja ‘bid, ask’，词干 bið-j-; sitja ‘sit’，词干 sit-j-，它们的直陈式变形类似于：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	sit	sat	
2 单	sitr	sazt	
3 单	sitr	sat	
1 复	sitjum	sátum	

	直陈式	现在	过去
2 复	sitið	sátuð	
3 复	sitja	sátu	

上表展示了词干末尾的-j-接续辅音和不同类型的元音时的情况，事实上，这里完全符合??的规则，读者不难推断出虚拟式以及中动态的情况。

liggja ‘lie, recline’ 和 þiggja ‘accept, receive’ 这两个动词的词干含-j-, 且辅音是双写辅音，它们的第一基本元的词干是 ligg-j-, þigg-j-；单数过去式的词干末尾的双辅音缩短为单辅音，在古诺尔斯语中脱落，同时词干中的元音变为长音（第二基本元 lá-, þá-）。第三、第四基本元保留单辅音，如 lág-, þág-; leg-, þeg-.<sup>5</sup> þiggja 的直陈式变位如下：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	þigg	þá	
2 单	þiggr	þátt	
3 单	þiggr	þá	
1 复	þiggjum	þágum	
2 复	þiggið	þáguð	
3 复	þiggja	þágu	

## 2) 以-g 结尾的动词

常见动词 vega ‘weigh’ (词干 veg-) 的单数过去式脱去 g，并将 a 变为长元音，如 vá, vátt，这类似于第一、第二强变位法中的情况，以及上述的 ligggja/þiggja 的单数过去式。

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	veg	vá	
2 单	vegr	vátt	
3 单	vegr	vá	
1 复	vegum	vágum	
2 复	vegið	vágúð	
3 复	vega	vágú	

vega 有两个意思，作为“称重”时按第五变位法变位 (<PGmc. \*weganą)，另一个意思“杀；战斗”继承于 PGmc. \*wiganą ‘fight’，这本来是一个第一变位法动词。两个原始日耳曼动词在古诺尔斯语中合并了，但哥特语中仍保留了两个分别的形式 (weihan—wigan)。vega 在古诺尔斯语中只按第五变位法变位，但其形式可能受到了第一变位法的影响。

原始日耳曼语中以-g 结尾的五类强动词只有两个，另一个动词 \*treganą ‘suffer; grieve’ 在古诺尔斯语中变成了弱动词，因此缺少对以-g 结尾动词变位规律的确认。读者可以认为 vega 是一个不规则动词。

<sup>5</sup> 这些词本来的形式就如 \*ligja, -g 在 i 前发生延长为双辅音发生在原始诺尔斯语晚期，一些 i-词干名词中也有这样的现象，如 bekkr. 由于-j-只在现在时中出现，辅音延长只影响了现在时，可以认为其过去时基本是规则的。另外，这个音变没有发生完全，在一些挪威方言中也有不双写 g 的现在时形式存在。

### 3) 不规则动词

这些动词形式比较不规则。它们有时被归类到第四类强动词中，但在历史上是第五类强动词。

1. 常见动词 sofa ‘sleep’ < PGmc. *swefaną* 的变位类似于 koma:

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	s <small>ø</small> f, sef	svaf	
2 单	s <small>ø</small> fr, sefr	svaft	
3 单	s <small>ø</small> fr, sefr	svaf	
1 复	sofum	sváfum	
2 复	sofið	sváfuð	
3 复	sofa	sváfu	

2. vefa ‘weave’ < PGmc. \*webaną 的过去式变位也和 koma 类似，但也可以按规则方法变形：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	vef	óf, vaf	
2 单	vefr	óft, vaft	
3 单	vefr	óf, vaf	
1 复	vefum	ófum, váfum	
2 复	vefið	ófuð, váfuð	
3 复	vefa	ófu, váfu	

3. troða ‘tread’ 的不定式和过去分词的词干都是 o 而不是 e，但它的过去式变位是规则的：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	trøð	trað	
2 单	trøðr	tratt	
3 单	trøðr	trað	
1 复	troðum	tráðum	
2 复	troðið	tráðuð	
3 复	troða	tráðu	

4. fregna ‘ask’ 和以-g 结尾的动词类似，-n-是一个遗留的现在时中后缀，以至于单数现在时的-r 词尾消失了：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	fregn	frá	
2 单	fregn	frátt	
3 单	fregn	frá	
1 复	fregnum	frágum	
2 复	fregnið	fráguð	
3 复	fregna	frágu	

5. 唯一一个动词 *sjá* ‘see’ 高度不规则，现在时由 sé-, sjá-构成，过去时由 sá-构成，过去分词的词干为 sé-, 完整的变位如下：

<i>sjá</i>	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	sé	sé	
2	sér	sér	sé
3	sér	sé, sjái, sjáir	
复数现在时			
1	sjám	sém	sjám
2	séð, sjáið	séð	séð, sjáið
3	sjá	sé	
单数过去时			
1	sá	sæa	
2	sátt	sæir	
3	sá	sæi	
复数过去时			
1	sám	sæim	
2	sáuð	sæið	
3	sá, sáu	sæi	
不定式	sjá		
现在分词	sjándi		
过去分词	sénn		

动词 *reka* ‘drive’ 代表了典型的五类强动词变位，其主动态如下：

五类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	rek	reka	
2	rekr	rekir	rek
3	rekr	reki	
复数现在时			
1	rekum	rekim	rekum
2	rekið	rekið	rekið
3	reka	reki	
单数过去时			
1	rak	ræka	
2	rakt	rækir	
3	rak	ræki	
复数过去时			
1	rákum	rækim	
2	rákuð	rækið	
3	ráku	ræki	
不定式	reka		

五类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
现在分词	rekandi		
过去分词	rekinn		

中动态如下：

五类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	rekumk	rekumk	
2	reksk	rekisk	reksk
3	reksk	rekisk	
复数现在时			
1	rekumsk	rekimsk	rekumsk
2	rekizk	rekizk	rekizk
3	rekask	rekisk	
单数过去时			
1	rákumk	rækumk	
2	rakzk	rækisk	
3	rakska	rækisk	
复数过去时			
1	rákumsk	rækimsk	
2	rákužk	rækizk	
3	rákusk	rækisk	
不定式			
现在分词	rekandisk		
过去分词	rekizk		

## 2.2.8 第六强变位法

第六类强动词词根元音为 a, 元音交替模式如下：

$$\mathbf{a(e) — ó — ó(e) - a, e}$$

过去分词的元音一般是 a, 如果词尾的辅音是软腭音 k 或 g, a 会被前移至 e。单数现在时中, a 总发生 i- 变异变为 e, 因此 fara ‘go’ 要变为 fer, ferr。

由于直陈过去式中都是圆唇元音, 因此总是导致 v 的脱落。例如 vaxa ‘grow, wax’ 的整个过去式词干都是 óx-, 同理有 vaða ‘wade’ > óð-.

六类强动词中也有一些特殊情况：

### 1) 以-g 结尾的动词

常见动词 draga ‘drag’ 的单数过去式脱去了-g, 由于元音变成了 ó, 如 dró, drótt, 因此看起来和二类动词的变形很相像。

还有一些动词历史上曾有词尾-g (来自于-h), 但是后来在现在时中脱落了, 这类动词包括 klá ‘scratch’, slá ‘slay’, flá ‘flay’, þvá ‘wash’ 和 hlæja ‘laugh’, 其中带有长音 á 的动词都模仿 slá. slá 和 hlæja 的直陈式变位如下：

	直陈式	现在	过去	现在	过去
1 单	slæ	sló	hlæ	hló	
2 单	slaer	slótt	hlær	hlótt	
3 单	slaer	sló	hlær	hló	
1 复	slám	slógum	hlæjum	hlógum	
2 复	sláið	slóguð	hlæið	hlóguð	
3 复	slá	slógu	hlæja	hlógu	

它们的过去分词都有-g，且受到-g 的影响变成 sleginn; hleginn.

注意长音动词接续元音开头的词尾时的元音缩合现象。

## 2) -j-词干动词

-j-词干动词中-j-的出现导致整个现在时变位全部受 i-音变影响。这些动词包括 sverja ‘swear’, hefja ‘heave; raise’, skepjá ‘shape’ 以及 kefja ‘sink’<sup>6</sup>等。动词 deyja ‘die’ 也属于 -j-词干动词，但它的复数过去式与同类略有不同，因为它的词干尾没有辅音，使得 ó 直接与词尾接触，触发元音缩合，故其复数过去式为 dóum < †dóum, dóð, dó. 以相同方式变位的还是一个不太常见的动词 geyja ‘bark’. 参考 sverja 和 deyja 的变位（注意 sverja 词干中的-v-在过去式中脱落）：

	直陈式	现在	过去	现在	过去
1 单	sver	sór	dey	dó	
2 单	sverr	sórt	deyr	dótt	
3 单	sverr	sór	deyr	dó	
1 复	sverjum	sórum	deyjum	dóm	
2 复	sverið	sóruð	deyið	dóð	
3 复	sverja	sóru	deyja	dó	

## 3) 不规则动词 standa

非常常见的动词 standa ‘stand’ 在除了现在时以外的地方脱去-n-, d 以异构 ð 保留，其四个基本元为 stand-, stóð-, stóð-, stað-.

规则动词 fara 的完整变格如下：

主动态：

	六类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时				
1		fer	fara	
2		ferr	farir	far
3		ferr	fari	
复数现在时				
1		fórum	farim	fórum
2		farið	farið	farið

<sup>6</sup> kvefja 通常是一类弱动词，但也可按照六类强动词变位。

六类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
3	fara	fari	
单数过去时			
1	fór	fóera	
2	fórt	fóerir	
3	fór	fóeri	
复数过去时			
1	fórum	fóerim	
2	fóruð	fóerið	
3	fóru	fóeri	
不定式			
现在分词			
过去分词			
	farandi		
	farinn		

中动态如下所示：

六类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	fórumk	fórumk	
2	fersk	farisk	farsk
3	fersk	farisk	
复数现在时			
1	fórumsk	farimsk	fórumsk
2	farizk	farizk	farizk
3	farask	farisk	
单数过去时			
1	fórumk	fórumk	
2	fórzk	fórisk	
3	fórsk	fórisk	
复数过去时			
1	fórumsk	fórimsk	
2	fóruzk	fórisk	
3	fórusk	fórisk	
不定式			
现在分词			
过去分词			
	farandisk		
	farizk		

## 2.2.9 第七强变位法

第七类强动词的定义是元音交替不符合上述六类的动词，在古诺尔斯语中形成了下列五大元音交替模式，它们和对应的五类变位法的元音交替有一定的联系：

类别	不定式	单数过去	复数过去	过去分词
1. heita ‘be called’	heita	hét	hétum	heitinn
2a. auka ‘increase’	auka	jók	jókum	aukinn
2b. búa ‘inhabit’	búa	bjó	bjuggum	búinn
3. falla ‘fall’	falla	fell	fellum	fallinn
4. láta ‘let’	láta	lét	létum	látinn
5. blóta ‘offer’	blóta	blét	blétum	blótinn

七类强动词的基本特点是第一和第四基本元的词根元音一致，第二和第三也一致（2b 除外）。

### 1) 第 1 类动词

第 1 类动词的不定式词根元音是 ei，一共有三个：heita ‘be called’，leika ‘play’，sveipa ‘sweep’

不定式	单数过去	复数过去	过去分词
heita	hét	hétum	heitinn
leika	lék	lékum	leikinn
sveipa	sveip	svipum	sveipinn

这三个动词中最典型的是 leika，它只按照第七强变位法变位；

heita 的单数现在时词干可以按强动词或弱动词变位，这取决于它的意思。当 heita 表示“**A 叫名 B**”的时候，要用弱动词词尾，即按照三类弱动词变形（见2.3.5）：heiti, heitir, heitir. 取其它意思时，都按强动词变形：heit, heitr, heitr；

sveipa 经常按弱动词变位，其残存的强动词变化形式和第一类强动词发生了混淆。

### 2) 第 2 类动词

第 2 类动词的过去式词干中有双元音 jó 为特征，其中的子类 a 的不定式元音是 au，其他归为 b 类，这类动词包括：auka ‘increase’，ausa ‘sprinkle’，hlaupa ‘jump’，búa ‘inhabit’，hoggva ‘hew’ 等。

不定式	单数现在	单数过去	复数过去	过去分词
auka	eyk	jók	jókum, jukum	aukinn
ausa	eys	jós	jósum, jusum	ausinn
hlaupa	hleyp	hljóp	hljópum, hljupum	hlaupinn
búa	bý	bjó	bjoggum, bjuggum, buggum	búinn
hoggva	høgg, hegg	hjó	hjoggum, hjuggum	hoggvinn

复数过去式中，ju 和 jó 经常交替，ju 是比较后期的形式。在 búa 中甚至出现了 ju > u 的形式，其复数过去式中的 g 可能是从一个同根弱动词 byggva ‘reside’ 中借来的。

hoggva 的单数现在时值得注意，va-不定式触发了 u- 变异，因此其现在时词干应该是 hagg-v-，但在单数现在时中 i- 变异的形式是 ø，而非预期的 e，不过它又在后来的形式中规则化了。

### 3) 第 3 类动词

第 3 类动词相对比较规则，且都非常常见，这主要包括 blanda ‘mix’，ganga ‘walk’，hanga ‘hang’，falla ‘fall’，halda ‘hold’，falda ‘fold’，fá ‘get’，它们的变形都发生了类似三类强动词的音变（回顾2.2.5的音变规则 1, 2）：

不定式	单数现在	单数过去	复数过去	过去分词
blanda	blend	blett	blendum	blandinn
ganga	geng	gekk	gengum, gingum	genginn, gingum
hanga	heng	hekk	hengum	hanginn
falla	fell	fell	fell	fallin
halda	held	helt	heldum	haldinn
falda	feld	felt	feldum	faldinn
fá	fæ	fekk	fengum, fingum	fenginn, finginn

fá 的变位和 ganga 非常一致，它曾经的形式是 \*fanhanq，词尾的-g 也发生了脱落，但在复数过去式中恢复。注意这两个动词复数过去式、过去分词的词根元音发生了抬升，一些很古老的文献中记录了 i，但后来变成了 e.

#### 4) 第 4、5 类动词

这两类动词形式规则，它们的区别仅在于不定式的元音是 á 还是 ö，常见动词包括：blása ‘blow’，gráta ‘weep’，láta ‘let’，ráða ‘advise’，blóta ‘offer’.

以 láta 为例，展示规则的七类强动词的完整变位。其主动态为：

七类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	læt	láta	
2	lætr	látir	lát
3	lætr	láti	
复数现在时			
1	látum	látim	látum
2	látið	látið	látið
3	láta	láti	
单数过去时			
1	lét	léta	
2	lézt	létir	
3	lét	léti	
复数过去时			
1	létum	létim	
2	létuð	létíð	
3	létu	léti	
不定式			
现在分词	látandi		
过去分词	látinn		

中动态为：

七类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	látumk	látumkm	

七类强动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
2	Læzk	Látisk	lázk
3	læzk	látisk	
复数现在时			
1	látumsk	látimsk	látumsk
2	Látizk	látizk	látizk
3	Látask	látisk	
单数过去时			
1	Létumk	létumk	
2	Lézk	létisk	
3	Lézk	létisk	
复数过去时			
1	létumsk	létimsk	
2	létuzk	létizk	
3	létusk	létisk	
不定式			
现在分词			
过去分词			

## 5) 复音动词

这类动词继承了原始印欧语的特点。日耳曼语的过去式主要是由原始印欧语的完成时演变过来的，完成时的构词法是在词根前添加一个重复成分（词根的辅音 + 元音），在一些古典语言中有清楚的痕迹（连字符是为了更清晰地展示重复成分）：

梵语：现在时 *bharati* ‘bear, carry’ → 完成时 **ba**-bhāra

希腊语：现在时 *leípō* ‘leave’ → 完成时 **le**-loipā

在日耳曼语中，一些动词的过去式也有这样的特点，称为复音动词（Reduplicated verb），但复音动词在不同的语言中可能被简化，也可能发生进一步的音变。比较下面几个比较明显的复音动词的基本元：

哥特语：现在时 *hláupan* 单数过去 **haí**-hláup

古英语：现在时 *hātan* 单数过去 *hēt* < **he**-ht

但是，古诺尔斯语中这两个动词的同源词 *hlaupa* 和 *heita* 都失去了重复成分，只有三个动词 *róa* ‘row’, *sá* ‘sow’ 和 *snúa* ‘turn’ 还保有复音动词的特征，但它们都已经发生了比较明显的音变。这些动词的过去式构成方法是用-ø-/e-替换词根中的元音，并添加-r 构成词干。其单数过去式的人称词尾是-a, -ir, -i 词尾，复数过去式的人称词尾是-um, -uð, -u 词尾（整个过去式实则添加的是弱动词词尾）。这些动词因其过去式的形态有时被称为 ra-动词（现代冰岛语中叫作 ri-动词），它们的变位如下所示：

不定式	<i>róa</i>	<i>sá</i>	<i>snúa</i>
单数现在时			
1	röe	sæ	sný
2	rœr	sær	snýr
3	rœr	sær	snýr

不定式	róa	sá	snúa
复数现在时			
1	ró(u)m	sám	snúm
2	róið	sáið	snúið
3	róa	sá	snúa
单数过去时			
1	røra, rera	søra, sera	snøra, snera
2	rørir, rerir	sørir, serir	snørir, snerir
3	røri, reri	søri, seri	snøri, sneri
复数过去时			
1	rørum, rerum	sørum, serum	snørum, snerum
2	røruð, reruð	søruð, seruð	snøruð, sneruð
3	røru, reru	søru, seru	snøru, sneru
过去分词			
	róinn	sáinn	snúinn

形似的动词 gróa ‘grow’ 和 gnúa ‘rub’ 本来不是复音动词，但它们的变形受类比的影响与 róa 和 snúa 一致。

## 2.3 弱动词的变位法

区别于强动词用元音变换指示过去式，弱动词的过去时标记是添加在词干和人称词尾间的-ði-，例如：

词干	过去时标记	人称标记	完整变形
sigl-i/j-	-ði-	-a	siglða 'I sailed'
kall-a-	-ði-	-r	kallaðir 'you called'
lif-i-	-ði-	-um	lifðum 'we lived'

弱动词的词干和强动词稍有不同，我们在后面会具体的介绍。在此之前，我们先熟悉一下变位中常常触发的一些重要的音变：

1. i-的删去。根据音变规律??，后缀 ði 中的 i 在元音开头的词尾前前脱落，同时词干元音 i 或-i/j-在-ði-前脱落：

kall-a- + -ði- + -a > kallaða

lif-i- + -ði- + -u > lifðu

2. u-变异。在 u 之前，非重读的 a 变成 u，重读的 a 变成 ø，在许多弱动词中会产生连锁反应：

kall-a- + -ði- + um > \*kalluðum > kólluðum

tal-i/j- + -ði- + -uð > \*talðuð > tólduð

3. -ð + ð- > -dd-:

beiða ‘ask’ > beidda

eyða ‘waste’ > eydda

4. -t, s + ð- > -tt, st:

flytja ‘move’ > flutta

sæta ‘undergo’ > sætta

5. -p, k, f, l + ð- > -pt, kt, ft, lt, 但这个变化不总是发生:

þurfa 'need' > þurfta

但 hafa 'have' > hafða 不变

mæla 'speak' > mælta

但也有 vilja 'want' > vilda

6. 辅音简化: -Cdd > -Cd 以及 -Ctt > -Ct. 这表明, 当上述的规则导致 dd/tt 出现时, 如果它们前面还有一个辅音, 则双辅音简化为单辅音:

senda 'send' > \*sendda > senda

skipta 'shift' > \*skiptta > skipta

弱动词共可分为三类, 这是根据词干元音的特征来分的。下面的三个动词 krefja 'demand', kalla 'call' 和 vaka 'wake' 分属三类弱动词:

类别	不定式	三单现在时	三单过去时	三复过去时	三单过去虚拟式	过去分词
I	krefja 'demand'	krefr	krafði	krófðu	krefði	krafðr
II	kalla 'call'	kallar	kallaði	kólluðu	kallaði	kallaðr
III	vaka 'wake'	vakir	vakþi	vökþu	vekþi	vakaðr

弱动词的分类是一个值得探讨的问题。从共时层面看, 第三人称现在时的形态 (-r, -ar, -ir) 可以用于决定弱动词的种类。但有时这和历史演变的情况是矛盾的, 不同的学者可能根据不同的标准划分词类。譬如 heyra 'hear' 在过去是第一类弱动词, 但古诺尔斯语中它的第三人称现在时是 heyrir, 应当算作第三类弱动词。因此 heyra 既可以归为第一类, 也可归为第三类弱动词, 这视分类者的习惯而定。为了便于理解弱动词的来历, 本书仍采用历史语言学的划分方式。

读者可以从此表中发现, 弱动词的形式间不存在元音交替的现象, 只有元音变异。不同类别的动词发生元音变异的形态不完全相同, 见下文详述。

弱动词的变位可以由 3 个基本元确定, 即不定式, 单数过去式和过去分词。与强动词不同, 这三个基本元在很大程度上是可以根据弱动词的类型互相推断的。

### 2.3.1 弱动词的主动词尾

弱动词的主动词尾如下所示:

弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	-ø / -a / -i	-a	
2	-r / -ar / -ir	-ir	-
3	-r / -ar / -ir	-i	
复数现在时			
1	-um	-im	-um
2	-ið	-ið	-ið
3	-a	-i	
单数过去时			
1	-ða	-ða	
2	-ðir	-ðir	

弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
3	-ði	-ði	
复数过去时			
1	-ðum	-ðim	
2	-ðuð	-ðið	
3	-ðu	-ði	

这张表中的词尾单数现在时的词尾事实上考虑了词干元音，它们事实上都是-ø, -r, -r 的变体。弱动词和强动词最大的区别在于单数过去式的词尾变成了-a, -ir, -i.

类似于强动词，弱动词的变形的过程如下所示：

所有的现在时形式：取不定式词干，加词尾 (需用动词类别区分词尾 -r / -ar/-ir);

过去直陈式：取第二基本元词干，必要时将词干中的元音 u- 音变，加词尾；

现在虚拟式：取第二基本元词干，加词尾；过去虚拟式：取第二基本元词干，将后元音 i- 变异，加词尾；

现在分词：取不定式词干，加词尾；

过去分词：取第三基本元，加词尾。

将三个基本元标记为 (1), (2), (3), 变形方式如下：

弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	(1) + - / -a / -i	(1) + -a	
2	(1) + -r / -ar / -ir	(1) + -ir	(1) + -
3	(1) + -r / -ar / -ir	(1) + -i	
复数现在时			
1	(1) + (u- 变异) + -um	(1) + -im	(1) + (u- 变异) + -um
2	(1) + -ið	(1) + -ið	(1) + -ið
3	(1) + -a	(1) + -i	
单数过去时			
1	(2) + -ða	(2) + (i- 变异) + -ða	
2	(2) + -ðir	(2) + (i- 变异) + -ðir	
3	(2) + -ði	(2) + (i- 变异) + -ði	
复数过去时			
1	(2) + (u- 变异) + -ðum	(2) + (i- 变异) + -ðim	
2	(2) + (u- 变异) + -ðuð	(2) + (i- 变异) + -ðið	
3	(2) + (u- 变异) + -ðu	(2) + (i- 变异) + -ði	
不定式	(1) + -a		
现在分词	(1) + -andi		
过去分词	(3) + -ðr		

### 2.3.2 弱动词的中动态词尾

弱动词的中动态的构成和强动词一致，也是在词尾上添加-sk。我们在强动词部分已经介绍了-sk 词尾导致的音变，这里不再赘述。

弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	-umk	-umk	
2	-sk / -ask / -isk	-isk	-sk / -ask
3	-sk / -ask / -isk	-isk	
复数现在时			
1	-umsk	-imsk	-umsk
2	-izk	-izk	-izk
3	-ask	-isk	
单数过去时			
1	-ðumk	-ðumk	
2	-ðisk	-ðisk	
3	-ðisk	-ðisk	
复数过去时			
1	-ðumsk	-ðimsk	
2	-ðuzk	-ðizk	
3	-ðusk	-ðisk	

中动态的变化模式归纳如下：

弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数现在时			
1	(1) + (u-变异) + -umk	(1) + (u-变异) + -umk	
2	(1) + -sk / -ask / -isk	(1) + -isk	(1) + -sk / -ask
3	(1) + -sk / -ask / -isk	(1) + -isk	
复数现在时			
1	(1) + (u-变异) + -umsk	(1) + -imsk	(1) + (u-变异) + -umsk
2	(1) + -izk	(1) + -izk	(1) + -ið
3	(1) + -ask	(1) + -isk	
单数过去时			
1	(2) + (u-变异) + -ðumk	(2) + (u-变异) + -ðumk	
2	(2) + -ðisk	(2) + (i-变异) + -ðisk	
3	(2) + -ðisk	(2) + (i-变异) + -ðisk	
复数过去时			
1	(2) + (u-变异) + -ðumsk	(2) + (i-变异) + -ðimsk	
2	(2) + (u-变异) + -ðuzk	(2) + (i-变异) + -ðizk	
3	(2) + (u-变异) + -ðusk	(2) + (i-变异) + -ðisk	
不定式	(1) + -ask		
现在分词	(1) + -andisk		
过去分词	(3) + -zk		

注意，弱动词的过去式词干是一样的，因此没有强动词中第一人称的不规则现象。

### 2.3.3 第一弱变位法

第一类弱动词的词干元音是-i/j-，和 ja-词干名词一样，这个元音性质的确定由西弗斯定律支配，即：

短词干：词干音节只有一个单辅音 + 不超过一个辅音/一个双元音或长元音

长词干：词干音节为单辅音 + 辅音簇/双元音或长元音 + 任意数量的辅音

短词干后，词干元音是 j；长词干后，词干元音是 i.

正如长短 ja-词干名词的变格不同，词干元音完全决定了第一类弱动词的变位方法，因此有些语法也把第一弱变位法进一步分成两类。

试比较下面不同类型的长短词干动词的不定式：

词干	词干类型	词干元音	不定式
var-i/j- 'defend'	单元音 + 单辅音短词干	-j-	verja
sigl-i/j- 'sail'	单元音 + 辅音簇长词干	-i-	sigla
sát-i/j- 'undergo'	长元音 + 单辅音长词干	-i-	sæta
knú-i/j- 'knock'	单个长元音短词干	-j-	knýja
þrá-i/j- 'desire'	单个双元音短词干	-j-	þreyja <sup>7</sup>

词干元音-i/j-都触发后元音的 i-变异，由于动词的不定式是弱动词的第一基本元，现在时都在第一基本元的基础上添加词尾，因此无论词干长短，弱动词的现在时中一律出现 i-变异。

弱动词的第二基本元构成过去式词干，其词干构成和第一基本元（不定式）是密切相关的。具体来说：

短词干的过去时词干不发生 i-变异；长词干的过去式词干发生 i-变异（和现在时一致）。

读者也可以把这个规律理解为短词干动词现在时的词干元音在过去式中脱落（导致 i-变异无法发生），长词干动词的词干元音则在过去时中也保留，如下所示：<sup>8</sup>

基础词干	现在时词干	过去时词干
var-i/j-	ver-j-	var-
sigl-i/j-	sigl-i-	sigl-i-
sát-i/j-	sæt-i-	sæt-i-
knú-i/j-	kný-j-	knú-
þrá-i/j-	þrey-j-	þrá-

但根据元音省略规则，过去时词干的词干元音总在-ði-前脱落。因此现在时和过去时的词干差别实际上仅在于 i-变异是否发生。

一些值得注意的例外是：

- 如果长音节词干以-k 或-g 结尾，词干元音-i-在 a/u 前变为 j，这个规律在 ja-词干名词中也有体现：

lág-i/j- 'lower' 现在时词干 læg-i- + -r > lægir

但有 læg-i- + -a > lægja

- 某些以-g 结尾（但一般不是-k）的短词干动词在现在时词干末尾双写-g:

<sup>7</sup> 弱动词中有一部分动词发生了 á > ey 的 i-变异。但从词源上来说，长元音 á 的确由 au 缩合得到，这符合元音变异的性质。

<sup>8</sup> 这种理解方法只能帮助读者了解共时问题，但它与历史情况恰恰相反。古诺尔斯语的第一类弱动词过去时词干中的 i-变异问题，请参考疑难问题。

lag-i/j- 'lay' 现在时词干 legg-j- + -r > legg

比较下列以-g 结尾的动词:

	短音节	长音节
词干	lag-i/j-	talg-i/j-
单数现在时		
1	legg	telgi
2	leggr	telgir
3	leggr	telgir
复数现在时		
1	leggjum	telgjum
2	leggið	telgið
3	leggja	telgja
单数过去时		
1	lagða	telgða
2	lagðir	telgðir
3	lagði	telgði
复数过去时		
1	lögðum	telgðum
2	lögðuð	telgðuð
3	lögðu	telgðu

3. 不规则动词。部分长词干动词中的 i-变异不规则，这主要是受词根元音后面的历史音变的影响造成的，我们在此不展开讨论。这类动词只有 4 个，但都不算罕见，其基本元如下所示：

不定式	三单现在时	三单过去时	过去分词
sækja/sækja 'seek'	sækir/sækir	sótti	sótr
yrkja 'work'	yrkir	orti	ort
þekkja 'know'	þekkir	þátti	þektr
þykkja 'seem'	þykkir	þótti	þóttr

弱动词的第三基本元只用在过去分词中。长短词干动词的过去分词也有 i-变异的区分，结果和过去时词干一致，即长词干动词发生 i-变异，短词干动词不发生 i-变异。短词干动词也可以在词干尾加可选的-i，如 variðr，长词干则没有额外的-i。

动词 verja, varði, variðr/varðr 'defend'，词干 var-i/j-，是标准的短词干一类弱动词，主动态如下：

一类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
(var-i/j-)			
单数现在时			
1	ver	verja	
2	verr	verir	ver
3	verr	veri	
复数现在时			

	一类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
1		verjum	verim	verjum
2		verið	verið	verið
3		verja	veri	
	单数过去时			
1		varða	verða	
2		varðir	verðir	
3		varði	verði	
	复数过去时			
1		vørðum	verðim	
2		vørðuð	verðið	
3		vørðu	verði	
	不定式	verja		
	现在分词	verjandi		
	过去分词	variðr		

中动态如下：

	一类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
	(var-i/j-)			
	单数现在时			
1		verjumk	verjumk	
2		versk	verisk	versk
3		versk	verisk	
	复数现在时			
1		verjumsk	verimsk	verjumsk
2		verizk	verizk	verizk
3		verjask	verisk	
	单数过去时			
1		vørðumk	verðumk	
2		varðisk	verðisk	
3		varðisk	verðisk	
	复数过去时			
1		vørðumsk	verðimsk	
2		vørðuzk	verðizk	
3		vørðusk	verðisk	
	不定式	verjask		
	现在分词	verjandisk		
	过去分词	varizk		

动词 fell, felldi, felldr ‘fell (vt.)’, 词干 fall-i/j-, 是典型的长音节弱动词，主动态如下：

	一类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
(fall-i/j-)				
单数现在时				
1		felli	fella	
2		fellir	fellir	fell
3		fellir	felli	
复数现在时				
1		fellum	fellim	fellum
2		fellið	fellið	fellið
3		fella	felli	
单数过去时				
1		fellda	fellda	
2		felldir	felldir	
3		felldi	felldi	
复数过去时				
1		felldum	felldim	
2		fellduð	felldið	
3		felldu	felldi	
不定式				
		fella		
现在分词				
		fellandi		
过去分词				
		felldr		

中动态如下：

	一类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
(fall-i/j-)				
单数现在时				
1		fellumk	fellumk	
2		fellisk	fellisk	fallsk
3		fellisk	fellisk	
复数现在时				
1		fellumsk	fellimsk	fellumsk
2		fellizk	fellizk	fellizk
3		fellask	fellisk	
单数过去时				
1		felldumk	felldumk	
2		felldisk	felldisk	
3		felldisk	felldisk	
复数过去时				
1		felldumsk	felldimsk	
2		fellduzk	felldizk	
3		felldusk	felldisk	
不定式				
		fellask		

一类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
现在分词	fellandisk		
过去分词	fellzk		

### 2.3.4 第二弱变位法

第二弱变位法动词的特征是词干元音-a-, 例如 kall-a- ‘call’, kast-a- ‘cast’. 词干元音-a-存在于各个时态中，但在紧随的元音前脱去。词干元音-a 不是重读元音，在含有-u-的词尾前变成 u，并且进一步引起词根中重读元音的 u-变异。

第二弱变位法动词数量很多，但基本上是最规则的词类。它的三个基本元间没有 i-变异的现象，词根元音完全一致，只有少数形式中有明显的 u-变异。注意：即便是过去虚拟式当中也不发生 i-变异，这是和其他所有强弱动词的重大区别。其原因正是词干元音-a-和-ið-结合，使得过去虚拟式的词尾中出现了不能引起 i-变异的双元音（参见2.2.1中对 i-变异由来的解释）。

二类弱动词中有两类容易引起问题或混淆的：

#### 1) -j-词干动词

有相当一部分动词中词干元音前有-j-，如 herja ‘wage war; harry’, bryja ‘begin’，这些动词仅凭不定式非常无法与短词干的一类弱动词区分开来。这些动词是由名词派生而来，其中的-j-实际上是名词的词干元音 (ja-/jō-词干)，不过古诺尔斯语中名词的词干元音-j-只在部分形式中出现了，比较 herja 的原始日耳曼语形式：

ON	herja	<	herr ‘army’	+	-a
PGmc.	*harjōnq	<	*harjaz	+	*-ōnq

这些动词的-j-是词干的一部分，与一类弱动词有根本区别，参考 herja 的直陈式变位：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	herja	herjaða	
2 单	herjar	herjaðir	
3 单	herjar	herjaði	
1 复	herjum	herjuðum	
2 复	herið	herjuðuð	
3 复	herja	herjuðu	

#### 2) 以-á 结尾的动词

另有一小类动词以长元音-á 结尾，如 spá ‘foretell’, þrá ‘desire’, fá ‘draw’<sup>9</sup>等。这些动词除了形态略和一般动词不同外，变形实际上没有不规则的情况，参考 þrá 的直陈式变位：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	þrá	þráða	

<sup>9</sup> 注意区分按照七类强动词变形的 fá ‘fetch’，二者词源不同，弱动词来源于 \*faihijanaq，长元音由 ai 缩合得到；强动词来源于 \*fanhanq，长元音来源于-n 和-h 的脱落。

	直陈式	现在	过去
2 单	þráðir	þráðir	
3 单	þráði	þráði	
1 复	þráðum	þráðum	
2 复	þráðuð	þráðuð	
3 复	þráðu	þráðu	

动词 kalla, kallaði, kallaðr ‘call’, 词干 kall-a-, 是标准的第二弱变位法动词，主动态如下：

二类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
(kall-a-)			
单数现在时			
1	kalla	kalla	
2	kallar	kallir	kalla
3	kallar	kalli	
复数现在时			
1	køllum	kallim	køllum
2	kallið	kallið	kallið
3	kalla	kalli	
单数过去时			
1	kallaða	kallaða	
2	kallaðir	kallaðir	
3	kallaði	kallaði	
复数过去时			
1	kølluðum	kallaðim	
2	kølluðuð	kallaðið	
3	kølluðu	kallaði	
不定式			
现在分词	kallandi		
过去分词	kallaðr		

中动态如下：

二类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
(kall-a-)			
单数现在时			
1	køllumk	køllumk	
2	kallask	kallisk	kallask
3	kallask	kallisk	
复数现在时			
1	køllumsk	kallimsk	køllumsk
2	kallizk	kallizk	kallizk
3	kallask	kallisk	

二类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
单数过去时			
1	kølluðumk	kølluðumk	
2	kallaðisk	kallaðisk	
3	kallaðisk	kallaðisk	
复数过去时			
1	kølluðumsk	kallaðimsk	
2	kølluðuzk	kallaðizk	
3	kølluðusk	kallaðisk	
不定式	kallask		
现在分词	kallandisk		
过去分词	kallazk		

### 2.3.5 第三弱变位法

一小类动词属于第三弱变位法，其特征是词干元音-i-，例如 lif-i- ‘live’，þor-i- ‘dare’，vak-i- ‘wake’。-i-出现在所有现在时中，但在元音前脱去，过去时中没有这个元音。区别于一类弱动词，这里的-i-不会导致 i-变异，因为它由 PGmc. \*-ai-演变得来 (\*-ai- > \*-e- > -i-)。

第三弱变位法包括以下一些形态略不规则的动词：

#### 1) 以-á 结尾的动词

这类动词主要有两个 ná ‘reach’，gá ‘heed’，它们的变形和第二弱变位法基本一致（除了单数现在时），参考 ná 的变位：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	nái	náða	
2 单	náir	náðir	
3 单	náir	náði	
1 复	nám	náðum	
2 复	náið	náðuð	
3 复	ná	náðu	

#### 2) 包含 i- 变异的动词

古诺尔斯语只有三个第三类弱动词的现在时词干中有 i- 变异的痕迹，这是因为在原始日耳曼语中这些动词的词干元音是 \*-ja- 而不是 \*-ai-。这三个动词是 segja ‘say’，þegja ‘be silent’ 和 hafa ‘have’。

segja, þegja 的变形一致，它们的整个现在时词干都发生了 i- 变异，和第一类弱动词非常相似（但单数现在时的词尾不能用短词干一类弱动词的词尾来解释），例如 segja 的直陈式为：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	segi	sagða	
2 单	segir	sagðir	
3 单	segir	sagði	

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 复	segjum	søgðum	
2 复	segið	søgðuð	
3 复	segja	søgðu	

hafa 的变形和上面的两个动词略有不同，它的复数现在时中没有 i- 变异：

	直陈式	现在	过去
1 单	hefi	hafða	
2 单	hefir	hafðir	
3 单	hefir	hafði	
1 复	høfum	høfðum	
2 复	hafið	høfðuð	
3 复	hafa	høfðu	

在单数现在时中，形如 seg, segr; hef, hefr 的古老形式也有记载。<sup>10</sup>

我们以动词 vaka, vakði ‘wake’，词干 vak-i-，展示标准的第三弱变位法的规则，主动态如下：

	三类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
(vak-i-)				
单数现在时				
1		vaki	vaka	
2		vakir	vakir	vaki
3		vakir	vaki	
复数现在时				
1		vøkum	vakim	vøkum
2		vakið	vakið	vakið
3		vaka	vaki	
单数过去时				
1		vakða	vekða	
2		vakðir	vekðir	
3		vakði	vekði	
复数过去时				
1		vøkðum	vekðim	
2		vakðuð	vekðið	
3		vakðu	vekði	
不定式				
		vaka		
现在分词				
		vakandi		
过去分词				
		vakaðr <sup>11</sup>		

中动态如下：

<sup>10</sup> 这三个动词在原始语中的形态和在古诺尔斯语的发展颇有争议。现在时中没有 -j- 的形式可能是由第一类弱动词类比得到。

<sup>11</sup> 这个动词的过去分词实际上只记录到中性形式 vakat。关于过去分词的变形，将在（交叉）中详述。

三类弱动词	直陈	虚拟	祈使
(vak-i-)			
单数现在时			
1	vøkumk	vøkumk	
2	vakisk	vakisk	vakisk
3	vakisk	vakisk	
复数现在时			
1	vøkumsk	vakimsk	vøkumsk
2	vakizk	vakizk	vakizk
3	vakask	vakisk	
单数过去时			
1	vøkðumk	vekðumk	
2	vakðisk	vekðisk	
3	vakðisk	vekðisk	
复数过去时			
1	vøkðumsk	vekðimsk	
2	vakðuzk	vekðizk	
3	vakðusk	vekðisk	
不定式			
	vakask		
现在分词			
	vakandisk		
过去分词			
	vakazk		

## 2.4 过去-现在混合动词

过去-现在混合动词（Preterite-present）指的是该动词的现在时使用强动词的过去时词尾，按强动词过去时变位；过去时采取弱动词过去时词尾，按弱动词的过去时变位。造成这个现象的原因是：原始日耳曼语的过去时继承于原始印欧语的完成态，但在这类动词中，完成态演化成了现在时<sup>12</sup>，因此原始日耳曼语中过去-现在混合动词的过去时就空缺出来了。对此，这类动词只好采用日耳曼语独立的弱变化结构来构成过去时。

这种新的过去时构成法在这类动词中甚至应用到了不定式上。动词 munu ‘will’, skulu ‘shall’, 以及 \*knega ‘know, be able’（这个词的不定式没有被直接记录到）有用齿音构成的过去不定式：mundu, skyldu, knáttu. 这些过去不定式也使用于非限定性的结构，但一般用于主句是过去时的情况。读者可以类比英文中 ask him **to do** 和 asked him **to do**，在英语中只有一个不定式 to do，但在古诺尔斯语中，后一句可以用过去不定式。

由于过去-现在混合动词的过去时按照强变位法变形，其元音变换也有一定的规律，可以大致地和前面的六规则的强变位法对等起来，例如下面的第一类动词的现在时中用到了 ei 和 i 的交替，和第一强变位法的元音交替有关（不完全一致）。但在古诺尔斯语的十个过去-现在混合动词中，没有一个和第二或第六强变位法的元音交替模式对应。另外，这些动词的含义一般决定了它们没有中动态。

### 1) 第一类

有两个动词属于这一类，vita ‘know’, eiga ‘have, own’：

<sup>12</sup>造成这种现象的原因还没有共识。可能的解释是，这些动词都是表示状态而非动作的，天生带有完成的含义。

第一类混合动词		现在		过去	
<b>直陈式</b>					
1 单	veit	á	vissa	áttar	
2 单	veizt	átt	vissir	áttir	
3 单	veit	á	vissi	átti	
1 复	vitum	eigum	vissum	áttum	
2 复	vituð	eiguð	vissuð	áttuð	
3 复	vitu	eigu	vissu	áttu	
<b>虚拟式</b>					
1 单	vita	eiga	vissa	ætta	
2 单	vitir	eigir	vissir	ættir	
3 单	viti	eigi	vissi	ætti	
1 复	vitum	eigim	vissim	ættim	
2 复	vitíð	eigið	vissið	ættið	
3 复	viti	eigi	vissi	ætti	
<b>祈使式</b>					
2 单	vit	eig			
1 复	vitum	eigum			
2 复	vituð	eiguð			
<b>不定式</b>					
	vita	eiga			
<b>分词</b>					
	vitandi	eigandi	vitaðr	átr	

说明：

1. vita 的过去式 vissa 中的-ss-实际上是由-tt- (<-t + -ð) 变化得到，这依旧是日耳曼擦音定律的残留。
2. eiga 的变形相比 vita 不规则一些。其单数现在时 á 来源于 \*aig，\*aig 首先脱去词尾的-g，再发生 ai > á 的缩合。

## 2) 第三类

这类动词有三个，其元音交替规律比较规则：

不定式 u — 单数现在时 a — 复数现在时 u — 过去分词 u

这三个动词是 unna ‘love’，kunna ‘know, be able’，þurfa ‘need’：

第三类混合动词		现在		过去	
<b>直陈式</b>					
1 单	ann	kann	þarf	unna	kunna
2 单	annt	kannt	þarft	unnir	kunnir
3 单	ann	kann	þarf	unni	kunni
1 复	unnum	kunnum	þurfum	unnum	þurftum
2 复	unnuð	kunnuð	þurfuð	unnuð	þurftuð
3 复	unnu	kunnu	þurfu	unnu	þurftu
<b>虚拟式</b>					
1 单	unna	kunna	þurfa	ynna	kynna
					þyrfta

第三类混合动词		现在			过去	
2 单	unnir	kunnir	þurfir	ynnir	kynnir	þyrftir
3 单	unni	kunni	þurfi	ynni	kynni	þyrfti
1 复	unnim	kunnim	þurfim	ynnim	kynnim	þyrftim
2 复	unnið	kunnið	þurfið	ynnið	kynnið	þyrftið
3 复	unni	kunni	þurfi	ynni	kynni	þyrfti
祈使式						
2 单	unn	kunn	-			
1 复	unnum	kunnum	-			
2 复	unnuð	kunnuð	-			
不定式		unna	kunna	þurfa		
分词		unnandi	kunnandi	þurfandi	unn(a)t	kunnat
						þurft

说明：

- 动词 unna 和 kunna 的过去式略不规则，其中没有塞音-ð-的痕迹，但在过去分词中仍有体现。实际上，过去式的-nn-是由 \*-nþ-变化得到的（参考哥特语过去式 *kunþa*，这个音变还发生在动词 finna 中，见2.2.5），只是在共时层面上很难发现。
- þurfa 的祈使式没有被记录到。在后面的表格中，一律用“-”表示未被记录到的形式。

### 3) 第四类

正如三类、四类强动词一样，第三类、第四类的过去-现在混合动词的区别仅在于词干尾的辅音，其元音交替模式是完全一样的。这类动词包括 3 个，*muna* ‘remember’，*munu* ‘will’，*skulu* ‘shall’：

第四类混合动词		现在			过去	
直陈式						
1 单	man	mun	skal	mundu	mundu	skylda
2 单	mant	munt	skalt	mundir	mundir	skyldir
3 单	man	mun	skal	mundi	mundi	skyldi
1 复	munum	munum	skulum	mundum	mundum	skyldum
2 复	munið	munuð	skuluð	munduð	munduð	skylduð
3 复	muna	munu	skulu	mundu	mundu	skyldu
虚拟式						
1 单	muna	myna	skyla	mynda	mynda	skylda
2 单	munir	mynir	skylir	myndir	myndir	skyldir
3 单	muni	myni	skyli	myndi	myndi	skyldi
1 复	munim	mynim	skylim	myndim	myndim	skyldim
2 复	munið	mynið	skylið	myndið	myndið	skyldið
3 复	muni	myni	skyli	myndi	myndi	skyldi
祈使式						
2 单	mun	-	-			
1 复	munum	-	-			
2 复	munuð	-	-			
不定式	muna	munu	skulu	-	mundu	skyldu

第四类混合动词		现在		过去	
分词	munandi	-	skulandi	munaðr	-

说明：

1. muna 和 munu 本身是同源的，因此在有些形式上必须做出区分。例如 muna 的过去式 munið, muna 区别于 munu 所对应的 munuð, muni；现在虚拟式中前者发生 i-变异，后者不发生 i-变异。但在约 14 世纪后，这些形式开始混杂，以至于 muna 和 munu 的许多变位在中世纪手稿中混用。例如 munu 的单数现在时也可以是 man, mant；虚拟式中也可以不发生 i-变异。
2. skulu 的直陈过去式和整个虚拟式中都发生了 i-变异，但是在现在虚拟式中，i-变异也可以不发生，即 skulu 的变位中只有过去时全部要发生 i-变异。

#### 4) 第五类

这类动词的元音交替也比较规则：

不定式 e — 单数现在时 á — 复数现在时 e — 过去分词 e

这类动词包括两个， mega ‘be able’, kná (\*kenga), ‘know, be able’:

第五类混合动词		现在		过去	
<b>直陈式</b>					
1 单	má	kná	máttta	knáttta	
2 单	mátt	knátt	máttir	knáttir	
3 单	má	kná	mátti	knátti	
1 复	megum	knegum	máttum	knáttum	
2 复	meguð	kneguð	máttuð	knáttuð	
3 复	megu	knegu	máttu	knáttu	
<b>虚拟式</b>					
1 单	mega	knega	mætta	knætta	
2 单	megir	knegir	mættir	knættir	
3 单	megi	knegi	mætti	knætti	
1 复	megim	knegim	mættim	knættim	
2 复	megið	knegið	mættið	knættið	
3 复	megi	knegi	mætti	knætti	
<b>祈使式</b>					
2 单	-	-	-	-	
1 复	-	-	-	-	
2 复	-	-	-	-	
不定式	mega	*knega	-	knáttu	
分词	megandi	-	mátt	-	

说明：

1. 不定式 \*kenga 并没有被记录到，但其过去不定时 knáttu 并不少见。

## 2.5 不规则动词

在前面介绍强弱变位法时，我们已经比较详细地介绍了每一类中形态不规则的动词的变形及其来历。这些动词或多或少还可以归类到七类强动词和三类弱动词中，具体来说是 valda, vilja 和 vera 三个异态动词。

1. valda ‘cause; dominate’ 的现在时词干是 vald-, 过去分词词干 valdin-, 现在时系统的变位是规则的，但过去时有明显的不规则。较最早的文献中，单数过去时词干是 oll-, 复数是 ull-, 接着加上弱动词的词尾。<sup>13</sup>但后来一般整个过去时词干都变成 oll-, 最后这个词甚至可以按规则的弱动词变位，且词首的 v 不脱落，文献中记载到了 oldi 或者 voldi 的形式。
2. vilja ‘want’ 的变位和一类弱动词十分相似，但在现在时中词尾-r 和-l 同化为-ll, 即 vil + r > vill, (注意，其他一类弱动词没有这样的音变，如 skilja > skil, skilr) 第二人称单数式有时也写作 vilt, 类似于过去-现在混合动词。<sup>14</sup>过去时部分规则地按照弱动词变位，齿音以-d-形式实现。它的过去分词是 viljat, 缺少过去时的标记。另外，这个词也有过去不定式 vildu.
3. 最不规则的动词是 vera ‘be’, 和大多数语言的 be 动词一样，这是一个异干互补 (Suppletion) 动词，意味着其词形变化中涉及多个词干：现在时中是 \*(e)s-, 过去时中是 \*wes-. vera 中的 r 是由早期的 s 变化过来的，因此后期的 vera 的变形：vera, ert, er, var, vart 分别对应早期的 vesa, est, es, vas, vast<sup>15</sup>, 这一变化大致在 1100 年左右完成，前者成为主流的用法。vera 的变形经常和前后的词合写，这时的 vera 类似于一种后缀，例如：

nús < nú es ‘now is’,  
 þaz < þat es ‘that is’,  
 vér(r)óm < vér erum ‘we are’,  
 þeir(r)ó < þeir ero ‘they are’,  
 emk < em ek ‘I am’  
 sják < sjá ek ‘I may be’

上述的三个动词的主动态如下，除 valda 以外的动词没有中动态：

不规则动词	现在	过去	现在	过去	现在	过去
<b>直陈式</b>						
1 单	veld	olla	vil	vilda	em	var, vas
2 单	veldr	ollir	vill, vilt	vildir	ert, est	vart, vast
3 单	veldr	olli (oldi, voldi)	vill	vildi	er, es	var, vas
1 复	voldum	ullum, ollum	viljum	vildum	erum	várum
2 复	valdið	ulluð, olluð	vilið	vilduð	eruð	váruð
3 复	valda	ullu, ollu	vilja	vildu	eru	váru
<b>虚拟式</b>						
1 单	valda	ylla	vilja	vilda	sjá, sé	væra
2 单	valdir	yllir	vilir	vildir	sér	værir
3 单	valdi	ylli (vyldi)	vili	vildi	sé	væri
1 复	valdim	yllim	vilim	vildim	sém	værim
2 复	valdið	yllið	vilið	vildið	séð, sét	værið

<sup>13</sup>这个动词虽然有强动词的元音交替特征，但它的过去式实际上按弱动词变位。其中，-ll 是 \*-lp 同化得到，因此词干中已经有弱动词的塞音标记。

<sup>14</sup> vilja 的直陈现在时实际上是古诺尔斯语中增补出来的，因此出现了一些不规则现象。在原始语中，现在时中反常地没有直陈式，而只有虚拟式。哥特语中这个动词也没有直陈现在时。

<sup>15</sup>但是，复数式中并没有记录到含有 s 的形式。

不规则动词	现在	过去	现在	过去	现在	过去
3 复 祈使式	valdi	ylli	vili	vildi	sé	væri
2 单					ver	
2 复					verið	
不定式	valda		vilja	vildu	vera	
分词	valdandi	valdit	viljandi	viljat		verit

注意 vera 的现在虚拟式中的许多形式与 sjá ‘see’ 一致，必须按照句意判断。

# 第三章 形容词与变格法

## 章节要点

- 形容词性词尾
- 副词的构成与变格法
- 形容词的强弱变格法及其含义
- 分词的构成与变格法
- 形容词的级

### 3.1 形容词的概述

形容词最常见的用法有两种：作定语或作表语，但无论是哪一种，形容词的存在都与一个名词紧密关联（作定语时，与其所修饰的名词；作表语时，与作主语的名词）。名词的四个基本范畴是：格、性、数、特指性，因而形容词的各项属性要和名词保持一一对应。

形容词可以按格、性、数进行变化，这一点与大多数印欧语都是类似的，但在古诺尔斯语中，每个形容词还有强变格和弱变格两种形式。一般来说，当形容词和非特指名词发生关系时，要用其强变格形式；反之，如果句中出现的是特指名词，对应地就要使用弱变格的形容词。因此，形容词的强弱实际上与名词的特指性相呼应的语法范畴。类似于名词，形容词的强变格和弱变格分别对应了一套依据格、性、数变化的词尾，但与名词不同的是，**名词的强弱是其固有属性**，每个名词只能接续一套词尾；而**形容词的强弱是一种可变的属性**，它在一定程度上反映的是语义的区别，每个形容词都既可以按强变格法变形，也可以按弱变格法变形。

古诺尔斯语的形容词也有“级”的概念，分别是原级、比较级、最高级。前文所述的变形方式是针对形容词的基础形态——原级的，比较级和最高级的变形则略有不同。它们先在词干后添加一个后缀-*ar-*（比较级）/*-ast-*（最高级），然后再添加词尾。对于比较级而言，其变格有一套专门的词尾，形式上和原级的弱变格词尾非常相似。所有形容词的比较级无论是否修饰了特指名词一律都按弱变格词尾变形，即**形容词的比较级不区分强弱**。形容词的最高级没有专门的词尾，它和原级一样可以按照强变格和弱变格进行变化。

和许多古代印欧语类似，形容词的词尾和名词的词尾也有很大的相似性。读者可能会联想到，形容词是否也像名词一样区分词干的类型呢？在原始日耳曼语中，词干的类型的确影响形容词的屈折，但在古诺尔斯语中，形容词的变形已经大大规则化了。因此，没有必要介绍形容词原来的词干形式。

除形容词本身外，还有一些词类也添加形容词的词尾，例如动词的现在分词和过去分词、代词（交叉引用）等，这些词在语义和语法上并非严格的形容词。因此，我们把形容词所添加的词尾称为“形容词性词尾”，这些词尾以后将经常用到。

形容词作表语时，要用其强变格形式。这时候的形容词就是形容词性的，但古诺尔斯语也可以把形容词作名词用，此时的强弱就要根据句义中名词是否特指来决定了。在诗歌中，作定语的形容词几乎都是强的，即便其所修饰的是特指名词，如：fyrr vil ek kyssa konung ólifðan, en þú blóðogri bryniu kastir ‘sooner will I kiss the lifeless king, than you cast off the bloody byrnies’. 这种用法并不局限于诗歌，事实上在散文中也不罕见：með fóður sinn gamlan ‘with his old father’. 这里反身代词 *sinn* 使 *fóður* 成为特指词，但形容词依然使用了强形式。有时在绰号之类中也用强形容词，当然弱形容词更常用一些，比如：Eiríkr rauðr ‘Erik the Red’. 散文中，在表示呼唤的情况下也常用强形容词：forða þér, vesall maðr! ‘save yourself, unfortunate man!’

古诺尔斯语中的一些形容词承担了英语中需要使用短语的情况，这些形容词是强的，即便用上了特指冠词/后缀也不例外，如：í miðjum hauginum ‘in the middle of the hill’; um þueran skálann ‘straight across the hall’; qndorðan vetr ‘the first part of the winter’. 形容词甚至可以修饰代词，如 þeir margir ‘many of them’.

诗歌和某些小众风格的文章经常把强形容词作名词用，如：blindr er betri, en brendr sé ‘a blind (man) is better off than a burned (man) would be’; hvat muntu, ríkr, vinna ‘what would you tell, powerful (man)’; rétt ‘Right (vs. Wrong)’. 作名词用时，弱形容词和定冠词一道使用是很少见的（我们已经说过，冠词常常省略），在诗歌中也很难见到。散文

中这种用法局限于表达专有名词，如：inir ensku ‘the English’. 这种用法在名词序列中也可以使用，如：inn yngri, inn ellri ‘the younger, the older’.

在散文中，也可以在人名后加上表褒贬的修饰形容词，这时不加定冠词使用，如：Hákon góði ‘Hakon the Good’. 类似的用法还有：fyrra sumar ‘last summer’; á vinstri hlið ‘on the left side’; í næsta hús ‘in the next house’; við þriðja mann ‘with the third man’.

## 3.2 形容词的强变格法

形容词的强变格词尾和强名词的词尾有一定相似之处，它们列举在下表。其中，一切以 u 开头的词尾都会导致前方的元音发生 u-变异，某些词尾的 u 可能已经脱去，但 u-变异仍旧存在。这种情况下，另标在表中：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	-r	(词干 u-变异) + -ø	-t
A	-an	-a	-t
G	-s	-rar	-s
D	-um	-ri	-u
复数			
N	-ir	-ar	(词干 u-变异) + -ø
A	-a	-ar	(词干 u-变异) + -ø
G	-ra	-ra	-ra
D	-um	-um	-um

一些规律可供参考：

1. -r 是阳性单数主格的标记，这也作为形容词的基本形式。
2. 复数属格都是-ra，复数与格都是-um。
3. 单数属格的词尾和名词类似，但阴性词尾是-rar.
4. 中性名词不论单数复数，主格和宾格总一样。

以 sterkr ‘strong’, vænn ‘handsome’, gamall ‘old’, nýr ‘new’, frægr ‘famous’, røskr ‘brave’, fagr ‘beautiful, fair’ 为例，它们的阳性形式如下：

词干	sterk-	væn-	gamal-	fagr-	nýj-	frægj-	røskv-
单数							
N	sterkr	vænn	gamall	fagr	nýr	frægr	røskr
A	sterkan	vænan	gamlan	fagran	nýjan	frægjan	røskvan
G	sterks	væns	gamals	fagrs	nýs	frægs	røsks
D	sterkum	vænum	gomlum	fogrum	nýjum	frægjum	røskum
复数							
N	sterkir	vænir	gamlir	fagrir	nýir	frægir	røskvir
A	sterka	væna	gamlia	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
G	sterkra	vænna	gamalla	fagra	nýr(r)a	frægra	røskra
D	sterkum	vænum	gomlum	fogrum	nýjum	frægjum	røskum

其阴性形式如下：

词干	sterk-	væn-	gamal-	fagr-	nýj-	frægj-	røskv-
单数							
N	sterk	væn	gømul	fogr	ný	fræg	røsk
A	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
G	sterkrar	vænnar	gamallar	fagrar	nýr(r)ar	frægrar	røskrar
D	sterkri	vænni	gamalli	fagri	nýrri	frægri	røskri
复数							
N	sterkar	vænar	gamlar	fagrar	nýjar	frægjar	røskvar
A	sterkar	vænar	gamlar	fagrar	nýjar	frægjar	røskvar
G	sterkra	vænna	gamalla	fagra	nýr(r)a	frægra	røskra
D	sterkum	vænum	gømlum	fogrum	nýjum	frægjum	røskum

其中性形式如下：

词干	sterk-	væn-	gamal-	fagr-	nýj-	frægj-	røskv-
单数							
N	sterkt	vænt	gamalt	fagrt	nýtt	frægt	røskt
A	sterkt	vænt	gamalt	fagrt	nýtt	frægt	røskt
G	sterks	væns	gamals	fagrs	nýs	frægs	røsks
D	sterku	vænu	gømlu	fogru	nýju	frægju	røsku
复数							
N	sterk	væn	gømul	fogr	ný	fræg	røsk
A	sterk	væn	gømul	fogr	ný	fræg	røsk
G	sterkra	vænna	gamalla	fagra	nýr(r)a	frægra	røskra
D	sterkum	vænum	gømlum	fogrum	nýjum	frægjum	røskum

说明：

- vænn 和 gamall 中出现了大量的同化现象，对于所有以-r 起首的词尾，都触发??的辅音同化。
- gamall 代表了典型的多音节形容词的变格。其第二个音节的弱读元音 a 在以元音开头的词尾前省略，但在辅音前完全保留。古诺尔斯语中多音节的非派生形容词本身很少，除了 gamall 之外，常见的还有 heilagr ‘holy’ 等。但是，绝大多数由名词、动词等派生出的形容词都是多音节的，这是因为它们包含了派生词缀。这些形容词并不都符合元音省略的规律。例如由-ligr, -aðr 后缀派生的形容词总是不发生省略，但是由-ull, -igr, -ugr 构成的派生词一般都发生省略。双写辅音后的元音也不发生省略，试比较：

samligr ‘friendly’: sam-lig- + -an > samligan

auðigr ‘rich’: auð-ig- + -um > auðgum

minnigr ‘mindful’: minn-ig- + -a > minniga

- 部分形容词的词干上有增音-j-或-v-，它们的出现条件完全符合??中的规律。另外，-j-和-v-分别触发了整个词干中的 i-变异或 u-变异，这可以提示我们，røskr 的词干是包括-v-的。
- nýr 展示了长音节形容词的变格，添加辅音词尾时，触发了??的辅音延长。一些早期的文本中 nýra 也是可行的变格，但后来逐渐都变为更规则的 nýrra，但是 nýtt 中的中性词尾-t 始终双写。
- 某些形容词词干本身以-r 结尾，如 fagr，这时再添加辅音词尾时触发??的辅音简化。因此其阳性单数主格形式不能区分词干与词尾。

### 3.3 形容词的弱变格法

形容词的弱变格法词尾比较简单，它们的单数形式和名词的弱变格词尾完全一致，复数形式虽然与名词有区别，但更加简单且各个性都完全一样：

	性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数				
N	-i	-a	-a	
A	-a	-u	-a	
G	-a	-u	-a	
D	-a	-u	-a	
复数				
N	-u	-u	-u	
A	-u	-u	-u	
G	-u	-u	-u	
D	-um	-um	-um	

我们仍然使用上面已经提到的几个十分常见的形容词作为例子，比较它们的弱变格阳性形式：

词干	sterk-	væn-	gamal-	fagr-	nýj-	frægj-	røskv-
单数							
N	sterki	væni	gamlí	fagri	ný	frægi	røskvi
A	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
G	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
D	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
复数							
N	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku
A	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku
G	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku
D	sterkum	vænum	gómlum	fógrum	nýjum	frægjum	røskum

其阴性形式如下：

词干	sterk-	væn-	gamal-	fagr-	nýj-	frægj-	røskv-
单数							
N	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
A	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku
G	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku
D	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku
复数							
N	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku
A	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku
G	sterku	vænu	gómlu	fógru	nýju	frægju	røsku

词干	sterk-	væn-	gamal-	fagr-	nýj-	frægj-	røskv-
D	sterkum	vænum	gømlum	fogrum	nýjum	frægjum	røskum

其中性形式如下：

词干	sterk-	væn-	gamal-	fagr-	nýj-	frægj-	røskv-
单数							
N	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
A	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
G	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
D	sterka	væna	gamla	fagra	nýja	frægja	røskva
复数							
N	sterku	vænu	gømlu	fogru	nýju	frægju	røsku
A	sterku	vænu	gømlu	fogru	nýju	frægju	røsku
G	sterku	vænu	gømlu	fogru	nýju	frægju	røsku
D	sterkum	vænum	gømlum	fogrum	nýjum	frægjum	røskum

## 3.4 形容词的比较级和最高级

绝大多数形容词通过在词干后添加-ar-，进一步添加词尾来形成比较级。最高级的构成与之类似，将-ar-换成-ast-，添加对应的词尾即可。

最高级添加的词尾与原级相同，它可以是强的，也可以是弱的；比较级只添加弱词尾，且与原级略有区别。它们的阴性单数以及整个复数（除与格外）都与原级不同。比较级的词尾如下所示：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	-i	-i	-a
A	-a	-i	-a
G	-a	-i	-a
D	-a	-i	-a
复数			
N	-i	-i	-i
A	-i	-i	-i
G	-i	-i	-i
D	-um	-um	-um

在形态上，形容词比较级只添加弱词尾，但并不表示在语义上所有的形容词比较级都只修饰特指名词。修饰非特指名词一样可以使用形容词比较级，只不过不使用额外的词尾。

形容词 hvass ‘sharp’ 的比较级完整变形如下：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			

性	阳性	阴性	中性
N	hvassari	hvassari	hvassara
A	hvassara	hvassari	hvassara
G	hvassara	hvassari	hvassara
D	hvassara	hvassari	hvassara
复数			
N	hvassari	hvassari	hvassari
A	hvassari	hvassari	hvassari
G	hvassari	hvassari	hvassari
D	hvøssurum	hvøssurum	hvøssurum

多音节形容词的比较级常常引起元音省略，使得词缀-ar-都变成了变成-r，例如：

auðig- + -ar- + -i > auðigri

形容词的最高级遵循规则的变格法，即在插入-ast-后根据形容词的强弱添加强变格或弱变格词尾。值得注意的是，有时受 u- 变异影响，-ast-会变成-ust-，后者进一步触发词根元音的 u- 变异，类似于二类弱动词中的连续音变。例如，hvass 的最高级为：

强变格形式：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	hvassastr	hvøssust	hvassast
A	hvassastan	hvassasta	hvassast
G	hvassasts	hvassastrar	hvassasts
D	hvøssustum	hvassastri	hvøssustu
复数			
N	hvassastir	hvassastar	hvøssust
A	hvassasta	hvassastar	hvøssust
G	hvassastra	hvassastra	hvassastra
D	hvøssustum	hvøssustum	hvøssustum

弱变格形式：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	hvassasti	hvassasta	hvassasta
A	hvassasta	hvøssstu	hvassasta
G	hvassasta	hvøssstu	hvassasta
D	hvassasta	hvøssstu	hvassasta
复数			
N	hvøssstu	hvøssstu	hvøssstu
A	hvøssstu	hvøssstu	hvøssstu
G	hvøssstu	hvøssstu	hvøssstu

性	阳性	阴性	中性
D	hvøssustum	hvøssustum	hvøssustum

多音节形容词的最高级很少缩略-ast-, 但有时缩略词干的弱读元音, 例如:

auðig- + -ast- + -r > auðgastr

当然, 不发生省略的形式也经常出现, 特别是在近现代冰岛语中, 省略的现象大大减少了。

另有一部分形容词通过插入-r-或-st-来分别构成比较级和最高级, 同时词根元音发生 i-变异<sup>1</sup>。这些形容词的词尾和一般的比较级和最高级一致。许多常用的形容词都属于这一类, 如下所示:

词干	原级	比较级	最高级(弱, 强)
fá- 'few'	fár	færi	fæsti, fæstr
fagr- 'fair'	fagr	fegri	fegrsti, fegrstr
há- 'high'	hár	hæri	hæsti, hæstr
lág- 'low'	lágr	lægri	lægsti, lægstr
sein- 'late'	seinn	seinni	seinsti, seinstr
skamm- 'short'	skammr	skemmri	skemmti, skemmstr
smá- 'small'	smár	smæri	smæsti, smæstr
stór- 'big'	stórr	störi	stoersti, stoerstr
lang- 'long'	langr	lengri	lengsti, lengstr
ung- 'young'	ungr	yngri	yngsti, yngstr

注意: fár, hár, smár 的单数阳性主格词尾-r 没有被延长, 但是其他以 r 开头的词尾都被延长, 例如 fárrí, fárrar 等。

有些形容词将两种方式混合使用, 这意味着这类词的比较级和最高级都有两写。例如:

djúpr 'deep'	>	djúpari, djúpasti, djúpastr 或 dýpri, dýpsti, dýpstr
frægr 'famous'	>	frægjari, frægjasti, frægjastr 或 frægri, frægsti, frægstr

## 3.5 不规则形容词

古诺尔斯语有三类不规则形容词。第一类形容词形态上比较异常, 这类形容词有且仅有一个: annarr; 第二类形容词的原级、比较级和最高级采用了不同的词干, 类似于英语中 good—better—best; 第三类形容词缺少原级, 只有比较级和最高级形式, 它们是一些副词的派生词。

### 1) 不规则形容词 annarr

annarr 'other, another; second, next' 是古诺尔斯语中最不规则的形容词。它不仅在形态上十分特殊, 而且缺少比较级和最高级。annarr 只按原级的强变格变形, 没有弱变格形式, 其强变形同时承担了修饰特指和非特指名词的功能。它的变格中有词干 ann- 和 aðr- 的交替, 这是因为在古诺尔斯语中, -nn- 有时在-r 前变为-ð-, 另见 maðr 的变格 (参见??)。annarr 完整的变格形式如下:

<sup>1</sup>造成 i-变异的原因是词尾-r-/st- 来自于更早的 \*-iz-/\*-ist-, 而一般的-ar-/ast- 则来自于 \*-ōz-/\*-ōst-, 这两套词尾接续的词干不同。前者可以适用于各类词干, 但后者只用于最常见的 a-/ð- 词干形容词 (试比较古诺尔斯语 a- 词干 /ð- 词干名词, 它们的词干元音都合并为-a, 见??), 由于 a-/ð- 词干形容词的广泛性, \*-iz-/\*-ist- 逐渐被弃用, 因此只留下了非常少的痕迹。

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	annarr	qnnur	annat
A	annan	aðra	annat
G	annars	annarar	annars
D	qðrum	annarri	qðrum
复数			
N	aðrir	aðrar	qnnur
A	aðra	aðrar	qnnur
G	annarra	annarra	annarra
D	qðrum	qðrum	qðrum

## 2) 异干互补形容词

这类形容词的原级、比较级和最高级采用了不同的词干，如下所示：

原级词干	比较级词干	最高级词干
góð- ‘good’	betr-	bezt-
ill-, vánd- ‘bad’	verr-	verst-
mikil- ‘great’	meir-	mest-
lítíl- ‘little’	minn-	minnst-
marg- ‘many’	fleir-	flest-
gamal - ‘old’	eldr-, ellr-	elzt-

这些形容词基本都有英语的对应，它们在英语中也是异干互补的。异干互补形容词的比较级和最高级是相对规则的，它们的标志一般是更古老的-r/-st-词尾，-st-有时和齿音合写为-zt-. 另外，比较语言学的研究表明这些形容词的比较级和最高级反而比较容易在其他印欧语中找到同源词。因此，与其认为这些形容词的比较级和最高级是不规则的创新，更有可能的情况是，这些形容词过去可能是基于比较级/最高级词干的规则形容词，但是新产生的形容词取代了它们的原级。

在词形变化上，有一些值得注意的问题：

1. góðr 的单数中性主格和宾格有同化现象，另外还有元音缩短：góð- + -t > gótt > gott，其他形式是规则的。
2. ill-不能再和-r 同化，因此阳性单数主格就是 illr, illr 的变形完全规则。
3. mikill 的变格有一些不规则之处。其单数阳性宾格是 mikinn 而非 †mikilan，单数中性主格和宾格是 mikit 而非 †mikilt. 另外，作为双音节形容词，mikill 也规则地发生弱读元音省略，得到如 miklum, miklir 这样的形式。
4. líttill 的变格类似于 mikill，也有单数阳性宾格 líttinn，单数中性主格和宾格 lítit. 同样地，作为一个双音节形容词，它也符合元音省略的条件，但是在这些发生省略的形式中，长元音 i 缩短为 i，因此有 litlum, litlir 这样的形式。
5. margr 的单数中性主格和宾格是 mart 而非 †margt.
6. gamall 是双音节形容词，也发生元音缩略。

## 3) 不完全变化形容词

一些形容词缺少原级，只有比较级和最高级的形式，这类形容词被称为“不完全变化的”(Defective)。它们大多从一些副词派生而来，其语义就是对应副词含义的比较级和最高级。读者可以理解为这些副词“承担”了这类形容词的原级：

副词	比较级词干	最高级词干
aptr ‘back’	aptar-, eptr-	aptast-, epzt-
austr ‘east’	eystr-	austast-
fyrr ‘before’	fyrr-	fyrst-
*hinder ‘behind’	hindr-	hinzt-
inn ‘in, into’	innr-	innst-
niðr ‘down’	neðr-	nezt-
norðr ‘north’	norðar-, nyrðr-	norðast-, nyrztr
suðr, sunnr ‘south’	syðr-	synst-
vestr ‘west’	vestr-	vestast-
út ‘out’	ýtr-	ýzt-
nær ‘near’	nær-	næst-

说明：

1. hindri, hinztr 来源于原始日耳曼语副词 \*hinder, 相当于德语 hinter, 英语 hind (参考 behind), 但是这个词在古诺尔斯语中没有保留为副词, 但有义相关的名词 hindr ‘hindrance’.
2. norðr 的两种变形有可能从 syðri, synstr 类比得来。
3. 副词 suðr 和 sunnr 的两写造成了比较级和最高级词干的不同, 其中 sunnr 是更早的形式。

## 3.6 副词

副词是一种与形容词密切相关的词类, 它大多数是由形容词派生的, 但缺少格、性、数的屈折 (副词也有级)。本书先介绍副词的构词法, 然后介绍一些含义特殊的副词, 最后介绍副词的比较级和最高级。

### 3.6.1 副词的构成

古诺尔斯语只有一小部分词天然属于副词, 如 mjók ‘very’, svá ‘thus’, ‘so’, þá ‘then’, vel ‘well’, 其他绝大多数副词都由形容词派生而来。古诺尔斯语有以下几种常见的派生方法:

1. 使用强变格单数中性宾格作副词, 这种构词法常用于含义最基本的形容词, 例如:

mikill > mikit ‘much, greatly’  
lágðr > lágt ‘low, softly’  
allr > allt ‘all the way’  
hár > hátt ‘highly’

2. 添加后缀-a. 这种构词法也是最基本, 最普遍的做法, 例如:

illr > illa ‘badly’  
gjarn<sup>2</sup> > gjarna ‘eagerly’

许多形容词由-ligr 词尾派生, 这时用-liga 构成副词。-liga 有时还加到本身不包含-ligr 的形容词上, 例如:

harðligr > harðliga ‘fiercely’  
varligar > varliga ‘scarcely’  
glogggr > gloggliga ‘clearly’

这些副词有时也脱去-ig-, 缩短为 harðla, varla 等。

<sup>2</sup> gjarn 的强变格中, 以 r 开头的词尾与 n 同化, 接着发生辅音简化脱落。因此有 \*gjarnn > gjarn.

3. 其他格，用形容词或名词的其它格作副词的情况比较少见，有时副词的含义也发生改变。这些副词都是固定的用法：

宾格: megin ‘side(s)’ < vegr ‘way’<sup>3</sup>

属格: alls ‘of all, at all’; stundar ‘very, quite’ < stund ‘time. hour’

与格: miklu ‘much, by far’; stórum ‘hugely’; næstum ‘the last time’ < næstr ‘nearest’; stundum ‘sometimes’

### 3.6.2 肯定副词与否定副词

相当于现代英语 yes 和 no 的副词是 já 和 nei. 其他表否定的副词常用后缀-gi 构成，如 eigi ‘not’; engi ‘no, not any’; hvergi ‘nowhere, not at all’; aldri ‘never’ < aldregi. 否定动词的副词可以用 eigi, ekki 或 né. 早期诗歌还常用-a, -at 作为动词的否定后缀，例如：

vara ‘was not’ < var + -a

kannat ‘knows not’ < kann + -at

vaska ‘I was not’ < vas ek + -a

né 有时还可以和这些否定后缀一起使用: sofa né má-k-at ‘I cannot sleep’.

### 3.6.3 方位性副词

方位性副词通过下列一些后缀构成：

1. 后缀-i. 指示静态的位置: inn ‘into’ vs. inni ‘inside, within’
2. 后缀-an. 指示从某个位置来: innan ‘from within’
3. 后缀-gat/-nig. 指示到某个位置去: hingat/hinnig ‘to here’, þangat ‘to there’

特别值得注意的是-an 型副词，它有两个衍生的用法：

1. 和介词 fyrir ‘before, in front’ 连用作为一个介词性的词组，接续宾格表示“在... 的... 方位”： fyrir vestan valhöll ‘in the west of Valhalla’
2. 接续一个属格名词，表示“比... 更偏向...”： austan lands ‘east of coast’

### 3.6.4 副词的比较级和最高级

副词的比较级和最高级采用类似于形容词的规则变化，将后缀-ar/-ast-或者-r/-st-添加在副词的原型后面构成比较级或最高级。用-r/-st-构成比较级和最高级时，词根元音也常发生 i-变异（但也有不发生 i-变异的形式）。有些时候-ar-也可以变成-arr-, -ast-则变为-arst-, 例如：

lengi ‘for a long time’ > lengr, lengst

opt ‘often’ > optar(r), opta(r)st

framt ‘forward’ > fremr, fremst 或 framr(r), frama(r)st

对于衍生于形容词的中性主格（宾格）的副词，它们的比较级和最高级沿用形容词的比较级和最高级形式，例如：

skjótr > skjótt ‘swiftly’ > skjótara, skjótast ‘more swift(ly), most swift(ly)’

<sup>3</sup> megin 的 m 并不是 vegr 的一部分，而是前一个词的与格词尾被重解的结果，例如 þeim megin ‘on that side’ < \*þeim veginn

少数副词的比较级/最高级也会采用异干互补的构词方式，列举如下：

原型	比较级	最高级
líttr ‘little’	minnr, miðr	minst
mjók ‘much’	meir(r)	mest
vel ‘well’	betr	bezt
illa ‘badly’	verr	verst
gjarna ‘willingly’	heldr	helzt

总体来说，古诺尔斯语的副词没有像形容词那样明确的规则，一个形容词有时可以派生出多种形式甚至意义不同的副词，副词的比较级和最高级也可能有不同的形式。不过副词的不规则性一般不造成判读的障碍。

## 3.7 分词

动词的现在分词和过去分词都按形容词变化。分词可以像形容词一样修饰名词，这种用法和英语非常类似，例如 logandi brandr ‘burning brand’. 但是总的来说，古诺尔斯语更倾向于用从句来改写这种使用分词的情况。

### 3.7.1 现在分词

无论是强动词还是弱动词，现在分词都通过在动词不定式的基础上加-nd-构成。它添加形容词的比较级词尾，即只有弱变化形式。

例如，sofa ‘sleep’ 的现在分词变形如下所示：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	sofandi	sofandi	sofanda
A	sofanda	sofandi	sofanda
G	sofanda	sofandi	sofanda
D	sofanda	sofandi	sofanda
复数			
N	sofandi	sofandi	sofandi
A	sofandi	sofandi	sofandi
G	sofandi	sofandi	sofandi
D	sofondum	sofondum	sofondum

### 3.7.2 过去分词

过去分词相比现在分词来说常见很多，这主要是因为过去分词可以和助动词 hafa 连用表示完成态，类似于英语的 have done 结构。强弱动词的过去分词构成方法并不一致，但它们都可以添加形容词的强变格和弱变格词尾。

强动词的过去分词构成方式是在词干上添加-in，然后添加形容词的词尾。过去分词可以按强变格变化，也可以按弱变格变化，但绝大多数情况下，我们只见到过去分词的强变化形式。以 koma ‘come’ 的过去分词 kominn 为例，其强变格为：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	kominn	komin	komit
A	kominn	komna	komit
G	komins	kominnar	komins
D	komnum	kominni	komnu
复数			
N	komnir	komnar	komin
A	komna	komnar	komin
G	kominna	kominna	kominna
D	komnum	komnum	komnum

说明：

1. 阳性单数宾格词尾为-n 而非-an, 得到 kominn.
2. 中性单数主格和宾格为 komit.
3. 弱读元音 i 在元音开头的词尾前省略。

弱变格为：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	komni	komna	komna
A	komna	komnu	komna
G	komna	komnu	komna
D	komna	komnu	komna
复数			
N	komnu	komnu	komnu
A	komnu	komnu	komnu
G	komnu	komnu	komnu
D	komnum	komnum	komnum

弱动词的过去分词主要由第三基本元 + -ð- 构成。对于弱动词而言，其第三基本元很大程度上与过去时词干类似。过去分词同样有强弱变形的区分，以 elsk ‘love’ 的过去分词 elskáðr 为例，其强变格形式如下：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	elskaðr	elskuð	elskat
A	elskaðan	elskaða	elskat
G	elskaðs	elskaðrar	elskaðs
D	elskuðum	elskaðri	elskuðu
复数			
N	elskaðir	elskaðar	elskuð
A	elskaða	elskaðar	elskuð
G	elskaðra	elskaðra	elskaðra

性	阳性	阴性	中性
D	elskuðum	elskuðum	elskuðum

其对应的弱变格如下：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	elskaði	elskaða	elskaða
A	elskaða	elskuðu	elskaða
G	elskaða	elskuðu	elskaða
D	elskaða	elskuðu	elskaða
复数			
N	elskuðu	elskuðu	elskuðu
A	elskuðu	elskuðu	elskuðu
G	elskuðu	elskuðu	elskuðu
D	elskuðum	elskuðum	elskuðum

# 第四章 代词

## 章节要点

- 人称代词及其变格
- 疑问代词 hverr
- 物主代词及其变格
- 常见的不定代词
- 指示代词及其变格

### 4.1 人称代词

古诺尔斯语的人称代词系统部分保留了双数。双数仅出现在第一和第二人称代词中，第三人称代词只有单复数之分，但区分性别。人称代词中的变形涉及多个词干，具体如下：

人称代词	第一人称	第二人称
单数		
N	ek	þú
A	mik	þík
G	mín	þín
D	mér	þér
双数		
N	vit	it, þit
A	okkr	ykkar
G	okkar	ykkar
D	okkr	ykkar
复数		
N	vér	ér, þér
A	oss	yðr
G	vár	yðar
D	oss	yðr

古诺尔斯语中动词已经没有双数形式，双数人称代词同样支配动词的复数式。同时，双数代词使用的并不多，并且有和复数合并的趋势。在近现代冰岛语中，双数第一人称逐渐承担了复数的作用。

人称代词作主语时，主格有时以后缀形式粘着在动词后，这在早期的诗歌中尤为常见。第一人称 ek 失去元音 e，以-k 的形式添加在动词后，例如：

mælik ‘I speak’ < mæli + ek

mákat ‘I cannot’ < má + ek + at

第二人称 þú 中的 þ 有时和前面的辅音发生同化现象，例如：

heyrðu ‘you hear’ < heyr þú

skaltu ‘you shall’ < skalt þú

seldu ‘you sell’ < sel þú

这种合写在解读了造成了一些偏差，例如 skuluðér（来自 skuluð ér）可以被理解为 skuluð þér. 正是由于这个元音，第二人称双数和复数才会出现异体形式 þit 和 þér，它们本来的形式就是 it 和 ér.

第一和第二人称下，间接格同时也可以当作反身代词使用，反身代词本身也不存在主格，因为习惯上只有 I hurt myself, 而不可能有 †myself hurt I. 在古老的诗歌中，反身代词也经常以后缀形式黏附在动词后，宾格 mik 变成-mk，但是与格也常常以同样的形式添加在动词后。即-mk 是一种近乎通用的表示宾语（无论与格还是宾格）的办法：

þóttumk < þótti mér ‘it seemed to me’

gáfumk íþrótt < gáf mér íþrótt ‘gave me skill’

比较反常的情况是，当这种后缀添加在动词的单数式上时，动词反而要采用对应人称的复数式，这和强动词第三人称单数的中动词尾相呼应（参见2.2.2）。

第三人称人称代词虽然没有双数，但区分阴阳中三性。

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	hann	hon	þat
A	hann	hana	þat
G	hans	hennar	þess
D	honum	henni	því, þí
复数			
N	þeir	þær	þau
A	þá	þær	þau
G	þeir(r)a	þeir(r)a	þeir(r)a
D	þeim	þeim	þeim

第三人称不能像上面一样用间接格表示反身代词，相反另有一个专门的反身代词 sik。如上面所说，sik 没有主格，它既不区分性也不区分数，只按照格变化。

反身代词	
N	-
A	sik
G	sín
D	sér

sik 也添加在动词后面，演变为中动态的标记-sk.

## 4.2 物主代词

古诺尔斯语的物主代词一般是形容词性的，但少数情况下也可以作名词用。

物主代词由人称代词的单数属格衍生出来。由于第一、第二人称的人称代词和第三人称人称代词的构成有区别之处，它们对应的物主代词的构词法也有不同。

物主代词的形容词性要求它必须能按性屈折，这样才能与其修饰的名词保持一致。对于第一、第二人称代词而言，人称代词本来不区分性，因此把它的属格原型作为物主代词的词干，接着按照强变格法添加各个性、数、

格的词尾，例如 *ek* 的属格 *mín* ‘of me’，构成形容词词干 *mín-*，加单数阳性词尾有 \**mín-* + -r > *minn*，注意词干中的长元音在双辅音前缩短。以 *minn* ‘my’ 为例，它的完整变格如下：

性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	<i>minn</i>	<i>mín</i>	<i>mitt</i>
A	<i>minn</i>	<i>mína</i>	<i>mitt</i>
G	<i>míns</i>	<i>minnar</i>	<i>míns</i>
D	<i>mínum</i>	<i>minni</i>	<i>mínu</i>
复数			
N	<i>mírir</i>	<i>mínar</i>	<i>mín</i>
A	<i>mína</i>	<i>mínar</i>	<i>mín</i>
G	<i>minna</i>	<i>minna</i>	<i>minna</i>
D	<i>mínum</i>	<i>mínum</i>	<i>mínum</i>

注意：*minn* 的变格有些许不规则之处，它类似于强动词过去分词的变形。单数阳性宾格以及单数中性主格/宾格都值得注意。

类似地，其余第一、第二人称的物主代词以及反身代词的变化都模仿上述过程，下表给出了它们各个性的单数主格形式：

	词干	阳性	阴性	中性
单数				
1 单	<i>mín-</i>	<i>minn</i>	<i>mín</i>	<i>mitt</i>
2 单	<i>þín-</i>	<i>þinn</i>	<i>þín</i>	<i>þitt</i>
双数				
1 双	<i>okkar-</i>	<i>okkarr</i>	<i>okkur</i>	<i>okkart</i>
2 双	<i>ykkar-</i>	<i>ykkarr</i>	<i>ykkur</i>	<i>ykkart</i>
复数				
1 复	<i>vár-</i>	<i>várr</i>	<i>vár</i>	<i>várt</i>
2 复	<i>yð(v)ar-</i>	<i>yð(v)arr</i>	<i>yður</i>	<i>yð(v)art</i>
反身				
	<i>sín-</i>	<i>sinn</i>	<i>sín</i>	<i>sitt</i>

说明：

- 第二人称复数词干 *yð(v)ar-* 有两写，如果选择不包含 *v* 的词干 *yðar-*，它的变形就和其他双音节形容词一致，弱读元音 *a* 在元音开头的词尾前脱落，如 *yðar-+um* > *yðrum*。但是，如果选择包含 *v* 的词干 *yðvar-*，则不会有这种现象。虽然 *yðvar-* 也有两个音节，但如果脱去了 *a*，半元音 *v* 就出现在两个辅音之间，这是古诺尔斯语所不允许的。
- 词干 *ykkar-* 和 *okkar-* 属于双音节词干，它们规则地适用于双音节形容词的变格法。

第三人称人称代词没有对应的物主代词，只沿用其属格形式就足以表达物主代词的含义，其单数为 *hans*, *hennar*, *þess* 复数都是 *þeira*。

## 4.3 指示代词

指示代词一般即可以作名词用也可以作形容词用，它也采取和第三人称代词类似的异干互补系统。吉诺尔斯语中的指示代词的用法和英语类似，可以用于空间上、时间上或逻辑上的近指或远指。

### 1) 远指代词 **sá**

**sá** 有两层含义，它既可以指示较远的事物，相当于英语的 ‘that’，也可以用作类似于定冠词含义的 ‘the’，用于指示已经提到过的事物。对应地，在作名词时，它也可以表示远处的东西或是已经提到过的事物。**sá** 的变格不规则，但还是有明显的形容词词尾的痕迹，如下所示：

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	sá	sú	þat
A	þann	þá	þat
G	þess	þeir(r)ar	þess
D	þeim	þeir(r)i	því, þí
复数			
N	þeir	þær	þau
A	þá	þær	þau
G	þeir(r)a	þeir(r)a	þeir(r)a
D	þeim	þeim	þeim

注意：**sá** 的所有复数形式以及中性的单数形式都和第三人称代词一致，所以在这种情况下，同一个词可能有多种含义（虽然很多情况下，表意是类似的）。

### 2) 近指代词 **sjá**

**sjá** 是 **sá** 的反义词，它指示相对较近的事物，但一般不提示上下文中出现过的事物。**sjá** 的用法和 **sá** 类似，也兼具形容词和代词的功能。其变格如下：

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	sjá, þessi	sjá, þessi	þetta
A	þenna	þessa	þetta
G	þessa	þessar	þessa
D	þessum	þessi	þessu
复数			
N	þessir	þessar	þessi
A	þessa	þessar	þessi
G	þessa	þessa	þessa
D	þessum	þessum	þessum

### 3) 代词 **hinn**

**hinn** 一般不用作近指或远指代词，它一般表示“另一个”，与前文提到的名词形成对比。**hinn** 也有类似于冠词的用法，这种情况下，它和名词的特指后缀-**inn**（或独立形式 **inn**）表意完全一致。除了中性单数主格/宾格的词尾-**tt** 外，它的变形和 **inn** 一致：

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	hinn	hin	hitt
A	hinn	hina	hitt
G	hins	hinnar	hins
D	hinum	hinni	hinu
复数			
N	hinir	hinar	hin
A	hina	hinar	hin
G	hinna	hinna	hinna
D	hinum	hinum	hinum

## 4.4 关系代词

古诺尔斯语只有一个关系代词 *er*, 其早期形式为 *es*, 后期也用 *sem* 表示和 *er* 相同的意思。准确来说, 这个 *er* 应当表达为关系小品词, 因为所有的定语从句都可以用 *er* 引导 (包括英语中需要使用关系副词的情况)。*er* 不可变格, 没有人称、数或者性的概念。有时在 *er* 的前面加上 *sá* 的变格来指示对应的格、性、数, 例如 *sú er* 指示阴性单数主格。但这种说法也常常会产生分歧, 因为指示代词 *sá* 完全可以理解为修饰先行词的形容词, 这样 *sá* 就是主句的一部分, 从而与 *er* 在从句中的格、性、数没有任何关系了。

在下面的句型中:

...sverð þat er...,

根据省略号处填补的内容, 可以有若干种解读:

1. (that is) the sword, **which** (bears his name)  
þat er 整体作引导词, 在从句中充当主格
2. (that is) the sword, **by which** (he was killed)  
þat 修饰 sverð, er 在从句中充当与格
3. (that is) the sword, **of which** (the legacy is well-known)  
þat 修饰 sverð, er 在从句中充当属格

另一个常见的用法是将 *er* 与一些副词合用, 构成具体的关系副词, 例如:

þar ‘there’ < þar er ‘where’

þá ‘then’ < þá er ‘when’

关于 *er* 引导的从句, 参见 (交叉引用)

## 4.5 疑问代词

古诺尔斯语中基本的疑问代词词干是 *hverj-* ‘who, which, what’, 它既是名词性的又是形容词性的。作形容词时, 按照强变格法变格, 如下所示:

阳性	阴性	中性
单数		

	阳性	阴性	中性
N	hverr	hver	hvert
A	hverjan, hvern	hverja	hvert
G	hvers	hverrar	hvers
D	hverjum, hveim	hverri	hverju
复数			
N	hverir	hverjar	hver
A	hverja	hverjar	hver
G	hverra	hverra	hverra
D	hverjum	hverrjum	hverrjum

作名词时形式和形容词一致，但有一些非常常见的两写：

	阳性/阴性	中性
单数		
N	hverr	hvat
A	hverjan, hvern	hvat
G	hvers, hves(s)	hvers, hves(s)
D	hverjum, hveim	hví

更准确地说，**hverr** 是对大于三个的物体中的哪一个提问，如果要对两个中的哪一个提问，要用另一个词 **hvárr** ‘which of two’。这两个疑问代词反映了古诺尔斯语中残留的双数和复数的区别。**hvárr** 的变形和 **hverr** 完全一致，词干为 **hvár-**，见下表：

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	hvárr	hvár	hvárt
A	hvárn	hvára	hvárt
G	hvárs	hvárrar	hvárs
D	hvárum	hvárri	hváru
复数			
N	hvárir	hvárar	hvár
A	hvára	hvárar	hvár
G	hvárra	hvárra	hvárra
D	hvárum	hvárum	hvárum

某些疑问代词的形式（或变体）固定下来成为副词形式：

疑问副词	含义
hvaðan	从哪里 ‘whence’
hvar	哪里 ‘where’
hvert	到哪里 ‘whither’

疑问副词	含义
hvárt	是否 ‘whether (or not)’
hvé	怎样 ‘how’
hvenær	何时 ‘when’
hví	为何 ‘why’
hversu	到什么程度 ‘how’ (degree)
hvernig	以什么方法 ‘how, in what way’

这些疑问代词（副词）也可以引导间接疑问句。

## 4.6 不定代词

总体来说，不定代词的变格和强形容词一致，它们大多数本身也是形容词。最常见的不定代词如下所示，它们的词干首先给出：

### 1) all- ‘all’

其构词如规则的形容词，它一般都用作强形容词，见下表：

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	allr	qll	allt
A	allan	alla	allt
G	alls	allrar	alls
D	qllum	allri	qllu
复数			
N	allir	allar	qll
A	alla	allar	qll
G	allra	allra	allra
D	qllum	qllum	qllum

其主要用法是：

- 所有形式都可当作形容词或名词用，表示“所有”；
- 单数形式在许多短语中几乎按副词用，表示“完全”： allr í sundr ‘all asunder’；
- 单数中性尤常作不定代词用，类似于英语‘everything’；
- allt 可当作一个宽泛的副词，表示“完全地；直接地；在所有地方；基本上”等；
- 复数 allir 单独使用，表示“所有人；一起”。

### 2) sum- ‘some, certain’

其构词如规则的强形容词，可以作形容词和代词用。

### 3) ein- ‘one’

作不定代词或形容词时区分子 ein 作数词（交叉引用）的情况。其变格大部分是规则的，只有中性的单数主格和宾格是 eitt.

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	einn	ein	eitt
A	einn, einan	eina	eitt
G	eins	einnar	eins
D	einum	einni	einu
复数			
N	einir	einar	ein
A	eina	einar	ein
G	einna	einna	einna
D	einum	einum	einum

其主要用法是：

1. 用作单数时，表示不定代词，表示不特指的某一个；
2. 单数或复数都可以表示“单独的”，用法类似于副词：láta einan ‘let alone’；
3. einna 和其他名词连用，表示强调含义：einna manna bezt ‘best of all single man’；
4. eins 作副词用，表示“以同一方式”，但常和其他词连用，如 eins ok ‘as if’, at eins ‘only’；
5. 和其他代词、名词连用，如 einn hvern ‘each; some’（见下），einn saman ‘together’，hvern ok einn, ‘each and one’，né einn ‘none’，fáir einir ‘few’.

#### 4) annar- ‘other, another’

其变格参见3.5。annat 尤其常作为名词用。

#### 5) nökkur- ‘any, some; a certain’

这个词也按强形容词规则变化，但词形非常复杂<sup>1</sup>。就 nökkur-这个词干而言，有阳性单数宾格 nökkurn；中性单数主格/宾格 nökkut. 有时也用词干 nakkvar-，变形如下：

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	nakkvarr	nökkurr	nökkur
A	nakkvarn	nökkurn	nökkura
G	nakkvars	nökkurs	nökkurar
D		nökkurum	nökkurri
复数			
N	nakkvarir	nökkurir	nökkurar
A	nakkvara	nökkura	nökkurar
G	nakkvarra	nökkurra	nökkurra
D		nökkurum	nökkurum

表格中的空白处表示没有记录到以词干 nakkvar-构成的形式。

<sup>1</sup> 这个词最早的形式是 nekkverr，来自于 né hvern。因此，其最早变格和 hvern 相同，词干为 nekkverj-；后来这个词干脱去-j，按 nekkver-变格，同时，元音发生了变化，有 nekkvar-, nakkver-, nakkvar-等形式，受 v 的影响，a 变为 ö；v 有时也从词干上脱落。最后，这个词在现代冰岛语中还能像双音节形容词一样发生省略。因此这个词记录到的形态非常复杂，有 nökkurr, nakkurr, nekkverr, nakkvarr, nökkverr, nökkvarr, nökkkr, nökkurr 等。

这个词没有特别费解的用法，但常用阳性 nökcurr 指代“任何人”，相当于 anyone，中性 nökcurr 指代“任何事”，相当于 anything。nökcurr 也可以和数词连用，表示“大约”。

### 6) hverj- ‘each, every’

它按强变格变化，参见4.5。hverr 作不定代词时表示“每一个”，它修饰的名词总要用属格，如 gumna hverr ‘each man (=every one of men)’.

### 7) ein- + hverj- ‘each; some’

einn 和 hverr 连在一起构成不定代词。第二个词干 hverj-总是要变格，ein-可能保持 ein-不变，也可变格使之与第二个词干一致。例如单数阳性属格可以是 einshvers 或 einhvers. 这个词有两个含义：

1. 类似于 hverr，表示“每一个”，但语义更强。
2. 类似于 einn，表示“某一个”，如 eina hverja nótt ‘some night’.

### 8) báð- ‘both’

这个词只以复数形式出现，注意中性式的不规则之处。特别地，bæði 常作为副词用，构成 bæði ... ok ... ‘both ... and ...’ 结构。

	阳性	阴性	中性
复数			
N	báðir	báðar	bæði
A	báða	báðar	bæði
G	beggja	beggja	beggja
D	báðum	báðum	báðum

### 9) nein- ‘none, not any’

这个词由 né + einn 得到，其变格参照 einn. neinn 虽然是一个表示否定的代词，但是它单独不能表示否定，必须和其他否定副词连用，最常见的是 ekki: ekki neitt ‘nothing’

### 10) engi ‘no, none’

它由 einn 和否定后缀-gi 结合得到，其部分形式是不规则的：

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	engi	engi	ekki
A	engan, engi	enga	ekki
G	einskis, engis	engrar	einskis, engis
D	engum	engri	engu
复数			
N	engir	engar	engi
A	enga	engar	engi
G	engra	engra	engra
D	engum	engum	engum

这个词的词性也像 *nókkurr* 一样多变，它过去常用 *eing-* 或 *óng-* 词干，有时词干上还有额外的-*v*，出现-*a* 或-*ir* 前，如 *óngvar*, *engvar*; *óngvir*, *engvir*. 另外，有时还在主格上添加-*nn*/-*n* 后缀，有单数阳性主格 *enginn*，单数阴性主格 *eigin*，复数中性主格 *enginn*，其他形式都不添加这个后缀。

*engi* 可以单数使用，相当于英语 ‘none’.

### 11) hvárgi ‘neither’

，这个词的变形也比较多样，参见下表：

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	hvárgi, hvárígr, hvárrgi, hvárugr	hvárgi	hvárki, hvártki
A	hvárgan, hvárngan, hvárngi	hvárga	hvárki, hvártki
G	hvárkis, hvárskis	hvárgrar	hvárkis, hvárskis
D	hvárungi, hvárgum	hvárgrí	hvárugi, hvárgu
复数			
N	hvárgir, hvárígir	hvárgar	hvárgi
A	hvárga	hvárgar	hvárgi
G	hvárgra	hvárgra	hvárgra
D	hvárgum	hvárgum	hvárgum

*hvárgi* 的中性形式 *hvárki* 常构成固定搭配 *hvárki ... né* ‘neither ... nor’，例如 *hvárki til laga né til úlaga* ‘be neither friendly nor hostile’

# 第五章 数词

## 章节要点

- 20 以内的基数词与序数词
- 大数词的构成

- 数词的变格

### 5.1 基数词与序数词

下面是古诺尔斯语中基本的数词：

数字	基数词	序数词
1	einn	fyrstr
2	tveir	annarr
3	þrír	þriði
4	fjórir	fjórði
5	fimm	fimmti
6	sex	sétti
7	sjau	sjaundi
8	áttu	átti, áttandi
9	níu	níundi
10	tíu	tíundi
11	ellifu	ellifti
12	tólf	tólfti
13	þrettán	þrettándi
14	fjórtán	fjórtándi
15	fimmtán	fimmtándi
16	sextán	sextándi
17	sjaután	sjautándi
18	átján	átjándi
19	nítján	nítjándi
20	tuttugu, tvítján	tuttugandi, tvítjándi, tuttugasti,
21	tuttugu ok einn	tuttugandi ok fyrstr
	einn ok tuttugu	fyrstr ok tuttugandi
22	tuttugu ok tveir	tuttugandi ok annarr
30	þrír tigir	þrítugandi
31	þrír tigir ok einn	þrítugandi ok fyrstr
	einn ok þrír tigir	fyrstr ok þrítugandi
40	fjórir tigir	fertugandi
50	fimm tigir	fimmtugandi
60	sex tigir	sextugandi
70	sjau tigir	sjautugandi
80	áttu tigir	áttatugandi

数字	基数词	序数词
90	níu tigir	nítugandi
100	tíu tigir	(tízugandi)
110	ellifu tigir	(ellifutugandi)
120	hundrað	(hundraðasti)
200	hundrað ok átta tigir	(hundraðasti ok áttatugandi)
240	tvau hundrað/hundruð	
960	átta hundrað/hundruð	
1200	þúsund	(þúsandasti)

括号里的序数词形式是从现代冰岛语借过来的。

有一些情况值得注意：

1. 1-12<sup>1</sup> 的形态是数词变化的基础，需要特别注意。而大于 12 的数词一般有迹可循。
2. 3-12 的序数词一般是在词尾上添加-ði/-di/-ti，大于 12 的序数词一般加-andi/-undi.
3. 13-19 的基数词是由词尾-tán 添加在对应的 0-10 的基数词上得到的。
4. 20 以上的整十的基数词由 0-10 的基数词和 tigir 构成。tigir 是 tigr 的复数，表示“一组十个”的概念。
5. 21-29； 31-39 等由整十倍的数词和 0-10 的数词合成，这两个数词哪个在前哪个在后并无影响。
6. hundrað 和 þúsund 与现在的 hundred 和 thousand 表意不同，在基督教传入之前，这两个数词在日耳曼语中一般表示的是 120/1200。因此 200 是由 120 (hundrað) + 80 (átta tigir) 表示的。
7. 120, 1200 的倍数由相应的基数词和 hundrað/þúsund 的复数构成。这种构造类似于整十倍的数词，但是，hundrað 和 þúsund 有时不用复数形式。
8. 20, 100, 120 的序数词也可以添加-asti 词尾。

### 5.1.1 数词的变形

大部分基数词是不可变格的。但 1-4 按形容词变格，与修饰的名词的格、性、数保持一致。只有 ein- 有单数和复数，但作复数时表示“单独的”。其它基数词只有复数形式有完整变格，单数不变格。

ein- ‘one’	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
N	einn	ein	eitt
A	einn	eina	eitt
G	eins	einnar	eins
D	einum	einni	einu
复数			
N	einir	einar	ein
A	eina	einar	ein
G	einna	einna	einna
D	einum	einum	einum

<sup>1</sup> 读者可能会好奇为什么 11 和 12 的形式也不规则。事实上，ellifu 来自于 \*ainalif，tólf 来自于 \*twalif，它们是由数词 1, 2 加上 \*-lif ‘left’ 构成，表示比 10 多 1/2.

tveir ‘two’	阳性	阴性	中性
复数			
N	tveir	tvær	tvau
A	tvá	tvær	tvau
G	tveggja	tveggja	tveggja
D	tveim(r)	tveim(r)	tveim(r)

þrí- ‘three’	阳性	阴性	中性
复数			
N	þrír	þrjár	þrjú
A	þrjá	þrjár	þrjú
G	þriggja	þriggja	þriggja
D	þrim(r)	þrim(r)	þrim(r)

fjór- ‘four’	阳性	阴性	中性
复数			
N	fjórir	fjórar	fjögur
A	fjóra	fjórar	fjögur
G	fjögurra	fjögurra	fjögurra
D	fjórum	fjórum	fjórum

除此之外，只有 tigr, hundrað 和 þúsund 可以变格，其他基数词都不变格。

tigr 按照 u-词干阳性强名词变格，hundrað 按照 a-词干中性强名词变格，þúsund 按照 i-词干阴性强名词变格：

数词			
词干	tig-u-	hundrað-a	þúsund-i-
单数			
N	tigr	hundrað	þúsund
A	tig	hundrað	þúsund
G	tigar	hundraðs	þúsundar
D	tigi	hundraði	þúsund
复数			
N	tigir	hundruð	þúsundir
A	tigu/tigi	hundruð	þúsundir
G	tiga	hundraða	þúsunda
D	tigum	hundruðum	þúsundum

# 第六章 介词

## 章节要点

- 介词的种类及结构
- 常见的介词
- 介词的基本用法

## 6.1 介词的概述

介词是一类不可变化的词类，它们的词形在各种位置上都保持一致。绝大多数情况下，介词都和名词短语一起构成介词短语，表示各类与时间、地点、方式等形状有关的概念。古诺尔斯语的介词短语结构和英语非常相似。在介词短语中，介词几乎总是出现在名词之前的，这也就是英语 **Preposition** 的来源。但偶尔介词也可以出现在名词的后面，这时最好用更准确的说法 **Postposition** 来称呼这类介词。

介词虽然不能发生变格，但它对接续的名词的格有支配性作用。在英语中，这个现象被称为“介宾结构”，即介词后一律接宾格。在古诺尔斯语中，介词后的名词可以是间接格中的任意一个。同一个介词也可能通过接续不同的格来表达不同的含义，熟悉德语的读者立刻会想到“静三动四”的规则，即表示方位性的介词可以接第三格（即与格）名词表示静态的含义，接第四格（即宾格）名词表示动态的含义，如 *in+ 第三/第四格* 可表示英语中的 *in/into*。在古诺尔斯语中，也有类似的情况。

一些介词也可以单独作副词使用。从严格意义上来说，此时介词的词性已经发生了改变，不过这在语义上并不构成区别。参考下面的句子：

1. He walked into the house
2. He walked in without saying ‘hello’

古诺尔斯语中最基本的介词包括 á ‘on’, af ‘off’, at ‘at, to’, frá ‘from’, í ‘in’, með ‘with’, um ‘about, in’, við ‘with’，这几个介词无一例外都由原始日耳曼语继承而来。读者也可以立刻发现，它们的英语翻译几乎就是它们的同源词，形态非常类似。还有一类介词由其他实义名词演变而来，如 til ‘till, to’ 来源于 PGmc. \*tila ‘goal’, meðal ‘between’ 来源于 miðr ‘middle’ 等等。一般来说，第二类介词（即由名词派生出来的介词）往往和第一类介词（即固有的介词，且主要是 á, í, um 这三个）连用，如 í meðal，这个词组整体起到介词的作用，读者也可以把这个词组理解为 ‘in the middle of’ (=between)。不过，这种词组里的第一类介词并不是必要的，也可以省略。有些第二类介词也总是单独使用，如 til。

## 6.2 介词的补语

名词短语是介词最常见的补语，但不同的介词支配不同的格，因而补语需要根据介词的类型变格。此外，介词还可支配从句补语。

### 6.2.1 支配宾格的介词

#### 1. of

of 是一个古老的介词，几乎只出现在诗歌中。它一般支配宾格，但是也可以接与格，格对语义基本没有影响。

of 的主要意思是“在...之上”，相当于英文 ‘over’.

#### 2. um

um 和 of 有密切的联系。这个词最早的形式是 umb，在诗歌中 umb 有时变成了 of，但最后 um 取代了 of 和 umb 成为了最常见的形式。um 有以下几个意思：

## (a). 表示环绕

相当于英语的 ‘around’，这是 um 最基本的含义：

fara í hring um skipit ‘go in a ring around the ship = circle around the ship’

## (b). 表示表面

泛指“经过... 的表面”，类似于英语的 ‘over, about’，但这个介词主要不是表达位置关系的（见 á），参考下面的例子：

um allar sveitir ‘all over the country’

kominn um langan veg ‘come a long way off’

herja um Skotland ‘harry Scotland’

## (c). 表示越过

大致表示“越过，从上面经过”等，和 of 的意思相似，类似于英语 ‘across, over, beyond, past’，和表示动作的动词连用：

sigla vestr um Bretland ‘sail west past Bretland’

ríða um tún ‘pass by a place/house’

bera øl um eld ‘bear the ale across the fire’

另外，表示这个含义时，um 有时也可以接与格。

## (d). 表示时间

um 接续表示时间的名词时有两种用法：

## I. 接续段时间

表示 ‘during’，尤强调时间的持续性（相比 á 和 í）：

um nótt ‘throughout the night’

um alla daga ‘all day long’

## II. 接续点时间

表示 ‘at’：

um dagmál, náttmál<sup>1</sup> ‘at morning, night’

## (e). 引申义

um 的引申义非常多，它最主要的意思由 ‘around’ 延伸出来，大致表示“关于，涉及”，相当于英语 ‘of, about, concerning’：

tala, þræta, spryja um e-t ‘speak of, quarrel about, ask about something’

## 3. (í) gegnum

表示“穿过”，相当于英语的 ‘through’。括号中的 í 表示这个第一类介词是可加可不加的，即 gegnum 和 í gegnum 都正确。

leggja í gegnum skjoldinn ‘thrust through the shield’

## 4. um fram

表示“越过，超过；多于”，类似于英文 ‘beyond, over, more than’：

um fram alla menn ‘more than any man’

## 6.2.2 支配与格的介词

所有表示“从... 而来；离开...”等类似含义的介词都支配与格，因为原始印欧语的离格（Ablative）<sup>2</sup>合并到了日耳曼语的与格当中。当然，还有一部分其他的介词也支配与格。

<sup>1</sup> dagmál, náttmál 的字面义是 ‘day-meal, night-meal’，它们用来表示时间，分别相当于早上的八九点

<sup>2</sup> 或译为夺格，从格。印欧语中表示“从... 离开”这一含义的名词格。

## 1. af

af 的含义非常多，下面列举几个主要的用法：

### (a). 表示来源

表示“从... 表面/上面而来”，相当于‘off, from’，它尤其对应使用 á（‘on’，参见6.2.4中相应内容）表示的地点。也就是说，如果表示“在某处”用的是 á + swh，那么“从该处来”就用 af + swh：

draga gullring af hendi sér ‘take the golden ring from his hand’

☞ hringr er á hendi sér ‘the ring is on his hand’

hlaupa af hesti sínum ‘jump off his horse’

☞ ríða á hesti sínum ‘ride on his horse’

但是，有些用 í ‘in’, um ‘around’, yfir ‘over’ 提示的地点也会用到 af，这些是习惯性的表达：

(sjómenn) koma af hafi ‘(of sailors) come back from the ocean’

☞ í hafi ‘at sea’ (参见 í 的用法I.)

taka af herklæðum ‘take off the armour’

☞ setja herklæði yfir honum ‘put armour over him’

### (b). 表示时间

表示“过了...”，相当于英文‘past, gone from’：

af barnsaldri ‘having past adolescence’

mitik var af nótt 字面义 ‘much was gone from the night’ (= much of the night was past’)

### (c). 引申义

#### I. 表示部分

表示整体中的一部分，相当于英文‘of, off’：

hlutr af Skotlandi ‘a big part of Scotland’

hoggva hond, hofuð, fót af honum ‘cut his hand, head, foot off’

#### II. 表示材质

和 ór 同义，但 ór 用得更多些：

hringr af gulli ‘golden ring’

#### III. 表示原因

类似于英文‘out of, by reason of’：

af frændsemis sokum ‘for kinship’s sake’

úbygðr af frosti ok kulda ‘uninhabited because of frost and cold’

#### IV. 表示被动句的施事

就一般情况而言，主动句中施事是主语，受事是宾语；在被动句中同一动作的受事提升为主语，而施事常常被省略（因为被动句更关心动作本身或动作的受事），如果在被动句中要表达施事，可以用 af，它的作用相当于英文的‘by’：

meira virðr af mönnum ‘highly esteemed by men’

## 2. ór

### (a). 表示来源

和 af 相反，ór 表达的概念是“从... 内部而来”，因此它与 í（‘in’，参见6.2.4中相应内容）相呼应。因此，它相当于英文的‘out of’：

hlaupa út ór stofunni ‘run out of the building’

### (b). 表示材料

这是 ór 的引申义，和 af 表材料时用法、意义都相同。

## 3. frá

偶尔也有 *ífrá, áfrá* 的形式，相当于英文的 ‘from’。区别于 *af* 和 *ór, frá* 并不和某些表示静态位置的介词严格对应，它宽泛地表示“来源；分离；起始”等概念，既可以接续表示地点的名词，也可以接续表示时间的名词：

skamt frá ánni ‘not far from the river’

frá þessum degi ‘from this day’)

#### 4. undan

##### (a). 表示方向

*undan* 的基本意思是“从下面”，由 *undir ‘under’* 这一形容词演变而来，但增加了离格的含义。它相当于英文的 ‘from beneath’：

springa upp undan borðinu ‘jump up from the table’

##### (b). 表示远离

表示“躲避、撤退、逃离”等含义时，可用 *undan*：

renna undan óvinum ‘run away from enemies’

#### 5. at

相当于英文中的 ‘at’ 和 ‘to’，有多种含义：

##### (a). 表示方向

相当于 ‘at, to, towards’，常和表示位移的动词连用，既可以和具体的地点名词连用，也可以和一些抽象名词连用表示“投身于某事”等类似的含义：

fara, ganga, koma at ... ‘travel to, go to, come to ...’

ríða at hrossum, sauðum 字面义 ‘go to the horses, sheep’，实际表示照看它们，类似于 ‘attend to’

*at* 常有“接近”的含义：

ganga allt at honum ‘go quite up to him’

有时，动词 +*at* 含有一定的敌意，和英语类似（比较 *shout to* 和 *shout at*）：

renna at ... ‘rush at, assault ...’

##### (b). 表示地点

宽泛地表示“在”，并不提示位置关系，相当于英语的 ‘at’，常和表示静态的、存在性的动词连用：

sitja, standa, vera at ... ‘sit, stay, be at ...’

##### (c). 表示时间

一般接续时刻，特别是表示某事发生的那个瞬间时，常用 *at*，和英文中的用法类似。除了接续表示时间的名词外，如果接续表示事件的名词，则表示这个事件发生的时刻：

at sinni ‘at present’

at skilnaði ‘at their parting = when they parted’

##### (d). 引申义

###### I. 表示变化

变化的方向常用 *at* 提示，相当于英文的 ‘to’：

brenna at qsku ‘burn to ashes’

verða at e-u ‘turn into something’

###### II. 表示来源

表示从某人获得信息、知识、物品等时可用 *at*，意思等同于 *frá*：

nema frœði at e-m ‘learn knowledge from someone’

kaupa land at e-m ‘buy the land from someone’

### III. 表示遵循

相当于 ‘according to’:

at ráði allra vitrustu manna ‘according to the device from all the wisest men’

### IV. 表示方面

由表示地点的 at 引申而来，类似于 ‘be good at’ 中的 at，表示 ‘as to, in respect of, in regards to’:

auðigr at fé ‘wealthy of goods’

spekingr at viti ‘wise man in terms of wits = a man of great intellect’

此外，在诗歌中也出现过 at+ 宾格表示“跟随”的用法，与 eptir 含义相同。

## 6. (í) gegn; (á/i) móti(i)

这两个介词都表示“相反”，相当于 ‘against, opposite to’。另外请注意和 (í) gegn 和 (í) gegnum 的区别，后者是接宾格的。有时这两个介词也有“直冲着”的意思，是从“相反”这个含义进一步演化过来的：

mæla honum í gegn ‘speak against him’

sjá í móti sólu ‘look straight at the sun’

## 7. hjá

### (a). 表示相邻

表示“紧靠着；毗邻”，相当于英文中 ‘by, near’。因此，这个词也有“与…一起”的意思：

setjask niðr hjá honum ‘take a seat by his side’

vera hjá e-m ‘stay with someone’

### (b). 表示经过

相当于英文中 ‘passing by’:

sneiða hjá ... ‘pass by ...’

farask hjá ‘pass by one another’

## 8. nær

表示“接近”，相当于英文 ‘near’，可接地点和时间名词。这个介词由形容词的原型演变而来，因此有时出现在名词的后面：

brautu nær ‘near the road’

nær aptni ‘near night’

### 6.2.3 支配属格的介词

## 1. til

til 是最常见的接续属格的介词。

### (a). 表示方向

相当于 ‘to, towards’:

ganga til kirkju, boðs ... ‘go to church, banquet ...’

ganga til svefn ‘go to sleep’

### (b). 表示时间

表示时间上的“直到...”，相当于 ‘til, until’:

til dauðadags ‘til the day of death’

### (c). 表示目的

表示“目的、能力、性质”等，相当于英语中表示目的的‘to do’不定时中的‘to’或者‘for’，参见例句：

hross til reiðar ‘horse for riding’  
 hlaðinn til hafs ‘ready for use’  
 sverð öruggt til vápns ‘sword reliable (enough) to be a weapon = a reliable sword’

### 2. (á/i) meðal/milli/millum

这三个复合介词都表示同一个意思“在...之间”，相当于英文中‘between, among, in the middle of’，可以接时间概念也可以接地点概念：

meðal þín ok annarra ‘between you and another’  
 milli jóla ok fóstu<sup>3</sup> ‘between Yule and Lent’  
 sigla millum landa ‘sail from one land to another’

### 3. innan

表示“在...之内”，相当于‘within’，可接时间和地点名词：

innan lítils tíma ‘within a short time’  
 innan borgar ‘in town’

## 6.2.4 支配与格和宾格的介词

相当一部分的介词既可以支配与格又可以支配宾格，名词使用哪个格主要根据语义来决定。一般来说，介词短语表示静态的、方位性质（Location）的概念时，名词用其与格形式；表示动态的、方向性质（Motion）的概念时，则用宾格。当然，除了静态——动态这一区分外，有些介词在表示时间概念的时候接宾格，表示地点概念的时候接与格。有些介词既能接与格表示时间也能接宾格表示时间，但支配与格时表意更倾向于一次性的、特定的时间范畴，而接宾格时则有表达重复性的时间概念的含义。

以下是一些常见的可支配与格和宾格的介词，本书给出了它们的一般用法，但许多介词都有多种含义，读者需要经常借助字典解决：

### 1. á

á是一个典型的支配与格和宾格的介词。它有表示时间和地点两方面的用法：

#### (a). 接与格

##### I. 表示地点

表示“在...之上”，相当于英语的‘on’, ‘upon’，如：

á gólfí ‘on the floor’  
 á sjá ok á landi ‘on sea and land’

与‘land’及其相关派生词连用时，基本上用 á，如 á Englandi, Írlandi, Skotlandi.

当然，不是所有英语用介词‘on’的情况在古诺尔斯语中就用 á，许多用法仍是习惯性的。特别地，á 和 í（另见下）的用法常常有重叠的地方，如 á himni ok jorðu ‘in heaven and on earth’，但有 í helviti ‘in hell’，读者从英文翻译中也能发现语义相近的概念接续的介词不一定相同。

##### II. 表示时间

表示时间过程，相当于英语的‘during’，如：

á því ári, sumri ... ‘during that year, summer ...’

<sup>3</sup> Jól（英文 Yule）是古日耳曼地区在冬至时庆祝的节日，后来在基督教传入后演变为圣诞节；Fasta（英文称 Lent）是大斋节，基督教传入后带来的节日，大约在每年的二月至三月。

### III. 固定用法, 表示身体部位

表示某人的身体部位时, 一般不用所有格(属格), 而常用介词短语。如:

hendr, eyru ... á mér ‘my hand, ear ... =(hendr mír, 正确但不自然)’

但表示人体内的部分(hjarta ‘heart’, auga ‘eye’)时, 一般用 í.

有些时候, 表示类似于人的肢体和人这样不可分离的所有关系时, 也用 á 表达, 如 dyrr á húsi ‘door of the house’.

#### (b). 接宾格

##### I. 表示地点

表示动态地“来到...之上”, 相当于英语‘onto’, 如:

ganga á land ‘come ashore’

##### II. 表示时间

表示时间时的, 介词的“动态性”比较隐秘, 如 á morgun 表示的是即将到来的早晨, 即‘tomorrow’。

除此之外, 接与格和接宾格的不同点在于接宾格时一般要用名词的特指形式, 而接与格时不用; 接宾格时, 表意更倾向于重复性的时间概念, 因此表示节日、一周中的某天时, 也用宾格。

á vetrinn ‘every winter’

á Jóladaginn ‘on Yule’s day’

á Sunnudag ‘on Sunday’

## 2. í

í 是 á 的反义词, 也有表示时间和地点两方面的用法:

#### (a). 接与格

##### I. 表示地点

表示“在...内部”, 相当于英语的‘in’, 接与格表示静态的方位含义。特别地, 它常和表示岛屿、深谷、峡湾、树林、洼地、江河湖海的名词连用:

í húsi, höll, skála ... ‘in the house, hall, lodge ...’

í eyju, dal, firði, skógi ... ‘in the island, dale, firth, woods ...’

í lægi, á, loek, hafi ... ‘in the bay, river, lake, ocean ...’

##### II. 表示时间

和 á 含义类似。表示时间时一般用宾格较多。

#### (b). 接宾格

##### I. 表示地点

与接与格的含义相对, 表示动态的过程, “进入...的内部”, 相当于英语的‘into’:

sigla í haf ‘sail into the sea’

verpa sér í sœðulinn ‘throw oneself into the saddle=(mount)’

##### II. 表示时间

大致等于英语的‘during, at’, í 接时间概念时, 经常和一天中的部分连用:

í miðjan morgin ‘in the middle of morning=(at six o’clock)’

它也常常表示“距离现在最近的时刻”, 相当于英文中的‘this+时间’:

í morgin, kveld, nott, vetr ... ‘this morning, evening, tonight, winter ...’

## 3. eptir

eptir 接与格和宾格时表示不同的含义, 它相当于英语的‘after’.

#### (a). 接与格

表示地点含义的“在...之后，跟着...”时用与格：

ríða eptir þeim ‘ride after him’

(b). 接宾格

表示时间含义的“在...之后”时用宾格：

ár eptir ár ‘year after year’

eptir e-n 常表示“在某人死后；继承某人的遗产”之类的含义：

taka arf eptir fóður sinn ‘take inheritance after his father’

#### 4. fyrir

fyrir 大致是 eptir 的反义词，这个词有多种形式。它一般写作 fyrir 或 firir，但有时也缩略为单音节的 fyr。

(a). 接与格

I. 表示地点

表示“在...之前”，相当于英语的‘before, for, fore-’。在这个基本意义的基础上，“向前”引申出“在...面前，当面”“引导...”等含义。特别地，与表示言说的动词连用时，fyrir 表示的就是说话的对象：

fyrir dyrum ‘before the doors, at the doors’

fyrir Guði ‘before God’

mæla fyrir honum ‘say before him = tell him, say to him’

á varð fyrir þeim ‘a river was in front of them’

ráða fyrir landi, ríki ... ‘reign over the land, kingdom ...’

II. 表示时间

表示“在...之前”，相当于英语的‘ago’：

fyrir þrem nótum ‘three nights ago’ fyrir stundu ‘a while ago’

III. 引申义

fyrir 有很多引申义，这往往要根据上下文决定。

A. 表示对于

尤用在不好的事情上，英语中类似于‘it is bad for sb. to do something’中的‘for sb.’可用 fyrir e-m 表示：

taka fé fyrir qðrum ‘take anothers’ money’ fyrir qðrum

表受害的对象

fara illa fyrir e-m ‘become bad, turn out to be ill for someone’

B. 表示原因

和英文中‘for’表示原因同理：

deyja fyrir harmi ‘die because of sorrow’

进一步地，可以表示“受...影响”时也可用 fyrir。在表示对抗、争斗时尤其常见：

hafa bana fyrir þeim 字面义：‘have death before them’，

实际表示受他们的影响而死（=‘be killed by them’）

verða halloki fyrir þeim ‘become overcome before them  
= be overcome in their fighting’

C. 其他引申义

fyrir 还有许多其他引申义，往往和动词的语义有关，如 leiða fyrir skipi ‘helm the ship’，请读者查阅词典解决。

(b). 接宾格

与接与格时的表意类似，但多了一层动态的含义。

### I. 表示地点

#### A. 基本含义

动态地“来到...之前”，一般和表示位移的动词连用：

ganga fyrir þeim ‘go before them’

#### B. 复合结构

在 fyrir + -an 型副词 + 宾格名词这一复合结构中，它表示“沿着某个方向”，这个方向是由-an 型副词指定的：

ríða fyrir austan dyrr ‘ride east towards the door’

spjót kom í skjóld fyrir ofan mundriðann ‘the spear hit the shield above the handle’

### II. 表示时间

相当于英文的‘before’，与接与格时表示的‘ago’有语义上的差别。fyrir + D 是从现在时间往回推算与格名词表示的时间长度，而 fyrir + A 表示的是宾格名词代表的时间之前的任意一个时刻。这个区别和英语中的‘before’和‘ago’是一样的。

fyrir sól ‘before sunrise’

### III. 引申义

#### A. 表示代替

近似于英语中表示“代替；交换”等含义的‘for’：

ganga fyrir þik ‘go for you, go in your stead’

gjalda þrjár merk fyrir hana ‘pay three marks for her’

#### B. 其他引申义

和与格的情况一样，接宾格时有些词组有特殊的含义，请查阅字典解决。

## 5. með

### (a). 接与格

með 的用法基本和英语‘with’相同。

#### I. 表示伴随

相当于英文的‘with, together’，如：

fara með honum ‘go with him’

#### II. 表示工具

相当于英文的‘with’或某些与格名词的用法（古诺尔斯语的与格继承了原始印欧语的工具格，参见交叉引用），如：

verja sik með sverðum, skjoldum ‘defend oneself with swords, shields’

#### III. 表示方式

相当于英文‘with, by, using’，如：

með sama hætti ‘in the same manner’

með hlaupi ‘by running’

#### IV. 表示范围之中

相当于英文‘among’，如：

siðr með kaupmönnum ‘custom among merchants’

### (b). 接宾格

#### I. 表示伴随

和接与格的表伴随含义类似，但是接宾格时有“携带、支配”之义，而非是简单的“与...一起”。因此，宾格名词一般是无生命的：

fara með vápn ‘go carrying a weapon’

## II. 表示材料

相当于 ‘made with’, 如:

kirkja með stein ‘stone church’

## 6. undir

undir 的含义和英文 ‘under’ 类似。

### (a). 接与格

表示静态方位 “在... 之下”, 如:

undir hesti hans ‘under his horse’

### (b). 接宾格

表示动作 “来到... 之下”, 如:

fara undir skipit ‘come from beneath the ship’

无论是接与格还是宾格, undir 和一些动词连用也有引申含义, 请读者查阅字典解决。

## 7. yfir

yfir 是 undir 的反义词, 与英文 ‘over’ 类似。

### (a). 接与格

表示静态位置 “在... 之上”, 如:

stenda yfir Niflheimi ‘stand over Nifheim’

### (b). 接宾格

表示动作 “来到... 之上”, 如:

hlaupa yfir netit ‘jump over the net’

vexa yfir hann ‘grow over him = be taller than him’

无论是接与格还是宾格, yfir 和一些动词连用也有引申含义, 请读者查阅字典解决。

## 8. við

### (a). 接与格

#### I. 表示位置

表示 “靠着”, 相当于英文 ‘against’, 如:

slá honum niðr við steininum ‘smash him down to the stone’

#### II. 表示伴随、工具、方法

此时和 með 同义。með 和 við 在历史上发生了语义上的混淆, 因此 við + D 也可以表示大部分 með + D 的功能。

### (b). 接宾格

#### I. 表示位置

相当于 ‘near, by’, 如:

sitja við elda ‘sit by fire’

skjoldr við skjold ‘shield to shield (in a row)’

#### II. 表示时间

表示 “接近... 时刻”, 类似于英文中 ‘at, towards’, 如:

við þat sjálft ‘at that moment’

við aptan ‘at night’

#### III. 表示方向

相当于 ‘towards, to, respecting, regarding’, 一般接表示人或物的名词, 和动词连用提示动作的对象:

tala, mæla, segja; ræða við e-n ‘talk to, consult someone’

#### IV. 表示伴随

和 með 接宾格时含义类似。

#### V. 引申义

##### A. 表示原因

广泛地表示造成某种现象的原因，类似于 ‘by, at, with’ 等。此时，við 可以和各种词类连用：

falla við hogg ‘fall by a stroke’

verða glaðr, reiðr við ... ‘be glad, angry with ...’

sigla við stjørnu-ljós ‘sail by star-light’

##### B. 表示相符

表示 “相符，适合”，类似于英语 ‘according to, after’：

gera klæði við vóxt hans ‘make clothes according to his shape’

skapaðr við sik ‘shaped according to oneself = be well shaped’

### 6.2.5 其他接多个格的介词

还有两个介词不属于上述的分类，它们分别是 útan 和 án：

#### 1. útan

útan 可接属格和宾格，它有两个含义：

##### (a). 表示外部

既可以表示 “从外部来”，也可以单纯地表示 “在外部”，相当于英文 ‘(from) outside’，此时用属格：

fara útan heraðs ‘go outside the district’

##### (b). 表示缺少

相当于英文 ‘without’，此时接宾格：

þeir eru útan sætta ‘they are without a settlement’

#### 2. án

án 相当于英语中的 ‘without’，它是唯一一个可以接任意一个间接格的介词，格不影响含义。不过后来基本只用属格。

Kristnin mátti eigi vera lengi án stjórnarmanninn ‘The Church could not be long without its leader’

### 6.2.6 介词的从句补语

古诺尔斯语中几乎所有的介词都可以接从句补语，这个从句由 at 引导，它可以是限定的，也可以是非限定的（参见）。

介词引导非限定从句时，类似于英语中介词 +doing 的用法：

- (1) strengir váru hafðir til at festa skip  
ropes were used to that fast ship  
'Ropes were used for making the ship fast'

介词引导限定性从句的情况比较少，常见的是类似于 til at 这样表示结果的习惯说法：

- (2) skal ek nauðga þeim til at þeir segi it sanna  
shall I force them to that they tell-SUB the truth  
'I shall force them to tell the truth'

## 6.3 省略补语的介词用法

如果介词的补语可以从上下文判断，那么此时补语可以省略，使得介词好像副词一般使用。例如一段阐述冰岛语字母体系的文献中有下面这句话：

- (1) ór eru teknir samhljóðendr nökcurir ór látinustafrófi, en nökcurir í gørvir  
out are taken consonants some from latin-alphabet, but some in made  
'Some consonants from Latin alphabet are taken out of our alphabet, but some are added'

在本句中，两个介词 ór 和 í 都省略了 váru stafrófi 'our alphabet'.

有时候这种省略更加隐蔽，因为介词后出现了其他名词短语，它虽然不是介词的补语，但可能是句子的其他成分，例如：

- (2) hann finnr, at þar var stungit í sverði Sigmundar  
He finds, that there was thrust in sword-D Sigmund-G  
'He finds that it was pierced by Sigmund's sword'

在这句话中，与格名词 sverði 甚至和介词 í 是搭配的，但 í sverði 'in sword' 这种说法是不成立的。因此，只能把 sverði Sigmundar 理解为方式状语。本句实际上是省略了主语 it 的被动句，其主动句为 Sigmundr stingr sverði hans í honum 'Sigmund stabs his sword in him'.

有时古诺尔斯语中还有用两个介词短语（同时是表示方位的）来表示复杂的位置关系。这时第一个介词短语的补语省略，出现了两个介词连在一起的情况。有时这种结构在英语中也存在，有时则是不被英语语法允许的。

út í Skotlandi 'from the inland of Scotland'

ofan ór hlíðinni 'down from the slope'

此时第一个介词可以被理解为副词，这个作副词用的介词也可以放到完整的介词短语的后面，如：

á land upp 'up onto land'

í sjá ofan 'down into ocean'

第二部分

读本

# 第一章 诗体埃达选读

埃达（Edda）是两本古冰岛文学的统称，内容多与北欧神话有关。Edda 在古诺尔斯语中是“太祖母”的意思，由此可能延伸出“古老的传统”之意。也有人认为 edda 一词是冰岛学者斯诺里·斯图鲁松（Snorri Sturluson）从拉丁语的 *edo*（诗歌）仿造而来。

埃达包括两本，按照创作的年代分为“老埃达”和“新埃达”。老埃达的创作年代是维京人活动的时期，大约在 9 到 11 世纪之间。从形式上来看，老埃达主要是可以吟诵的诗歌（从某些角度看，十分类似于先秦的《诗经》），由游吟诗人口口相传，形容了一种独特的口头文学形式。因此，老埃达又叫“诗体埃达”。老埃达共包含诗歌三十余篇，今人已不知道他们确切的作者，只能从语言风格等角度进行推断。新埃达与老埃达不同，它是由斯诺里·斯图鲁松于十三世纪写定的散文体神话传奇，因此，也称新埃达为“散文埃达”或“斯诺里埃达”。有趣的是，从创作时间上来看，老埃达基本上比新埃达要早一百余年，但是老埃达成书的时间却可能要比新埃达晚 50 年，这是因为直到 13 世纪人们才将传诵的老埃达抄写到手稿上。

本章节节选了两部诗体埃达的名篇：《女巫的预言》和《高人的箴言》。其中的诗篇多是四行诗，每行又分两个半句，每句对音节的轻重又有进一步的要求。古代日耳曼地区的诗歌对韵尾要求不高，但常压头韵（Alliteration），即让一行韵文的好几个词头的第一个字母不断重复，以达到音韵上的和谐。当然，本书的目的主要在于通过诗歌理解语法，而非学习诗歌的格律，因为这部分内容完全可以专门用一本书来讲。不过，这也并不妨碍读者在阅读时感受韵文的节奏感。

## 1.1 女巫的预言（*Voluspá*）选读

《女巫的预言》（*Voluspá*）出自诗体埃达的第一篇，主要记录了北欧的创世神话以及神族最后的灭亡。故事的内容大致是：奥丁召唤了一个已经死去的女巫（*Volva*）为他讲述世界的历史和自己的命运。奥丁本身是非常渴求知识的神，而死者在北欧神话里往往有不低的地位，因为人们相信他们具有更加丰富的经验和老道的资历。从下文的对话来看，女巫应当是巨人族中的一员。她依次向奥丁回忆了世界的开辟，时间的流动，人类的创造，命运三女神的到来，矮人的姓名以及两大神族间的战争和诸神最终的命运。在神族最后的战争后，绝大多数神都殒命于此，而世界重新进入了下一个轮回。本书选择的文本都是经过修订的标准古诺尔斯语（关于正字法的说明，请参照交叉引用），并非中世纪手稿中直接记录下来的形式，例如原文中的 *oc* 应被改写作 *ok*。第一部分选择了其 1-8 节，讲述的是世界开辟和阿萨神族生活的故事。

<sup>1</sup> Hljóðs bið ek allar helgar kindir  
Of silence ask I all sacred kinsmen  
Meiri ok minni, mógu Heimdallar<sup>1</sup>  
Bigger or smaller, sons of Heimdall  
Viltu, at ek, Valföðr<sup>2</sup>! vel framtelja  
You wish, that I, Father of the Slain, well forth-tell  
Forn spjoll fíra, þau er fremst um man  
Old tales of men, those which first about I remember

I ask silence from all sacred kinsmen  
列位神明啊！请你们安静下来听我讲  
Greater or smaller, sons of Heimdall  
无论长幼尊卑，海姆达尔的子孙们啊  
Father of the Slain! You wish, that I well recite  
英灵之父奥丁啊！你想让我仔细说说  
The old tales of men, which I remember long ago  
我所记得的远古往事，如今从头说起

<sup>1</sup> 海姆达尔是神和人类的守护神。一方面，他在天上观察着想要入侵阿斯加德的敌人，最后在诸神黄昏时，海姆达尔将吹响号角召集诸神和英雄。另一方面，海姆达尔创造了人类的三个阶级：奴隶（*Þræll*），农民/自由民（*Karl*）和贵族（*Jarl*），这三个阶级都认为海姆达尔是守护神。这里所说的海姆达尔的子孙，很可能既包括神也包括人。

<sup>2</sup> Valföðr (*valr + fōðr*)，直译为“死者之父”，是奥丁的别名之一。奥丁司掌英灵殿，他每天从战死的人中挑选英勇的战士升入英灵殿。

### 语法

#### 1. hljóðs bið

hljóðs 是 hljóð 的属格形式，动词 biðja ‘ask, bid’ 接续一个属格宾语和一个宾格或与格宾语，属格宾语表示要求的物，宾格或与格宾语表示向谁提出要求，相当于英语中的 ask sb. for sth. 结构。许多类似含义的动词也有相似的用法。

#### 2. helgar

原型 heilagr, 多音节形容词变形时常省去非重读的 i.

#### 3. meiri ok minni

这里的比较级并没有确定的比较的对象，只有强调语义的作用。

#### 4. viltu

相当于 vilt + þu, 人称代词和词尾合写到一起，这种现象在早期诗歌中尤其常见。

#### 5. spjoll

中性 a-词干名词，单数主格 spjall, 相当于英语 ‘spell’. 诗歌中常用其复数形式，表示“消息，故事”。

#### 6. fíra

主格 fírar, 只有复数形式。只在诗歌中出现的古老词汇。

#### 7. um man

um 的一种古老的用法，有时也写作 of，几乎总出现在动词或分词前，它没有明显的含义，几乎是多余的。Fritzner 认为早期的古诺尔斯语可能需要这个词来提示动词的及物性（um 前的部分常是其接续的动词的宾语）。在诗歌中这种用法并不罕见，下面我们会经常遇到。

<sup>2</sup> Ek man jöttna ár um borna  
*I remember giants ago over born*  
 Þá er forðum mik foedda hófðu  
*That which ago me fed had*  
 Níu man ek heima, níu íviði  
*Nine remember I worlds, nine trees*  
 Mjötvíð mœran fyr mold neðan  
*Measure-tree famous before soil neath*

I remember giants that were born long ago  
 我记得远古时代的巨人们  
 Who had fed me in years of yore  
 很久以前他们将我抚养大  
 I remember nine worlds and nine trees  
 曾有九个世界与九棵大树  
 The tree that measures beneath the soil  
 衡量一切的大树植根地下

### 语法

#### 1. níu man ek heima

ek man níu heima, 注意这里形容词被提到句首，其修饰的名词并不总是紧邻着它。

#### 2. fyr

fyrir 的简写。

<sup>3</sup> Ár var alda þar er Ýmir bygði  
*Early it was of age when Ymir settled*  
 Vara sandr né sær né svalar unnir  
*Was no sand nor sea nor cold waves*  
 Jörð fannsk æva né upphiminn  
*Earth was found never nor up-heaven*  
 Gap var ginnunga, enn gras hvergi  
*Gap was of void, still grass nowhere*

It was early of age, when Ymir settled  
 依米尔活着时，时间才刚刚开始  
 There was no sand no sea no cold waves  
 没有沙，没有海，没有沁沁波涛  
 The earth was not found nor heaven above  
 那时天地尚未分，世界一片混沌  
 There was a gap of void, yet not any grass  
 只有鸿沟深不见底，何处寻芳草

### 语法

#### 1. vara

系动词 var+ 否定后缀-a, 注意这里的单数形式和 sandr 保持一致。

#### 2. æva

古老的副词, 又写作 æfa. 这个词表示“永远”或“永不”, 古诺尔斯语表示‘ever’的副词很多也能表示‘never’, 因为原先的否定词尾-gi 脱落了 (æva < æva-gi). 类似的例子还有: aldri < aldri-gi; ei < ei-gi 等。

#### 3. fannsk

finna 的反身式, finnask 有略微的被动含义, 也有一定表示存在性的意味, 类似于‘to be found, to occur’.

<sup>4</sup> Áðr Burs synir bjóðum um ypðu

*First of Bur sons earth over raised*

Þeir er Miðgarð moeran skópu

*Those who Midgard great shaped*

Sól skein sunnan á salar steina

*Sun shone from the south along hall's stones*

Þá var grund gróin gróenum lauki

*Then was soil grown green leek*

First the sons of Bur raised the earth

起初布尔的儿子们开天辟地

Who shaped the great Midgard

他们筑起伟岸的米德加尔德

The sun shone from the south on the stone wall

太阳从南升起照亮宫殿石墙

The soil was covered with green plants

大地上生机盎然, 郁郁葱葱

### 语法

#### 1. sól skein sunnan á salar steina; grund gróin gróenum

整齐的头韵, 古代日耳曼地区的诗歌多有这个特点。

#### 2. lauki

laukr 的单数属格。laukr (韭葱, 英文 leek) 是一种和大葱形似的绿色植物, 欧洲十分常见。这里可以就把它理解为植物。用与格表示方式状语。

<sup>5</sup> Sól varp sunnan, sinni mána

*Sun cast from the south, companion of moon*

Hendi inni hœgri um himinjódyr

*With hand the more skillful around the rim of heaven*

Sól þat ne vissi hvar hon sali átti

*Sun that not knew where she hall had*

Máni þat ne vissi hvat hann megin átti

*Moon that not knew what he of strength had*

Stjörnur þat ne vissu hvar þær staði áttu

*Stars that not knew where they places had*

The sun, companion of the moon, rose from the south

太阳从南升起, 月是她的伴侣

Casting the right hand around the rim of heaven

她伸出右手环绕在天空的银边

The sun knew not where she had her hall

太阳不知道她要进入哪个殿堂

The moon knew not what kind of strength he had

月亮不知道他有什么神力要掌

The stars knew not where they had their places

星星不知道她们的归宿在何方

### 语法

注意本段中的人称代词的用法和汉语的习惯不同。例如太阳一般认为是阳刚的形象, 汉语中常用“他”来指称, 但由于古诺尔斯语中 sól 是阴性名词, 因此用阴性的人称代词 hon. 月亮和星星的情况与之类似。其他语法:

#### 1. hendi inni hœgri

字面意思是“更熟练的手”, hœgri 是 hœgr ‘easy, convenient’ 的比较级, 但它的含义是“右”。与之相反的是 vinstri, 它也按比较级变格, 但没有原级和最高级。

## 2. hvat hann megins átti

megins 是属格，而 eiga 接宾格，因此 megins 在这里和 hvat 相呼应。hvat+ 属格或与格表示对种类、性质的提问，相当于 ‘what kind of’: hvat megins ‘what kind of strength’.

<sup>6</sup> Pá gengu regin qll á rökstóla  
*Then went powers all to judgment-seats*  
 Ginnheilug goð, ok um þat gættusk  
*Mighty-sacred god, and on that took counsel*  
 Nátt ok niðjum nöfn um gáfu  
*Night and moon name concerning gave*  
 Morgen hétu ok miðjan dag  
*Morning named and mid day*  
 Undorn ok aptan, árum at telja  
*Afternoon and evening, years to enumerate*

Then all the powers went to the seats of judgement  
 接着所有神明聚起来商议  
 Holy gods, held their counsel  
 庄严圣明的神，各抒己见  
 They named night and moon  
 他们给夜和月亮命名  
 They named morning and midday  
 又给清晨和晌午取名  
 Afternoon and evening, to count the time by years  
 还有下午和晚上，时间就能计量

## 语法

## 1. rökstóla

由 rök 和 stóll ‘chair, seat’ 合成。rok 的意思比较复杂，它最早的意思可能和道路有关，引申为 “(故事等) 的展开；推理；(事情的) 基础” 等等。在神话中，这个词和诸神的末日 (ragnarök) 紧密联系在一起，因此也有和 “末日，最终审判” 有关。

## 2. gættusk

动词 gæta 的复数反身式，gæta 本是 “保卫，关照” 之意，反身式中词义演化为 “讨论” (表示相互的动作)。

## 3. árum at telja

telja 表示 “计量”，但注意 árum 实际上不是 telja 的宾语，因为 telja 接续宾格名词。这里 árum 类似于方式状语，相当于 ‘by years’.

<sup>7</sup> Hittusk æsir á Iðavelli

*Met Aesir in Ithavoll*

Þeir er hørg ok hof há timbruðu  
*They who temple and shrine high timbered*  
 Afla lögðu, auð smíðuðu  
*Hearths placed, treasure smithed*  
 Tangir skópu ok tól gorðu  
*Tongs created and tools made*

The Aesir assemble in Ithavoll

阿萨神族在伊达维儿集会

They timbered high temple and shrine  
 他们筑起高高的屋宇厅殿  
 And placed hearths, smithed treasures  
 他们架起壁炉，抡起锤子  
 And created tongs as well as tools  
 做出了珠宝、钳子和工具

## 语法

## 1. Iðavelli

Iðavöllr 的单数属格。“伊达维儿”似乎只是神明集会的地方，只在本处和第 60 节提到，iða 的意思不明，因此在此处保留了音译。也有译作 “伊达平原”的，取了 völlr 表示 “地面，平地”的意思。

## 2. hittusk

hitta 的反身式，hitta 相当于英语的 ‘hit’，除了基本含义 “打击” 外，也有 “拜访”的意思。在这里表示相互的动作，“聚会、集会”。

<sup>8</sup> Tefldu í túni, teitir váru  
*Played at table in courtyard, merry were*  
 Var þeim vettugis vant ór gulli  
*Was to them of anything lack of gold*  
 Unz þrjár kvámu þursa meyjar  
*Until three came giants maids*  
 Ámátkar mjók ór Jötunheimum  
*Powerful very from Jotunheim*

They played board games in the yard in peace  
 他们坐在院子里下着棋，无忧无虑  
 They lacked nothing made of gold  
 他们有大把黄金，什么宝贝都不缺  
 Until three giant maids came  
 直到有一天三个女巨人出现在面前  
 Powerful they were, out of Jotunheim  
 她们来自巨人之国，各个威风凛凛

### 语法

#### 1. telfdu

不定式 tefla, 由名词 tafl 的动词, tafl 指的是一种棋类游戏, 叫作“板棋”, 这是世界上最早的棋类游戏之一。

#### 2. var þeim vettugis vant ór gulli

vant 是 vanr ‘lack’ 的中性形式, 表示“缺乏”的词常用无人称结构。在这里, vanr 接与格表示谁缺少 (þeim), 接属格表示缺少的东西 (vettugis ór gulli)。

#### 3. ámátkar

ámáttigr 的一种缩略形式, 一般都用来形容巨人。

## 1.2 高人的箴言（Hávamál）选读

《高人的箴言》(Hávamál) 是诗体埃达的第二章, 区别于第一篇《女巫的预言》, 这是一首教谕体诗歌。所谓高人自然指的是奥丁。高人的箴言包含 5 个部分, 第一部分是奥丁的格言与教诲, 第二部分是奥丁与格萝德 (Gunnlǫð)<sup>1</sup> 邂逅的故事, 第三部分是奥丁对洛德法夫尼尔 (Loddfáfnir)<sup>2</sup> 的教导, 最后两部分是关于卢恩和卢恩法术的。我们从中选择了一些最典型的、能反映维京人生活哲学的诗节:

1 Gáttir allar	(He who stands at) a strange threshold
Gates all	举步欲进厅堂的人们啊
Áðr gangi fram	Before he goes forth
Before would go forth	在你们进去前可要当心
Um skoðask skyli	Should peer around himself
Around spy should	仔细看看自己周围
Um skygnask skyli	And glance this way and that
Around peer should	绝不错过每个角落
Því at óvist er at vita	Since it is difficult to know beforehand
Since unclear is to know	因为很难提前知道
Hvar óvinir	Where his foes
Where enemies	他的仇敌身藏哪里
Sitja á fleti fyrir	May sit awaiting him
Sit on bench before	磨刀霍霍蠢蠢欲动

<sup>1</sup> 格萝德是一个女巨人, 她受父亲的命令在一洞穴里负责看守着象征诗歌与智慧(维京人以能作诗者为智者)的密酒。奥丁为获得智慧哄骗格萝德得到了密酒, 还和格萝德生下了诗歌之神布拉基 (Bragi)。

<sup>2</sup> 洛德法夫尼尔是仅在 Hávamál 中出现的人物, 其情况不详。

## 语法

## 1. gáttir allar

均是复数宾格形式，用作地点状语。

## 2. áðr gangi fram, um skoðask skyli

整句话都采用虚拟式，表示假设的情况

## 3. um skoðask/skygnask

这里的 *um* 既可以理解为副词性的用法，表示“周围”，那么这两个短语都类似于英语 ‘look around’；也可以认为这是一种小品词的用法，无实义。这里的反身态略有一点表示相互动作的含义。

<sup>5</sup> Vits er þorf

*Of wit is need*

Þeim er víða ratar

*For him who widely travels*

Dælt er heima hvat

*Easy is at home everything*

At augabragði verðr

*To mockery comes*

Sá er ekki kann

*He who nothing knows*

Ok með snotrum sitr

*And with wise men sits*

There is need of wit

若欲出门闯江湖

For him who travels widely

必须机灵有智慧

Everything is easy at home (The stupid should stay at home)

蠢人最好坐家中

For mockery happens to

一无所知去赴宴

He who knows nothing

还要坐在智者间

And sits among wise men

岂不是要遭白眼

## 语法

## 1. vits er þorf

这里的 *er* 表示存在，相当于英语的 ‘there is’，其表语是 *þorf vits* ‘need of wits’. *þorf* 可接一个与格表示人，一个属格表示物，表示“某人需要某物”时，可用 *e-m er þorf e-s.*

## 2. hvat

中性形容词用作不定代词，相当于 ‘everything’.

## 3. at augabragði verðr sá er ...

*verða at* 接与格宾语表示变化的结果，类似于 ‘come to, turn to’，这里是一种引申的用法，表示产生某种结果，可以翻译为“招致”。注意主语 *sá* 在 *verðr* 后面，并由 *er* 引导定语从句对其进行进一步修饰。

<sup>15</sup> Þagalt ok hugalt skyli þjóðans barn

*Silent and thoughtful should ruler's son*

Ok vígdjarft vera

*And battle-brave be*

Glaðr ok reifr skyli gumna hverr

*Glad and happy should of men every*

Unz sinn bíðr bana

*Until himself suffers death*

The ruler's son should be silent and thoughtful

首领之子当慎言善思

And be brave at battle

征战沙场则身先士卒

Happy and merry should every man be

每个人都应幸福开心

Until he suffers his death

颐养天年待死亡降临

## 语法

## 1. glaðr ok reifr skyli gumna hvern

省略了系动词 vera, 因为它容易从情态动词 skyli 推断出来。

## 2. gumna hvern

gumna 是 gumi 的属格, 意味着 hvern 作名词用, gumna hvern 即表示 ‘every one of men’. hvern 作名词时常和复数属格搭配使用, 如还有 manna, seggja, lýða, gumna hvern. 要表达相同的含义, 也可以用 hvern+ 主格的结构, 这里的 hvern 是作形容词使用的, 例如上面的短语又可以表达为 hvern maðr.

## 3. sinn bíðr bana

bíða 有两个用法: 接属格时表示 “等待”, 接宾格时表示 “遭受, 忍耐”, 常与不好的事物搭配。这里的宾语是 bana sinn, 为宾格形式。

<sup>16</sup> Ósnjallr maðr hyggsk munu ey lifa

*Unvaliant man believes will always live*

Ef hann við víg varask

*If he against war guard*

En elli gefr hánum engi frið

*But old-age gives him no peace*

Þótt hánum geirar gefi

*Though him spears may give*

Cowardly man believes he shall live forever

懦夫自以为能长生不老

If he holds back from war

只要他躲开战事求自保

But old age gives him no peace

可岁月哪里会给他安宁

Though spears may have spared his life

纵使刀枪饶过他的性命

## 语法

## 1. Ósnjallr maðr hyggsk munu ey lifa

此句为典型的是宾格-不定式结构, 由于从句 hann munu ey lifa 的主语和 ósnjallr maðr 一致, 动词 hyggja 使用-sk 形式。

## 2. við víg varask 反身动词 varask 由 vara ‘warn’ 变来, varask við e-u 意为 ‘guard against something’ 或 ‘take care not to do something’, 这里就是逃避之意。

## 3. þótt hánum geirar gefi

注意 þótt 引导的让步状语从句中, 动词要用虚拟式。

<sup>23</sup> Ósviðr maðr vakir um allar nætr

*Unwise man wakes through all night*

Ok hyggr at hvívetna

*And thinks to everything*

Þá er móðr

*Then is tired*

Er at morgni kemr

*When to morning comes*

Allt er víl sem var

*All is trouble as was*

Unwise man is awake all night

蠢夫整夜辗转寝不成寐

And worries about everything

鸡毛蒜皮之事劳神操心

Then he is finally tired

待他终于困欲睡

When it comes to morning

已是鸡鸣破晓时

All the trouble remains as it was

麻烦还是老样子

### 语法

1. hyggr at hvívetna

hyggja á, at, um 都表示“注意，专心”。hvívetna, hvatvetna ‘everything’ 的与格。vetna 语源不详，似乎是 vetta 的复数属格（而这个词本身只用在 ekki vætta ‘nothing, naught’ 这个短语中），只见于 hvat-vetna, hvar-vetna 这样的复合词中。变格时，只有第一部分变化。

2. er móðr; at morgni kemr; sem var

这些句子中都省略了主语，不过不难从上下文中推断出来。

<sup>77</sup> Deyr fé, deyja frændr

*Dies cattle, die kinsmen*

Deyr sjalfr it sama

*Dies self you same*

Ek veit einn, at aldrei deyr

*I know one that never dies*

Dómр um dauðan hvern

*Judgement over dead everyone*

Cattle dies, kinsmen die

牛羊会老死，亲朋终西去

You shall die as well

人生自古谁无死

I know one thing, that never dies

我知一事垂千古

The judgment over dead men

死者美名万世传

### 语法

1. deyr sjalfr it sama

it 是双数第二人称 þit 的古体形式。sjalfr ‘self’ 本是形容词，这里做名词用。it sama ‘the same, likewise’ 作副词。it 是定冠词的中性形式，这是一个相对少见的用法，不过和英语中的情况是一致。注意，sjalfr 常和人称代词一起使用以加强语义，但如果把 it 认为是代词的话（第二人称复数），就无法和单数形式的 deyr 相对应了。

2. dauðan hvern

dauðan 是形容词 dauðr 的阳性单数宾格，修饰 hvern，这就意味着 hverr 单独作名词用。注意，这区别于 hverr+ 复数属格的用法，这种情况要说 hvern dauða（名词 dauði ‘dead man’ 的复数属格）。

<sup>139</sup> Við hleifi mik sældu né við hornigi

*With bread me blessed nor with mead*

Nýsta ek niðr, nam ek upp rúnar

*Peered I down, picked I up runes*

Æpandi nam, fell ek aftr þaðan

*Yelling picked, fell I back from there*

No bread was given to me, nor mead

没人喂我食物，没人给我美酒

I peered down, with a loud cry

我从树上往下凝望，欣喜若狂

I picked up runes and fell back from there

我领会了卢恩，却从树上跌落

### 语法

奥丁将自己倒挂在世界之树上九天九夜，既不进食也不饮水，以这种自我牺牲的方式获得智慧。

1. æpandi nam

分词 æpandi 作为 nam 的附加语，表示动作的伴随，和英文中分词的用法一致。

<sup>146</sup> Ljóð ek þau kann

*Lay I those know*

Er kannat þjóðans kona

*Which know-not king's wife*

Those lays I know

那些歌谣我记得清楚

Cannot be known by king's wife

国王的妻妾却不知道

Ok mannskis mogr	Nor sons of mankind
<i>And mankind's sons</i>	凡人之子也无人能知
Hjalp heitir eitt	The first is called Help
<i>Help called one</i>	第一道符咒叫“佑助”
En þat þér hjalpa mun	It will help you
<i>And that you help will</i>	这咒能让你精神焕发
við sǫkum ok sorgum	Against accusations and worries
<i>Against accusations and worries</i>	助你摆脱非难和焦虑
Ok sútum gørvollum	As well as all the grief
<i>And grief quite-all</i>	还有一切的忧愁烦恼

### 语法

从本节开始到文末都是奥丁对于他掌握的歌谣（或卢恩法术）的描述，因此把基数词 eitt 也翻译为 ‘first’。奥丁一共讲述了十八首歌谣的内容，这一部分又被称作 *ljóðatal* ‘lay-talk’.

#### 1. *ljóð ek þau kann*

þau 既可以是人称代词也可以是指示代词，这里显然是后者，它和 *ljóð* 构成指示词短语，但注意这里中心语和修饰语分居名词两侧。

#### 2. *gørvollum*

由副词 *gørva* ‘quite’ 和 *allr* 复合而成。

<sup>164</sup> Nú eru Háva mál kveðin Háva høllu í  
*Now are High's words sung High's hall in*  
 Allþorf ýta sonum, óþorf jotna sonum  
*All-need for men's sons, no-need for jotun's sons*  
 Heill sá er kvað, heill sá er kann  
*Hail he who spoke, hail he who knows*  
 Njóti sá er nam, heilir þeir er hlýddu  
*Enjoy he, who took, hail those who heard*

Now the High's words are sung in his hall  
 高人的箴言已响彻他的厅堂  
 Needful for sons of men; but not for trolls  
 人类之子闻之有益，巨人之子听之也无用  
 Hail to him who spoke and who knows  
 愿念诵的人受人尊敬，学会的人运用自如  
 He who took and heard them will rejoice  
 聆听领教箴言者必受益终身

### 语法

#### 1. *Háva høllu í*

注意这里介词出现在了其补足语的后面，这是少见的用法，主要是出于诗律的考量。

#### 2. *njóti sá er nam*

*njóti* 是 *njóta* ‘enjoy’ 的现在虚拟式，在这里表示强烈的愿望。

## 第二章 巴德尔之死

巴德尔（古诺尔斯语 *Baldr*）是北欧神话中的光明之神，奥丁和弗丽嘉的儿子。关于巴德尔的记载不多，主要是关于他的死亡的。巴德尔的死为什么在北欧神话中如此重要？主要的解读是，由于巴德尔是光明的神，象征着春天与喜悦，巴德尔的死无疑象征着黑暗和寒冬的统治，这在北欧人看来是极为可怕的。从北欧神话的记载来看，巴德尔的死也间接地引发了诸神最后的战争。

巴德尔的死出现在多个故事当中，包括《女巫的预言》（*Völuspá*），《洛基的争吵》（*Lokasenna*），《巴德尔之梦》（*Baldra draumar*）以及《欺骗古洛菲》（*Gylfaginning*）等，不同的故事中的记载也不尽相同，综合来看，大致的内容是这样的：

巴德尔身形俊美，通身洁白，是诸神中最漂亮的，因此备受母亲弗丽嘉的喜爱。巴德尔后来做噩梦感到死亡的阴影，于是弗丽嘉跑遍整个世界，使万物发誓不会伤害巴德尔。唯独一颗槲寄生没有发誓，因为它年龄太小，弗丽嘉认为它不足以发誓也不至于伤人。诸神得知此事，颇为巴德尔感到高兴，他们试着向巴德尔投掷武器，果然无法伤到他，洛基一向嫉妒巴德尔的容貌和受宠，因此化作妇人从弗丽嘉那里套来了槲寄生没有发誓的消息。洛基让槲寄生成一把长剑，让巴德尔目盲的兄弟霍德尔（*Höðr*）投向巴德尔，巴德尔果然倒地身亡。巴德尔死后，他的妻子南娜（*Nanna*）因悲伤过度，心力衰竭而死，诸神将他们二人葬在一艘大船上送入水中。巴德尔死后，弗丽嘉请求赫尔莫德前往死者之国复活巴德尔，死者之神赫尔（*Hel*）开出条件，倘若一切有生命和无生命的都替巴德尔哭泣，她就把巴德尔还回来。铁石心肠的女巨人 Thókk（一说是洛基变的）住在地下，不需要光明，因此不愿为巴德尔哭泣，巴德尔于是无法复活。奥丁早在巴德尔死前就已得知他死亡的预言，也知道自己要生下一个儿子为巴德尔复仇，奥丁引诱女巨人琳达尔（*Rindr*）并诞下一子瓦利（*Váli*）在诸神的决战时杀死霍德尔。洛基也由于其罪恶被缚在石头上，直到最后的决战时才被释放，洛基也在诸神黄昏时驾驶纳格尔法（*Nalgfar*，满载反叛的亡灵的船）挑起对阿萨神族的战争。

### 2.1 巴德尔之梦（*Baldra draumar*）选读

《巴德尔之梦》是一首埃达短诗，全文共十四节，这里选择了从第四节开始的内容。前三节的故事是这样的：众神得知巴德尔经常做噩梦，聚在一起讨论这件怪事的成因。奥丁知道死者之国里埋葬着一位颇有智慧的女巫，便前去和她交谈。

<sup>4</sup> Pá reið Óðinn fyrir austan dyrr	Then Odin rode to the eastern door
<i>Then rode Odin forth eastern door</i>	于是奥丁策马驰向东门
Þar er hann vissi volu leiði	Where he knew Was the volva's grave
<i>There where he knew volva's grave</i>	他知道有女巫安息此处
Nam hann vittugri valgaldr kveða	Great charm did he speak
<i>Did he skillful magic speak</i>	奥丁念念有词施展法术
Unz nauðig reis, nás orð of kvað	Until she rose bound by spell and in death she spoke
<i>Until unwillingly rose, of corpse word about spoke</i>	直到她苏醒过来开口说

#### 语法

##### 1. fyrir austan dyrr

fyrir + -an 型副词 + 宾格名词的典型用法，表示“沿着某个方向前往...”。注意 dyrr ‘door’ 是一个特殊的辅音词干阴性强名词，只有复数式。其变形为：主语和宾格 dyrr, 与格 durum 或 dyrum, 属格 dura 或 dyra.

##### 2. nás orð

nás 是 nár 的属格，字面义为 ‘word of corpse’. 由于奥丁用通灵术复活女巫问卜，因此说女巫说出的是

“死尸的话”。

<sup>5</sup> Hvat er manna þat mér ókunnra	Who is the man that I do not know
What is of men that to me unknown	是哪个陌生人唤醒我
Er mér hefir aukit erfitt sinni	Who had made me travel a troublesome road
Who to me had passed difficult journey	叫我一路奔波不安宁
Var ek snivin snævi	I was covered by snow
Was I snowed with snow	大雪茫茫盖我身
Ok slegin regni ok drifin döggu	Struck by rain and drenched with dew
And struck with rain and besprent with dew	风雨飘飘湿我衣
Dauð var ek lengi	I have long been dead
Dead was I for long	死者竟要遭罪多

### 语法

#### 1. hefir aukit mér erfitt sinni

auka 表示“增加”，可以接双宾语，类似于英文中‘add sth. to sb.’，这样，auka 的意思就和表示“给予”的动词类似。这句话的直译是‘give me a difficult journey’。

#### 2. snivin snævi; slegin regni; drifin döggu

这里的与格表示方式，结构和被动句十分类似。在主动结构中，这里的与格名词都可以做动词的宾格宾语。另注意 slegin 是稍不规则的动词 slá 的分词。

<sup>6</sup> Óðinn kvað: Vegtamr<sup>1</sup> ek heiti

*Odin spoke: Vegtamr I am called*

Sonr em ek Valtams; segðu mér ór helju

*Son am I of Valtamr; speak to me of Hel*

Ek mun ór heimi: hveim eru bekkir baugum sánir

*I know of world: for whom are benches with rings strewn*

Flet faglig flóuð gulli

*Rooms beautiful flooded with gold*

Odin spoke: Vegtamr is my name

奥丁说：我的名字叫作维格坦

I am the son of Valtamr; speak to me about Hel

瓦尔坦是我的父亲；告诉我冥府的故事吧

I know about the world: the benches strewn with rings

人间的事我无一不晓：金碧辉煌的长凳

And room bedecked with gold are prepared for whom

和流光溢彩的居室是为了留给什么人？

在这一节中，奥丁首先向女巫发问，目的是试探女巫的智慧。其问题的答案自然是巴德尔本人，因为他备受诸神的宠爱。

### 语法

#### 1. segðu mér ór helju

segja ór 中的 ór 表示整体中的一部分，也常和表示言说的动词连用。下面的 mun ór 也是类似的用法。

#### 2. baugum sánir

sánir 情况不明，按 Cleasby 字典中的说法，有可能是 stráðir 的误写。不过，从语义上来看这个动词无疑应该表示“镶嵌、装饰”之类的含义。

#### 3. flóuð gulli

flóuð 是动词弱动词 flóa ‘flood’ 的过去分词的中性复数形式，与同为复数的中性名词 flet 保持一致。

<sup>1</sup> 奥丁的别名 Vegtamr 意思是“准备好行路的”(way-ready)，和其在神话中经常漫游的形象相符合。他父亲的名字也有一样的结构，可能表示“准备好（掌管）死者的”。

<sup>7</sup> Völva kvað: Hér stendr Baldri of brugginn mjóðr  
*Volva spoke: Here stands for Balder brewed mead*  
 Skírar veigar, liggr skjoldr yfir  
*Clean drink, lies shield over*  
 En ásmegir í ofvæni  
*But Aesir-sons in over-expectation*  
 Nauðug sagðak, nú mun ek þegja  
*Unwillingly I spoke, now must I be silent*

Volva spoke: Here stands brewed mead for Balder  
 女巫说：冥府的密酒献给巴德尔  
 A clean drink with a shield over it  
 澄澈清冽的美酒，密封在罐子中  
 But Aesir will wait in anxious suspense  
 但神族望眼欲穿等待巴德尔归来  
 Unwillingly I spoke, now I must cease  
 我本该守口如瓶，就到此为止吧

### 语法

#### 1. stendr Baldri of

这里的 of 的位置比较罕见，一般来说应该在 Baldri 前面。of 表示轻微的因果关系，可以理解为 ‘for’。

#### 2. ásmegir

ás-mogr ‘Ase-son’ 的复数主格形式。

#### 3. ofvæni

of-væni ‘over-weening’，of 偶尔也用在前缀中，表示 ‘over’。

<sup>8</sup> Óðinn kvað: Þegjattu, volva, þik vil ek fregna  
*Odin spoke: Do not be silent, volva, you want I ask*  
 Unz alkunna, vil ek enn vita  
*Until all-known, want I fain know*  
 Hverr mun Baldri at bana verða  
*Who will Baldr to death turn*  
 Ok Óðins son aldri ræna  
*And Odin's son of age rob*

Odin spoke: Cease not, you volva, I seek from you  
 奥丁说：女巫啊，切莫缄口不语  
 I will fain ask from you, until I am all-known  
 许多事我不曾知晓，愿向你请教  
 Who shall put Baldr to death  
 是谁把巴德尔推向死亡？  
 And steal Odin's son of life  
 是谁要奥丁爱子的性命？

### 语法

#### 1. Baldri at bana verða

verða 接与格宾语的用法，字面意思 ‘turn Baldr to death’，另见 Hávamál 第 5 节语法。

#### 2. Óðins son aldri ræna

ræna ‘rob’ 接双宾语结构，用与格表示抢走的东西，用宾格表示从谁手中抢走，类似于英文中 ‘rob sb. of sth.’ 结构，但与格名词替代了英语的 of 短语。

<sup>9</sup> Völva kvað: Höðr berr hávan hróðrbaðm þinig  
*Volva spoke: Hodr bears high famous-branch from there*  
 Hann mun Baldri at bana verða  
*He shall Baldr to death turn*  
 Ok Óðins son aldri ræna  
*And Odin's son of age rob*  
 Nauðug sagðak, nú mun ek þegja  
*Unwillingly I spoke, now must I be silent*

Volva spoke: Hodr will bear the high branch from there  
 女巫说：霍德尔拿起槲寄生  
 He shall turn Baldr to death  
 他把巴德尔推向死亡  
 And steal Odin's son of life  
 夺去奥丁爱子的性命  
 Unwillingly I spoke, now I must cease  
 我本该守口如瓶，就到此为止吧

### 语法

#### 1. hróðrbaðm

由 hróðr+baðmr 构成，字面意思 ‘famous tree/branch’，结合其他文献记载，这指的就是夺走巴德尔生命的槲寄生。

<sup>10</sup> Óðinn kvað: Þegjattu, volva, þik vil ek fregna  
*Odin spoke: Do not be silent, volva, you want I ask*  
 Unz alkunna, vil ek enn vita  
*Until all-known, want I fain know*  
 Hverr mun heift Heði hefnt of vinna  
*Who shall war to Hodr revenged wage*  
 Eða Baldrs bana á bál vega  
*Or Baldr's bane to flames smite*

Odin spoke: Cease not, you volva, I seek from you  
 奥丁说：女巫啊，切莫缄口不语  
 I will fain ask from you, until I am all-known  
 许多事我不曾知晓，愿向你请教  
 Who shall wage avenging war against Hodr  
 谁会为向霍德尔寻求报复  
 Or cast flames to Baldr's killer  
 用烈火杀死巴德尔的凶手

### 语法

#### 1. heift Heði hefnt of vinna

这里的 of 是小品词。vinna heift+ 与格宾语表示 ‘wage war against one’. hefnt, hefna ‘avenge’ 的分词，这和 vinna 的另一个用法有关。vinna+ 宾格宾语 + 过去分词类似于 ‘make something done’，故也有 vinna e-n heift ‘take revenge’ 的说法。

#### 2. á bál

bál 的本意是火葬用的柴堆，即英文中的 ‘pyre’，á bál ‘on pyre’ 的实际意思就是 “用火杀死”。

<sup>11</sup> Volva kvað: Rindr berr Vála í vestrsólum  
*Volva spoke: Rind bears Vali in west-hall*  
 Sá mun Óðins sonr einnættr vega  
*That shall Odin's son one-night kill*  
 Hönd of þvær né hoþuð kembir  
*Hand washes nor hair combs*  
 Áðr á bál of berr Baldrs andskota  
*Before to fire bears Baldr's enemy*  
 Nauðug sagðak, nú mun ek þegja  
*Unwillingly I spoke, now must I be silent*

Volva spoke: Rindr bears Vali in West hall  
 女巫说：琳达尔在西边厅堂里诞下瓦利  
 Who will kill Odin's son one night old  
 他一夜间长大，便手刃奥丁之子  
 He washes not his hand nor combs his hair  
 他无暇洗净双手，也不梳理头发  
 Before he casts flame to Baldr's enemy  
 直到他用烈火烧死巴德尔的死敌  
 Unwillingly I spoke, now I must cease  
 我本该守口如瓶，就到此为止吧

### 语法

#### 1. einnættr

-nættr 常构成形容词后缀。这里几乎像副词一样使用，修饰的是 vega. 瓦利就是奥丁专门生下为巴德尔复仇的，他唯一的目的就是杀死霍德尔。有说法认为日耳曼人不允许父子相残，因此奥丁必须另生一子替其复仇。

<sup>12</sup> Óðinn kvað: Þegjattu, volva, þik vil ek fregna  
*Odin spoke: Do not be silent, volva, you want I ask*  
 Unz alkunna, vil ek enn vita  
*Until all-known, want I fain know*  
 Hverjar ru þær meyjar er at muni gráta

Odin spoke: Cease not, you volva, I seek from you  
 奥丁说：女巫啊，切莫缄口不语  
 I will fain ask from you, until I am all-known  
 许多事我不曾知晓，愿向你请教  
 Who are those maidens that shall weep heartily

*Who are those maidens who that in longing weep  
Ok á himin verpa halsa skautum  
And to sky toss neck's sheet*

是哪几个姑娘为巴德尔动容  
And toss the ship to the sky  
又掀起波浪将帆船抛向天空

### 语法

#### 1. ru

vera 的某些形式，例如 eru 在早期诗歌中脱去词首的元音，变为 ru.

#### 2. verpa halsa skautum

verpa ‘throw’ 接续与格。halsa-skaut，‘neck-sheet’ 是一个航海的术语，表示风帆的上角。这里大概用来代指船。这里说的姑娘是海神埃吉尔（Ægir）的女儿，她们为巴德尔哭泣，以至于卷起风浪。

<sup>13</sup> Völva kvað: Ertattu Vegtamr sem ek hugða  
*Volva spoke: You are not Vegtam, as I yought*  
Heldr ertu Óðinn, aldinn gautr  
*Rather You are Odin, the old sorcerer*  
Óðinn kvað: Ertattu völva né víss kona  
*Odin spoke: You are not a volva nor wise woman*  
Heldr ertu þriggja þursa móðir<sup>2</sup>  
*Rather You are three giants' mother*  
<sup>14</sup> Völva kvað: Heim ríð þú, Óðinn, ok ver hróðigr  
*Volva spoke: Home ride you, Odin, and be proud*  
Svá komir manna meir aftr á vit  
*That come men more back towards*  
Er lauss Loki líðr ór bøndum  
*When loose Loki wanders out of bonds*  
Ok ragnarök rjúfendr koma  
*And gods-fate destroyers come*

Volva spoke: You are not Vegtam, as I yought  
女巫说：正如我所想，你果不是维格坦  
Odin You are, the old sorcerer  
倒不如说你名叫奥丁，老谋深算的巫师  
Odin spoke: You are not a volva nor wise woman  
奥丁说：你亦不是女巫，也算不上聪明  
You are the mother of three giants  
你是三个巨人的母亲  
Volva spoke: Ride home, Odin, and be proud  
女巫说：回去吧，奥丁，任你得意忘形  
That (no) one shall seek me more  
此地无人将再来  
Until Loki wanders free from his chains  
洛基要从锁链中挣脱  
And destroyers come in Ragnarok  
众神的末日即将降临

### 语法

#### 1. komir manna meir aftr á vit

á vit+ 属格/宾格名词表示“朝着...”，这里与之搭配的是 manna meir。koma á vit 于是表示“相遇”，注意到 komir 是第二人称的虚拟式，主语是奥丁。这句话指的是奥丁回去的路上不会遇到任何人了 (You would meet no more man)，即没有人再来和女巫交谈。手稿中似乎遗漏了表示否定的词。

#### 2. rjúfendr

由 rjúfa ‘break, violate’ 的现在分词 rjúfandi 派生而来，和 ragnarök 同为复数主格，为同位语。

<sup>2</sup> 第 13 节中同时出现了女巫和奥丁的话，这和前文的习惯不同，可能是由两节合并而来。在本节中，女巫发现了奥丁的身份并戳穿了他。奥丁的回应比较耐人寻味，除了回击女巫外，奥丁还指出了她的身份：三个巨人（þurs）的母亲。巨人一族在古诺尔斯语中有几个说法，包括 þurs, risi, jötunn, troll 等，它们的含义有些许不同。þurs 强调他们愚蠢，risi 强调他们身形巨大，jötunn 强调力量过人。本段中的 þursa móðir 无疑强调女巫蠢笨。女巫的身份并不清楚，三个巨人可能指的是命运三女神 (Norn)，但三女神的母亲在神话中鲜有提及。也有人认为三个巨人指的是洛基和巨人安格尔博达 (Angrboða) 生下的三名凶恶的子女：恶狼芬里尔 (Fenrir)，巨蛇耶梦加得 (Jörmungandr) 和司掌冥府的死神赫尔 (Hel)，考虑到洛基和巴德尔死亡的直接关系，这一说法似乎更有道理。

## 2.2 欺骗古洛菲 (Gylfaginning) 选读

《欺骗古洛菲》(Gylfaginning)是斯诺里·斯图鲁松写的散文埃达的第一篇正文，故事大致是这样的：古洛菲(Gylfi)是古代瑞典的国王，他曾和一位女神订立契约以求得王国风调雨顺，结果却被女神欺骗了。女神是阿萨神族的一员，古洛菲想知道阿萨神族是不是总是依靠欺骗和魔法达成他们的目的。古洛菲于是前往阿斯加德，却在半路又被神欺骗，来到了另一个宫殿。古洛菲自称冈勒里(Gangleri)，他在宫殿中遇到了三位神。为了检测古洛菲的智慧，神明们向他问问题，古洛菲也回应他们，这些问题都是关于神话的。其中第49节即是关于巴德尔的。

En þat er upphaf þeirar soga, at Baldr inn góða dreymði drauma stóra ok hætliga um líf sitt. En er hann sagði ásunum draumana, þá báru þeir saman ráð sín, ok var þat gert at beiða griða Baldri fyrir allskonar háska, ok Frigg tók svardaga til þess, at eira skyldu Baldri eldr ok vatn, járn ok alls konar málmr, steinar, jorðin, viðirnir, sóttirnar, dýrin, fuglarnir, eitrit, ormarnir.

Then the beginning of the story is that Baldr the good dreamt great and terrible dreams about his life. And when he told the Aesir about the dream, they took counsel together, and this was the decision: to seek protection for Baldr against all kinds of harm, and Frigga took oaths to this, that fire and water shall spare Baldr, iron and metal of all kinds, stones, earth, trees, diseases, beasts, birds, venom, worms.

### 中文意译

故事的开始是这样的：善神巴德尔做了个噩梦，梦到自己就要不久于人世。他把梦境说给神族们听，于是众神们聚在一起商量对策。他们决心要让巴德尔免于一切的伤害。弗丽嘉起誓说，她要让火和水伤不到巴德尔，铁器和金属也是如此，山石，泥土，树木，疾病，走兽，飞禽，毒液，虫蛇无一能伤巴德尔分毫。

### 语法

#### 1. Baldr inn góða dreymði drauma

这个短语整体是宾格，góða 为弱变格形式。dreymði, dreyma 引导的无人称结构，接宾格。

#### 2. báru þeir saman ráð sín

bera 除了“携带”以外，还有“说”的衍生含义 (to bear by word of mouth > to tell)，因此可以接续与言说有关的宾语，如 kveðju, orð 等。

#### 3. beiða griða Baldri fyrir allskonar háska

beiða ‘request’ 和 biðja 用法相似，接与格或宾格表示人 (Baldri)，用属格表示物 (griða, grið ‘truce’ 的复数属格)。这里的 fyrir 是接与格的特殊用法，相当于英语 ‘against’，类似的表达还有 verja land fyrir ... ‘defend the land against ...’

En er þetta var gert ok vitat, þá var þat skemmtun Baldrs ok ásanna, at hann skyldi standa upp á þingum, en allir aðrir skyldu sumir skjóta á hann, sumir hoggva til, sumir berja grjóti, en hvat sem at var gert, sakaði hann ekki, ok þótti þetta öllum mikill frami.

But when that was done and known, there was an entertainment between Baldr and gods, that he should stand up in a Thing, when all the others would either shoot at him, or hew at him or beat him with stones, but what they had done hurt him not, and they thought these were all things with great respect (to Baldr).

### 中文意译

等弗丽嘉完成了此事，众神都知晓了这一事实时，他们便想出了一种娱乐：巴德尔站在议事庭的中间，其他人要么拿东西射他，要么用刀砍他，要么用石头砸他，但是这些都伤不了巴德尔。众神认为这些东西都对巴德尔保有大大的敬意。

### 语法

#### 1. allir aðrir

allir 作名词用，被 aðrir 所修饰，这里表示集体概念，“其他所有人”。

#### 2. standa upp á þingum

þing ‘Thing’，常译作“庭”，是日耳曼人社会中的一种政治议会，自由民可在此商讨事宜。这里的 þing 指的是开展议会的地点，因此 standa upp á þingum 表示的是物理上的“站在议事庭（的地面）上”。þing 和其他介词搭配，则可能有引申的含义。

#### 3. hvat sem at var gert

hvat 和 sem 或 er 连用，表示 ‘whatever’，类似于 hvatki. gera at 这一短语强调做某事对某人产生影响，本句中省略了 at 的补语 Baldr.

#### 4. þótti þetta óllum mikill frami

þykkja 的典型用法，注意这里的主语是中性指示代词 þetta，感受者是 óllum，指代所有的神明。注意这里省略了系动词 vera.

En er þetta sá Loki Laufeyjarson, þá líkaði honum illa, er Baldr sakaði ekki. Hann gekk til Fensalar til Friggjar ok brá sér í konu líki. Þá spyrr Frigg, ef sú kona vissi, hvat æsir hófðusk at á þinginu. Hon sagði, at allir skutu at Baldri ok þat, at hann sakaði ekki.

But when Loki Laufey-son saw this, he liked him ill, that nothing can harm Baldr. He goes to Fensal to Frigg and turned himself into the shape of a woman. Then Frigg asked if that woman knew what the Aesir had done in the Thing. She said that they all shot at Baldr and that no one ever hurt him.

### 中文意译

可当洛基，劳菲的儿子，看到巴德尔刀枪不入的时候，他心生不满。于是他变成一个妇人的样子，来到弗丽嘉的宫殿芬萨勒，走到她跟前。弗丽嘉就问这妇人知不知道神族们在议事庭里干的事。妇人回答道，他们都向巴德尔投掷武器，但没什么能伤得了他。

### 语法

#### 1. er Baldr sakaði ekki

区别于上文的 hvat ... sakaði hann ekki, saka ‘hurt’ 在这个从句中使用了无人称结构，当然这也理解为主语被省略。

#### 2. brá sér í konu líki

bregða 除了“拔出”这个基本含义外，还有“转变形态”的意思。bregða 支配与格，bregða e-m í e-s líki 表示 ‘turn one into the shape of ...’.

Þá mælti Frigg: “Eigi munu vápn eða viðir granda Baldri. Eiða hefi ek þegit af óllum þeim.”

Þá spyr konan: “Hafa allir hlutir eiða unnit at eira Baldri?”

Þá svarar Frigg: “Vex viðarteinungr einn fyrir vestan valhöll. Sá er mistilteinn kallaðr. Sá þótti mér ungr at krefja eiðsins.”

Then said Frigg: “No weapon or trees shall hurt Baldr, I have received oaths from all of them.”

Then asked the woman: “Have all things taken oaths to spare Baldr?”

Then answered Frigg: “A tree-sprout grows alone in the west of Valholl, it is called mistletoe. I thought it was too young to ask it to take an oath.”

### 语法

#### 1. þegit

五类强动词 þiggja ‘receive’ 的过去分词。

## 2. hafa allir hlutir eiða unnit

unnit, vinna ‘work, do’ 的过去分词，注意它不是过去-现在混合动词 unna ‘love’ 的过去分词，后者应该是 unnat. vinna eiða ‘take oaths’.

## 3. ungr at krefja eiðsins

类似于英语中的 ‘too adj. to do’ 结构，也是从句作形容词补语的例子。另注意 krefja ‘demand’ 可支配双宾语，用宾格表人，属格表物。

## 中文意译

于是弗丽嘉说：“任何武器和木头能不能伤害巴德尔，它们都已向我发誓了。”

妇人接着问道：“所有的东西都发过誓了吗？”

弗丽嘉回答说：“英灵殿西边的树上有一株嫩芽，名字叫作槲寄生。它年龄太小，我觉得它还不能发誓。”

Því næst hvarf konan á braut, en Loki tók mistiltein ok sleit upp ok gekk til þings. En Hǫðr stóð útarliga í mannhringnum, því at hann var blindr.

Immediately the woman disappeared and went on her way, but Loki took mistletoe, slit it and went to the Thing. And Hodr stood outside of the ring of men, because he was blind.

## 中文意译

妇人一眨眼就不见了。洛基却砍下槲寄生，捡起它前往议事庭。此时围观的人站成一圈，霍德尔因为眼睛看不见站在人群外边。

## 语法

## 1. því næst hvarf konan á braut

hvarf, hverfa ‘turn around’ 的过去式。此外，这句话中有几个短语值得注意。1) því næst 表示 ‘immediately after that, then’，næst 是 nær ‘near’ 的最高级，nær 的补语要用与格，因此有了 því næst 的说法。2) (á/i) braut(u)/brott ‘away’，braut 本是名词，指的是 “(树林间，山上开辟的) 小路”，但它也可以作副词用，表示 “离开，上路”。有时前面也可以加介词 á/i. 一些更早的手稿中也写作 brott.

Þá mælti Loki við hann: “Hví skýtr þú ekki at Baldri?”

Then said Loki to him: “Why don’t you shoot at Baldr?”

Hann svarar: “Því, at ek sé eigi, hvar Baldr er, ok þat annat, at ek em vápnlauss.”

He answered: “Because I can’t see where Baldr is and besides, I am weaponless.”

Þá mælti Loki: “Gerðu þó í líking annarra manna ok veit Baldri sæmð sem aðrir menn. Ek mun vísa þér til, hvar hann stendr. Skjót at honum vendi þessum.”

Then said Loki: “Do as other men and show Baldr honor. I shall direct you to where he stands. Shoot him with this wand.”

## 中文意译

于是洛基对他说：“你怎么不向巴德尔投武器呢？”

霍德尔回答说：“我看不见巴德尔在哪里，另外，我也没有武器。”

洛基于是说：“你应像别人一样做，这样才体现巴德尔的光荣。把这个树枝扔过去，我会告诉你他站在哪儿。”

### 语法

#### 1. í líking annarra manna

í líking e-s 表示“模仿某人”，和下面的 sem aðrir menn 表意是一样的。

Höðr tók mistiltein ok skaut at Baldri at tilvísan Loka.  
Flaug skotit í gegnum Baldr, ok féll hann dauðr til jarðar, ok hefir þat mest óhapp verit unnit með goðum ok mónum.

Hodr took the mistletoe and shot at Baldr with the guidance of Loki. The spear flew piercing Baldr, and he fell dead to the ground, and the most hapless mischief has befallen gods and men.

### 中文意译

霍德尔于是拿起槲寄生，在洛基的指引下把它投向巴德尔。枝干刺穿了巴德尔的身体，巴德尔应声倒地，一命呜呼。人类和神族间最大的不幸就此发生了。

### 语法

#### 1. hefir þat mest óhapp verit unnit

注意本句中出现的被动态的完成时 óhapp hefir verit unnit ‘mischief has been wrought’.

Þá er Baldr var fallinn, þá félusk öllum ásum orðtök ok svá hendr at taka til hans, ok sá hvern til annars, ok váru allir með einum hug til þess, er unnit hafði verkit, en engi mátti hefna. Þar var svá mikill griðastaðr. En þá er æsirnir freistuðu at mæla, þá var hitt þó fyrr, at grátrinn kom upp, svá at engi mátti qðrum segja með orðunum frá sínum harmi. En Óðinn bar þeim mun verst þenna skaða sem hann kunni mesta skyn, hversu mikil aftaka ok missa ásunum var í fráfalli Baldrs.

Then when Baldr was fallen, words failed all the gods and likewise their hands to lay hold of the corpse. Each looked at the other, and all were of one mind as to who had wrought the work, but no one could take vengeance (as they were) in a great sanctuary. But when the Aesir tried to speak, weeping broke out first, so that no one could tell others about their grief with words. But Odin had the greatest misfortune, as he had the most perception about how great a loss Baldr's death was for the gods.

### 中文意译

巴德尔死后，众神扶着他的遗体，手足无措，面面相觑。他们都想知道是谁害死了巴德尔，可是议事庭里不能动武，没人能为巴德尔寻仇。等到他们终于打算说点什么时，有人开始哭了起来，一时间神族们呻吟呼号，没人能说清自己的悲痛。但奥丁是众神中最痛心的，因为他比任何人都清楚巴德尔的死意味着什么。

### 语法

#### 1. þá félusk öllum ásum orðtök

falla 有类似于英语 ‘fail’ 的含义，除了表示“(使)失效”外，也有和英语类似的引申含义，“使某人不能做某事”。此时常用其反身形式，接与格，如 orðtök fallask e-m ‘words fail one’.

#### 2. ok svá hendr at taka til hans

ok svá 相当于一个副词，‘also, likewise’。本句的动词是上一句中的 félusk, hendr fallask e-m ‘hands fail one’ 是古诺尔斯语的一个固定短语，表示人“愣住；手足无措”。at taka til hans 是 hendr 的补语，taka til 有几个意思，这里是基础含义，“把手放在某物上；触摸”。

#### 3. griðastaðr

字面意思 ‘truce-place’，指的就是 þing. 本句比较好的解释是：由于在议事庭中不能动武，因此众神不能为巴德尔报仇。此句与上文有因果关系，但缺少一个表因果的连词。

#### 4. þá var hitt þó fyrr

hitt, 中性指示代词作名词用, ‘but earlier it was ...’.

#### 5. qðrum segja með orðunum frá sínum harmi

frá 和表示言说的动词连用, 表示“关于”。于是, segja frá e-u 表示‘tell about something’. 本句中还有两个与格短语, qðrum ‘others’ 是讲话的对象, með orðunum ‘with words’ 提示方法。注意这里 orð 是特指形式, 表示 orð um harmi sínum.

#### 6. Óðinn bar þeim mun verst þenna skaða

mun, munr 的与格, 这个词几乎只用在固定短语中。(þeim) mun+ 形容词比较级/最高级时强调程度, 如 muni hægri ‘much easier’, þeim mun fleiri ‘all the more’. 这里的 þeim 可加可不加。

En er goðin vitkuðusk, þá mælti Frigg ok spurði, hverr sá væri með ásum, er eignask vildi allar ástir hennar ok hylli ok vili hann ríða á helveg ok freista, ef hann fái fundit Baldr, ok bjóða Helju útlausn, ef hon vill láta fara Baldr heim í Ásgarð. En sá er nefndr Hermóðr inn hvati, sveinn Óðins, er til þeifar farar varð. Þá var tekinn Sleipnir, hestr Óðins, ok leiddr fram, ok steig Hermóðr á þann hest ok hleypði braut.

Now when the gods came to consciousness, Frigg said and asked, which one of the gods would acquire her favor and goodwill, and he will ride to Hel and try to find Baldr, and offer Hel a ransom, provided that she will let Baldr come back home in Asgard. And the man named Hermod the Quick, son of Odin, took the journey. Then Sleipnir, Odin's horse, was taken and led forward. Hermod mounted the horse and rode on his way.

#### 中文意译

等众神们从悲伤中回过神来, 弗丽嘉问到: “谁愿意前去冥府寻找巴德尔? 假如赫尔能放他回到阿斯加德, 那就给她一笔赎金。”那个人会得到弗丽嘉的信赖和赞赏。赫尔莫德, 奥丁的儿子, 承担了这个使命。他登上奥丁的坐骑斯莱普尼尔, 纵马向冥府骑去。

#### 语法

##### 1. vitkuðusk

vitkask 是有特殊意义的反身动词。vitka 表示“使迷惑”, vitkask 表示“恢复理智; 清醒”。

##### 2. er eignask ... ok vili hann

注意这里的 ok 连接的前后两句主语不一致。er eignask ... 从句的主语是 hverr sá væri með ásum, 后一句的主语是 Frigg.

##### 3. hann fái fundit

fái+ 过去分词表示“有能力做某事”, 相当于‘be able to do’.

##### 4. til þeifar farar varð verða til e-s 的引申义, ‘come forth to do something, volunteer’.

【本处删去一段, 内容是关于巴德尔的葬礼的: 巴德尔的妻子南娜看到巴德尔的尸体, 心脏迸裂而死, 众神将她和巴德尔一起放到巴德尔的船“灵舡”(Hringhorni)上, 灵舡是所有船中最大的, 诸神推不动它, 于是只好找来女巨人希尔罗金(Hyrrokin)来帮忙。她设法将船送入水中, 索尔举起神锤“缪尼尔”(Mjöllnir)点燃葬礼用的柴堆。一个名叫利特尔(Litr)的矮人在索尔脚边乱跑, 被索尔踢进火堆烧死。奥丁的魔戒德罗普尼尔和满载马饰的巴德尔的马也一同献给巴德尔。】

En þat er at segja frá Hermóði, at hann reið níu nætr dökkvá dala ok djúpa, svá at hann sá ekki, fyrr en hann kom til árinnar Gjallar<sup>3</sup> ok reið á Gjallarbrúna. Hon var þokt lýsigulli.

Now the story is to be told about Hermod, that he rode for nine nights in valleys dark and deep so that he saw nothing before he came to the river Gjall and rode to the Gjall-bridge, which was covered with glittering gold.

<sup>3</sup> 北欧神话中的冥河。

### 中文意译

话说赫尔莫德在幽暗深邃的低谷里整整骑了九天九夜。外面伸手不见五指，所以在抵达加尔河之前什么都没看见。一座桥横跨加尔河，上面镶着闪闪发光的黄金，赫尔莫德向桥骑去。

### 语法

#### 1. reið níu nætr dökka dala ok djúpa

宾格名词 *níu nætr* 表示对时间的度量，作为动词的附加语。在古诺尔斯语中 *ríða* 可以直接加与道路有关的宾格名词作及物动词用，如 *reið dökka dala*，而英语中则要用介词短语 ‘ride in the dark valley’，这时的 *ride* 是不及物动词。

#### 2. þokt

*pekja ‘thatch’* 的过去分词的阴性形式。

Móðguðr er nefnd mær sú, er gætir brúarinnar. Hon spurði hann at nafni eða at ætt ok sagði, at inn fyrra dag riðu um brúna fimm fylki dauðra manna - en eigi dynr brúin minnr undir einum þér, ok eigi hefir þú lit dauðra manna. Hví ríðr þú hér á helveg?

Hann svarar, at ek skal ríða til Heljar at leita Baldrs, eða hvárt hefir þú nakkvat sét Baldr á helvegi?

En hon sagði, at Baldr hafði þar riðit um Gjallarbrú, en niðr ok norðr liggr helvegr.

### 中文意译

守桥的女巨人叫作莫德古德。她寻问赫尔莫德的姓名和族裔，然后说道：“昨天有五批亡灵从桥上过去，桥发出的声响却和你一个人过去时差不多。另外你身上也没有死者的颜色，你为什么要去冥府呢？”

他回答说：“我要去那里寻找巴德尔，你可曾见过他？”

女巨人告诉他，巴德尔已经过了桥到那边去了，去冥府的路还要朝着北面往下走。

Modgudr is the name of the maiden, who guards the bridge. She asked him about his name and race and said: “The day before, five groups of dead men had ridden over the bridge, but the bridge did not make a smaller sound than you are alone, besides you don’t have the color of dead men. Why did you ride hither to Hel?”

He answered: “I shall ride to Hel to search for Baldr, and if by chance, have you seen Baldr on his way to Hel?”

And she said that Baldr had ridden across Gjall-bridge to there and the way to Hel lies north and beneath.

### 语法

#### 1. eigi dynr brúin minnr undir einum þér

*dynr, dynja* 的三单现在时。*dynja* 的本义是指“发出巨大的响声”，但在古诺尔斯语中经常表示液体的“喷涌，爆发”，常和鲜血、大雨这样的名词连用。这里取的反而是其本义。这句话字面意思是说，亡灵过桥时发出的声响不比赫尔莫德小，实际上是说赫尔莫德一个人的重量相当于五批亡灵，因此女巨人已经发现赫尔莫德不是死人。

#### 2. nakkvat

*nókkurr* 的副词用法，相当于英语的 ‘somewhat, somehow’，表示不确定性。

Þá reið Hermóðr, þar til er hann kom at helgrindum. Þá sté hann af hestinum ok gyrdi hann fast, steig upp ok keyrði hann sporum, en hestrinn hljóp svá hart ok yfir grindina, at hann kom hvergi nær. Þá reið Hermóðr heim til hallarinnar ok steig af hesti, gekk inn í höllina, sá þar sitja í qndugi, Baldr bróður sinn, ok dvalðist Hermóðr þar um nótina. En at morgni þá beiddist Hermóðr af Helju, at Baldr skyldi ríða

Then rode Hermod, until he came to the gate of Hel. Then he dismounted from his horse and tied his girth fast, then he mounted the horse and drove it with his spur, and the horse leaped so high over the gate that he came no nearer to it. Then rode Hermod to the hall and came down from his steed, went into the hall, and saw that Baldr his brother was sitting in the high-seat. Hermod stayed there overnight. And

heim með honum, ok sagði, hversu mikill grátr var með ásum. in the morning he begged Hel to let Baldr ride home with him and told her how great sorrow was among the Aesir.

### 中文意译

接着赫尔莫德一路骑到冥府的大门前。他从马上下来，收了收自己的腰带，接着翻身上马，用马刺策它。斯莱普尼尔高高地跳起来，一下越过那大门，赫尔莫德终于来到了冥府。他一直骑到赫尔的厅堂门口，下了马，径直走到里面。只见自己的哥哥巴德尔正坐在大厅中间的高椅上。赫尔莫德在那里留宿一夜，第二天早上他请求赫尔放巴德尔和他一道回去，并且告诉她神族们有多么悲伤。

### 语法

#### 1. sté hann af hestinum

stíga ‘step’ 的用法比较有趣，一般来说，这个词表达的是“向上登”的含义。但如果接类似于 af, ofan, niðr 之类的词，意思就变成“下降”了。这里的 sté af hestinum 指的就是从马背上下来。

#### 2. qndugi

或称 qndvegi，字面意思 ‘opposite-way’，指的是两把相对的椅子。维京人的住房多是长条形的，进门后的左右两侧设有面对面的两条长椅（即 bekkr），长椅紧挨着墙，向房屋的深处延伸。长椅的中间是主座，这两个主座合称为 qndvegi，多有珠宝装饰，留给地位尊贵的人。坐北朝南的称为 qndvegi it æðra ‘the higher seat’，一般留给主人。坐南朝北的称为 qndvegi it úæðra ‘the lower seat’，一般留给贵宾。巴德尔坐在高椅上，指他在冥府被尊为上宾。

#### 3. beiddist Hermóðr af Helju

beiddist 是 beiða 的反身式，‘request on one’s own behalf’，总体来说没有改变意思。

En Hel sagði, at þat skyldi svá reyna, hvárt Baldr var svá ástsæll, sem sagt er. Ok ef allir hlutir í heiminum, kykvir ok dauðir, gráta hann, þá skal hann fara til ása aftr, en haldask með Helju, ef nakkvarr mælir við eða vill eigi gráta.

And Hel said that it should be tested whether Baldr was so all-loved as he was said to be and if all the things in the world, quick or dead, will weep for him, that he shall go back to the Aesir, but will stay if anything says otherwise or if some weeps not.

### 中文意译

于是赫尔说，她要看看巴德尔是否真的像赫尔莫德所说的那样受到所有人的爱戴。假如世界上的一切东西，无论是死是活，都愿意为巴德尔哭泣，那么他就可以回到神族那里，可但凡有人说他不爱巴德尔或是不愿为他哭泣，那么巴德尔就得留在冥府。

### 语法

#### 1. haldask með Helju

halda ‘hold’ 的反身式 haldask 意思有变化，表示“停留、坚持”等。

Pá stóð Hermóðr upp, en Baldr leiddi hann út ór hollinni ok tók hringinn Draupni ok sendi Óðni til minja, en Nanna sendi Frigg ripti ok enn fleiri gjafar, Fullu fingrgull. Þá reið Hermóðr aftr leið sína ok kom í Ásgarð ok sagði öll tíðendi, þau er hann hafði sét ok heyrت. Því næst sendu æsir um allan heim erendreka at biðja, at Baldr væri grátinn ór helju, en allir gerðu þat, menninir ok kykvendar ok jorðin ok steinarnir ok tré ok allr málmr, svá sem þú munt sét hafa, at þessir hlutir gráta þá, er þeir koma ór frosti ok í hita.

Then Hermod stood up, but Baldr led him out of the hall and took the ring Draupnir and sent it to Odin as a remembrance, and Nanna sent Frigg a suit as well as some other gifts, and a gold finger-ring to Fulla. Then Hermod rode back on his way and came to Asgard and told everything he had seen and heard. Upon that, the Aesir sent messengers over the whole world to pray that Baldr be wept out of Hel, and all men did that, the living, earth, stones and trees and all metals, all cried as you must have seen when they come out of frost to heat.

## 中文意译

于是赫尔莫德站起身来，巴德尔却拉着他到外面去，他拿出戒指德罗普尼尔让赫尔莫德带给奥丁留作纪念。巴德尔的妻子南娜给弗丽嘉送去了一件衣服还有一些别的礼物，又给芙拉送去一支金戒指。赫尔莫德骑马回到阿斯加德，告诉了神族们他的所见所闻。听到这些，神族们立刻向全世界送出信使，祈求大家哭泣好让巴德尔离开冥府。所有人都照做了，世上一切的活物，还有土地，山石，树木，金属都为巴德尔落泪，就好像它们离开了寒霜重回温暖时一样。

## 语法

## 1. sendi Frigg ripti ok enn fleiri gjafar

senda ‘send’ 是典型的接双宾语的动词，送出的物用宾格，赠送的对象用与格。enn, 副词，‘yet, more’.

Þá er sendimenn fóru heim ok hófðu vel rekit sín erendi, finna þeir í helli nǫkkurum, hvar gýgr sat. Hon nefndist Þókk. Þeir biðja hana gráta Baldr ór Helju. Hon segir:

Þókk mun gráta

Þurrum tárum

Baldrs bálfarar

Kyks né dauðs

Nautka ek Karls sonar

Haldi Hel því er hefir

Then when the messengers went home and had well finished their errands, they found that in a certain cave sat a giantess who called herself Thokk. They ask her to weep Baldr out of Hel. She says:

Thokk will weep

with dry tears

For Baldr's funeral

Neither in life nor death

I liked not Karl's son

Let Hel hold what she had

En þess geta menn, at þar hafi verit Loki Laufeyjarson, er flest hefir illt gert með ásum.

And these men believed that the woman who had been there was Loki Laufey-son, who has made the evilest thing among the gods.

## 中文意译

等到所有的信使都完成了他们的任务回到家时，他们发现在一个山洞里住着一个女巨人，她的名字叫索克。他们请求她为巴德尔哭泣，索克说：

索克不会留下泪水  
为巴德尔之死伤悲  
无论他是生还是死  
我都不怜悯他一丝  
贵族之子已归死神  
就让赫尔留他终身

这些信使相信，刚刚的女人就是洛基变的，他已经犯了下神族中最为人不齿的恶行。

## 第三章 冰岛人萨迦选读

萨迦（saga）一词无疑与动词 *segja*（说）有关，它的意思是口口相传的东西。萨迦是古代日耳曼地区主要的文学体裁。按照萨迦的题材分类，可以将其分成下面的几类：

1. 王室萨迦：主要记载十二至十四世纪斯堪的纳维亚列王的生平故事。最有名的是《列王传》（Heimskringla，字面意思是大地的宝球，这是第一篇故事依林格萨迦的第一个词），收集了多个挪威和瑞典国王的故事。这些故事虽然有真实的历史背景，但也常常和神话世界相联系。
2. 冰岛人萨迦：主要记载冰岛九至十一世纪（即从冰岛作为定居点后开始的）的故事，常常关注冰岛的传奇人物的家族身世，因而又叫家族萨迦。冰岛人萨迦的历史真实性更高，叙事更为写实。这些故事本来是口口相传的，但大约在十三世纪过后才开始大规模地记录为纸质写本，因而此时的语言已经更加接近现代的冰岛语。本部分选取的三篇萨迦是最负盛名的，包括尼阿尔萨迦（Njáls saga），格雷蒂尔萨迦（Grettis saga）和埃吉尔萨迦（Egils saga）
3. 传奇萨迦：相对于冰岛人萨迦，它描写的冰岛大陆基本上是尚未有人定居的状态，因此也经常和神话中的虚幻世界相交织，最有名的是沃尔松格萨迦（Volsunga saga），主要包括沃尔松格家族的兴衰史，非常著名的齐格鲁德杀死巨龙法夫尼尔的故事即出自沃尔松格萨迦。

### 3.1 尼阿尔萨迦（Njáls saga）选读

尼阿尔萨迦是冰岛人萨迦中最长的。文章记叙了两位英雄贡纳尔（Gunnar）和尼阿尔（Njáll）的生平故事以及他们各自家族几十年的血亲复仇。在阅读本段前需要了解一些背景知识：贡纳尔和尼阿尔是一对好朋友，贡纳尔身强力壮，长于战斗；尼阿尔则足智多谋，为贡纳尔出谋划策。贡纳尔的妻子哈尔格德（Hallgerðr）却是一个美貌而恶毒的女人，哈尔格德引起了一连串事件最终导致了贡纳尔的死亡和家族的长期纠纷。尼阿尔曾经预言，若是贡纳尔杀死一个家族中的两个人，就会招致自己的死亡。贡纳尔的敌人莫尔德（Mörðr）用计让贡纳尔杀死了齐泽尔（Gizur）家族中的两个人，齐泽尔带人找贡纳尔复仇。贡纳尔力战迎敌，打退了几波敌人，直到他的弓弦被切断。哈尔格德因为贡纳尔之前打过自己不愿意割下自己的头发给贡纳尔做弓弦，结果导致贡纳尔被杀。

Skáli Gunnars var górr af viði einum ok súðþakiðr útan, ok gluggar hjá brúnásunum ok snúin þar fyrir speld. Gunnarr svaf í lofti einu í skálanum ok Hallgerðr ok móðir hans. Þá er þeir kómu at, vissu þeir eigi hvárt Gunnarr myndi heim vera, ok báðu at einnhverr myndi fara heim fyrir ok vita hvers víss yrði, en þeir settusk niðr á vollinn.

Gunnar's hall was made of a beam and clinched boards on the outside, windows by the ridge-beam and shutters fastened in the front. Gunnar slept in one loft of the hall so did Hallgerdr and his mother. And when they arrived, they did not know whether Gunnar was at home, (so they decided that) someone should go to the house and know for sure who was there while others seat themselves down on the ground.

#### 中文意译

贡纳尔的房子是由一块大横梁支撑起来的，沿着衡量排铺着木板当作屋顶。屋顶上开有几扇窗户，窗前还装了遮板。贡纳尔和他的母亲和妻子一起住在顶楼的一间屋子。当贡纳尔的仇敌们来到他的房子跟前时，他们还不清楚贡纳尔在不在家。于是，他们决定派一个人去侦察一下，看看有谁在屋子里，其他人则坐在地上等候。

#### 语法

##### 1. górr

gera 的过去分词的另一种形式。gera 本身形式复杂，还写作 gorva, góra, gjorva 等。因此，其过去分词也有 gerðr, gerr, górr 等形式。

##### 2. súðþakiðr

由 súð ‘sewing, clinching’ 和 þekja ‘thatch’ 的过去分词构成。súð 指的是把长条形的板钉在一起的工艺，一般用来做成船舱或房屋的外壁。

Þorgrímr austmaðr<sup>1</sup> gekk upp á skálann; Gunnarr sér at rauðan kyrtill bar við glugginum, ok leggr út með atgeirinum á hann miðjan. Þorgrími skruppu fœtrnir ok varð lauss skjoldrinn, ok hrataði hann ofan af þekjunni. Gengr hann síðan at þeim Gizuri, þar er þeir sátu á vellinum. Gizur<sup>2</sup> leit við honum ok mælti: “Hvárt er Gunnarr heima?” Þorgrímr svarar: “Viti þér þat, en hitt vissa ek, at atgeirr hans var heima.” Síðan fell hann niðr dauðr.

### 中文意译

挪威人索格里姆爬上了贡纳尔的房子。贡纳尔瞥见索格里姆的红色短袍正向着窗户移动，便用矛向他的腰刺去。索格里姆失去了平衡，手里的盾牌也掉了下来，他一个踉跄从屋顶上摔了下去。他蹒跚地走回齐泽尔那里，那群人还坐在地上等着。齐泽尔看到索格里姆回来，便问他：“贡纳尔在家吗？”索格姆回答说：“你自己瞧着办吧，反正我知道他的矛在家。”话音未落他就倒地而亡。

### 语法

#### 1. rauðan kyrtill bar við glugginum

rauðan kyrtill 是宾格形式，本句涉及 bera 的无人称结构，e-t ber ... ‘something is carried ...’，后面可接额外的介词短语。这种无人称结构略有一点被动的含义，表示非自主的或偶然的移动过程。由于这里提到的短袍不会自己移动，而是穿在索格里姆身上和他一起移动的，因此不能用 bera 的主动态。

#### 2. Þorgrími skruppu fœtrnir

skruppu, skreppa ‘slip’ 的过去式。这个动词常用形如 fœtr skreppa e-m 的结构，接一个额外的与格表示“某人的脚打滑”。

Þeir sóttu þá at húsinum. Gunnarr skaut út órum at þeim ok varðisk vel, ok gátu þeir ekki at gort. Þá hljópu sumir á húsin ok ætluðu þaðan at sökja. Gunnarr kom þangat at þeim órunum, ok gátu þeir ekki at gort, ok fór svá fram um hríð. Þeir tóku hvílð ok sóttu at í annat sinn. Gunnarr skaut enn út, ok gátu þeir ekki at gort ok hrukku frá í annat sinn.

### 中文意译

于是齐泽尔一行开始围攻贡纳尔的房舍。贡纳尔挽弓射箭，敌人不能接近。于是有些人跳上房顶准备从上面进攻，贡纳尔转而把箭射向他们，敌人又没能得逞。战斗就这样持续了一块儿。齐泽尔的人撤退休整片刻，第二次向贡纳尔发起了进攻。贡纳尔箭如雨下，敌人一筹莫展，只好第二次撤退。

Thorgrim the Easterner went up to the hall; Gunnar saw the red kirtle Thorgrim bore coming up to the window and shot out his bill at the middle of him. Thorgrim's feet slipped and his shield became loose (fell), he tumbled off the thatch. Then he went back to Gizur's men, where they sat on the ground. Gizur looked at him and asked: “Is Gunnar home?” Thorgrim answered: “See for yourself, but I know this: his spear was home.” Then he fell dead.

Then they rushed at the house. Gunnar shot arrows at them and protected himself well, and they got nothing done. Then some leaped upon the house and intended to attack from there. Gunnar came there to fight them with arrows, and they got nothing done again. It went on like this for a while. They took a rest and attacked Gunnar for a second time. Gunnar shot even more arrows, and they got nothing done and withdrew from the house for a second time.

<sup>1</sup> 这里指的实际上是挪威人，因为挪威在冰岛以东。

<sup>2</sup> Gizurr Teitssonr, 绰号“白色”齐泽尔 (Gizurr the White)，冰岛首领之一。

## 语法

## 1. sóttu

sækja ‘seek; attack’ 的过去式。

## 2. gátu þeir ekki at gört

geta+ 宾格名词 + 过去分词表意类似于英语 ‘get something done, manage to do something’, 表示能力。

Þá mælti Gizurr Hvíti, “Sœkjam at betr, ekki verðr af oss.” Gørðu þeir þá hríð ina þriðju ok váru við lengi; eptir þat hrukku þeir frá.

Gunnarr mælti, “Or liggr þar úti á veggnum, ok er sú af þeira ɔrum, ok skal ek þeiri skjóta til þeira, ok er þeim þat skomm, ef þeir fá geig af vápnum sínum.”

Móðir hans mælti, “Gor þú eigi þat, at þú vekir þá, er þeir hafa áðr frá horfit.”

Then Gizur the White said, “We shall attack harder, nothing comes of us.” Then they tried for the third time and lasted for a while; after that, they retreated.

Gunnar said, “An arrow lies out there on the wall, and it’s one of theirs. I shall shoot it at them, and it’ll be a shame for them if they get hurt by their own weapon.”

His mother said, “Do not do that, or you’ll provoke them when they have retreated.”

## 中文意译

于是“白色”齐泽尔喝道：“我们围攻许久却还是一无所获，快尽全力攻打他！”于是他们又尝试了一次，结果过了不久又被打退了。

贡纳尔说：“外面的墙上插着一支他们射来的箭。如果我把它射出去，让他们为自己的武器所伤，想必能狠狠地羞辱他们。”

他的母亲劝他：“还是算了吧，敌人已经撤退，可别惹恼了他们。”

## 语法

## 1. ekki verðr af oss

verða af e-u ‘come of something’，表示“称为某事的结果”，这里的 oss 指的我们（发起的进攻）。

Gunnarr þreif ɔrina ok skaut til þeira, ok kom á Eilíf Qnundarson, ok fekk hann af sár mikit. Hann hafði staðit einn saman, ok vissu þeir eigi at hann var særðr.

“Hönd kom þar út,” segir Gizurr, “ok var á gullhringr, ok tók ɔr er lá á þekjunni, ok myndi eigi út leitat viðfanga, ef gnógt væri inni, ok skulu vér nú sœkja at.”

Mørðr mælti, “Brennu vér hann inni.”

“Pat skal verða aldri,” segir Gizurr, “þó at ek vita at líf mitt liggi við.<sup>3</sup> Er þér sjálfrátt at leggja til ráð þau er dugi, svá slœgr maðr sem þú ert kallaðr.”

Gunnar clutched the arrow and shot at them, and it came at Eilif Onundarson, and he took a great wound. He had been standing alone, and they didn’t know that he was wounded.

“A hand came out there”, said Gizur, “and a gold ring was on it, and it took an arrow that was stuck in the thatch. He would not seek supplies outside if there were enough inside and we should attack now.”

Mord said, “Let’s burn him inside.”

“That shall never happen”, said Gizur, “because I know that my life lies on it. But you’re free to find plans that would work, as you were told to be a clever man.”

## 中文意译

贡纳尔依旧拔出墙上的箭射向他们，命中了埃里弗·奥农达松，让他受了重伤。由于他一个人行动，齐泽尔他们中没有人注意到他的伤情。

齐泽尔说：“我看到一只手伸出来拔出屋顶上的箭，那只手上戴着一枚金戒指。贡纳尔肯定弹尽粮绝了，否则他不会出来寻找武器。现在正是进攻的时候。”

<sup>3</sup> 齐泽尔不愿放火，并说自己的生命依赖于此。这里他指的是自己的名誉，因为防火烧房会殃及贡纳尔无辜的家人，不符合寻仇的原则。齐泽尔认为这是可耻的行为。

莫尔德提议说：“我们何不把他烧死在屋里？”

“绝不可能，”齐泽尔说：“这会把我的名声搭进去。不过我听说你是个聪明人，你还是可以想想别的办法。”

### 语法

#### 1. lá

liggja 的过去式。

#### 2. ok myndi eigi út leitat viðfanga

本句结构复杂，它是省去了 vera 的包含情态动词的无人称被动句。在一般的被动句中，限定动词是 vera 的第三人称单数形式，而如果要加上情态动词，限定动词就变成了情态动词本身，系动词以不定式形式出现在情态动词后，如 mun vera. 但是 munu 后的 vera 经常被省略，导致这个被动句没有系动词。这种语法规则使得 munu 好像能接一个过去分词表示被动态，如 menn myndi sendir ‘men should be sent’. 在本句中，leita 引起的无人称被动结构使得被动态更加隐蔽。实际上，viðfanga 是本句的逻辑主语，它是 viðfang ‘supply’ 的复数属格，因为 leita 支配属格。本句的完整形式是 viðfanga myndi eigi leitat vera ‘supplies would not be searched’. 之所以本句要以物为逻辑主语，是因为下一句中 gnógt væri 的主语只能是 viðfang.

#### 3. liggi við

liggja við 是固定短语，字面意思是“依赖于”，但常常表示某事危在旦夕或万分重要。

Strengir lágu á vellinum ok váru hafðir til at festa með hús jafnan. Mørðr mælti, “Tóku vér strengina ok berum um ássendana, en festum aðra endana um steina ok snúum í vindásu ok vindum af ræfrit af skálanum.”

Þeir tóku strengina ok veittu þessa umbúð allra, ok fann Gunnarr eigi fyrr en þeir hofðu undit alt þakit af skálanum.

Some ropes lay on the ground, and they were used to strengthen the roof. Then Mord said, “Let us take the ropes and throw one end over the end of the carrying beams but fasten the other end to the rocks and tighten it to a windlass and so pull the roof off the hall.”

They took the ropes and all helped to carry this out, and Gunnar did not find them before they had pulled the whole roof off the hall.

### 中文意译

地上有几捆固定屋顶的绳。莫尔德说：“我们把绳子的一头甩过房梁，再把另一头系在石头上。用辘轳把绳缠紧，就能把屋顶从房子上掀掉。”

于是他们拿起绳子，所有人都来帮忙，在贡纳尔反应过来前就把整个屋顶从房子上拆掉了。

### 语法

#### 1. váru hafðir

hafa 作及物动词，表示“使用”。

#### 2. undit

vinda ‘twist, wind’ 的过去分词。这段话中的 vinda 就指的是拉紧绳子（以掀翻屋顶）。

Gunnarr skýtr þá af boganum, svá at þeir komask aldri at honum. Þá mælti Mørðr í annat sinn at þeir myndi brenna Gunnar inni. Gizurr mælti, “Eigi veit ek hví þú vill þat mæla, er engi vill annarra, ok skal þat aldri verða.” Í þessu bili hleypr upp á þekjuna Þorbrandr Þorleiksson ok hoggr í sundr bogastrenginn Gunnars. Gunnarr þrífr atgeirinn báðum hondum ok

Then Gunnar shoots with his bow so that they could never reach him. Then Mord said a second time that they must burn Gunnar inside. But Gizur said, “I don’t know why you always purpose what no one wishes, and that shall never be.” At that moment, Thorbrand Thorleikson sprang up on the roof and cuts asunder Gunnar’s bowstring. Gunnar clutches

snýsk at honum skjótt ok rekr í gegnum hann ok kastar honum á völlinn.

the bill with both hands and turns to him speedily and thrust it through him, and casts him down on the ground.

### 中文意译

贡纳尔于是只好用弓箭还击，依然没有人能接近他。于是莫尔德又提议用火把贡纳尔烧死在屋里。但齐泽尔说：“我不知道为什么你总是老调重弹，提些大家都不愿意做的歪点子，放火是不可能的。”就在那时，索尔布朗德·索雷克松跳上屋顶，切断了贡纳尔的弓弦。贡纳尔双手握住长矛，很快转向索尔布朗德，一击刺穿了他的身体，把他放倒在地上。

### 语法

#### 1. þeir komask aldri at honum

koma 的反身式表示“达到”，komask at ‘reach, procure’.

Þá hljóp upp Ásbrandr bróðir hans. Gunnarr leggr til hans atgeirinum, ok kom hann skildi fyrir sik; atgeirrinn rendi í gegnum skjoldinn ok meðal handleggjanna. Snaraði Gunnarr þá atgeirinn svá fast at klofnaði skjoldrinn, en brotnuðu handleggirnir, ok fell hann út af vegginum. Aðr hafði Gunnarr sárt átta menn, en vegit þá tvá. Þá fekk Gunnarr sár tvau; ok sögðu þat allir menn at hann brygði sér hvártki við sár né við bana.

Then up sprung Asbrand his brother. Gunnar thrusts his bill at him. Asbrand put his shield before him, but the bill flew through the shield and between his arms. Gunnar then twists the bill so hard that the shield split and his arms broke, and he fell from the wall. Gunnar had already wounded eight men and slain those two. At that time Gunnar got two wounds, and all men said that he never winced at wounds or death.

### 中文意译

索尔布朗德的兄弟阿斯布朗德又跳了上来。贡纳尔用矛掷向他，阿斯布朗德拿盾挡在身前，然而矛径直刺穿了盾，从他的双臂间穿了过去。贡纳尔将矛一拧，整个盾牌裂成两半，阿斯布朗德的双臂也被切断，从墙上跌了下去。此时，贡纳尔已经伤了八人，杀死了两兄弟，他也身负两伤。所有人都说他面对伤痛和死亡不曾退缩一次。

### 语法

#### 1. kom hann skildi

koma 作及物动词时接与格，表示“使... 移动”，相当于‘put, carry’之类的动词。

#### 2. hann brygði sér hvártki við sár né við bana

brygði sér við 的用法相当于 bregðask við，表示“对某事产生强烈的情感”，这里指的是害怕。当然，bregða 表示这个含义时一般用无人称结构 e-m bregðr við e-t.

Hann mælti til Hallgerðar, “Fá mér leppa tvá ór hári þínu ok snúið þit, móðir míni, saman til bogastrengs mér.”

“Liggr þér nökkut við?” segir hon.

“Líf mitt liggr við”, segir hann, “því at þeir munu mik aldri fá sótt meðan ek kom boganum við.”

“Pá skal ek nú”, segir hon, “munu þér kinnhestinn, ok hirði ek aldri hvárt þú verr þik lengr eða skemmr.”

“Hefir hvern til síns ágætis nökkut”, segir Gunnarr, “ok skal þik þessa eigi lengi biðja.”

Then Gunnar said to Hallgerda, “Give me two locks of your hair, and you two, my mother and you, twist them together into a bowstring for me.”

“Does anything lie on it?” she says.

“My life lies on it,” he said, “for they will never be able to attack me as long as I take my bow.”

“Then I shall now,” she says, “call to your mind that slap on the face, and I never care whether you can hold longer or shorter.”

“Everyone’s fame rests upon some deed of his own,” says Gunnar, “and I will ask you no more for this.”

Rannveig<sup>4</sup> mælti, "Illa ferr þér, ok mun þín skómm lengi uppi."

Rannveig said, "You behave ill and this shame shall long be in your mind."

### 中文意译

贡纳尔对哈尔格德说：“给我两缕你的头发，你和我母亲一起把它给我编成弓弦。”

哈尔格德说：“这关系到什么吗？”

“我的命就靠它了，”贡纳尔说：“只要我还有弓箭，他们就不能靠近我。”

“那我倒要提醒你，”哈尔格德说：“你忘了当初扇在我脸上的巴掌了么？我才不管你能撑多久呢。”

“你的所作所为要被人记住，”贡纳尔说：“我不会再问你寻求帮助了。”

兰维格说：“你这个恶毒的女人，亏你能做出这种事，这耻辱必让你一辈子难忘。”

### 语法

#### 1. meðan

本是副词，相当于‘whilst’。它有时也能如连词般使用，并常和 er, at, sem 等词搭配，但有时也可以略去之，如本句中的情况。

#### 2. muna þér kinnhestinn

muna 有时额外添加一个与格宾语 muna e-m e-t 表示“使某人想起”，此时这个短语有一层额外情感色彩，如感激某人或报复某人等等。这里的情况就是哈尔格德与贡纳尔算旧账。

#### 3. hefir hvern til síns ágætis nökkt

这是一句谚语，字面含义“人出名总是有原因”(everyone has something for his fame)，这里实际上暗指哈尔格德会因为她的所作所为而臭名远扬。

#### 4. illa ferr þér

fara 的无人称用法表示情况的发展，类似于英语中‘it goes ...’。若加一属格人称代词，则表示“某人表现如何”。

Gunnarr varði sik vel ok frœknliga ok særir nú aðra átta menn svá stórum sárum at mórgum lá við bana. Gunnarr verr sik þar til er hann fell af móði. Þeir særðu hann mórgum stórum sárum, en þó kom sk Hann ór hǫndum þeim ok varði sik þá enn lengi; en þó kom þar at þeir drápu hann.

Gunnar defended himself well and valiantly and now wounds another eight men with such severe wounds that many were almost killed. Gunnar protected himself until he fell with exhaustion. Then they wounded him with many and great wounds, but still, he escaped from their hands and defended for a little longer, but finally, it came about that they slew him.

### 中文意译

贡纳尔英勇地战斗，又打伤了八个人，他们中不少受了重伤，奄奄一息。但等到贡纳尔终于精疲力尽，齐泽尔等人还是重伤了他。贡纳尔勉强逃出去又坚持了一会儿，但最后还是被他们所杀。

### 语法

#### 1. kom þar at

koma at e-u 表示“结局是...”，相当于‘it comes to the point that ...; it happens that ...’。

<sup>4</sup> 贡纳尔母亲的名字。

## 3.2 格雷蒂尔萨迦 (Grettis saga) 选读

格雷蒂尔和上面的贡纳尔一样也是悲剧性的人物。他性格暴烈，年轻时因为激情杀人而被放逐，从此踏上了传奇的冒险生涯。他的故事和古英语史诗贝奥武夫非常相近，因此有学者相信这两个故事本身就是同一个原型的变体。格雷蒂尔期初依靠杀死尸鬼（draugr，民间传说中的一种死而复活的尸体，通常住在墓地里守卫自己的财产）获得财富，后来他遇到了一只名叫格拉姆（Glámr）的尸鬼，尽管格雷蒂尔成功杀死了格拉姆，但尸鬼在死前对格雷蒂尔下了诅咒，使他力量大减，运气也急转直下，最后英年早逝。节选的段落就是描述他与格拉姆的战斗的，这部分的背景是这样的：格拉姆频繁出现在一个仓库的周围，格雷蒂尔埋伏在仓库里的货物堆下面，准备伏击格拉姆。

Ljós brann í skálanum um nóttna. Ok er af mundi þriðjungr at nótta, heyrði Grettir út dunur miklar. Var þá farit upp á húsin ok riðit skálanum ok barit hælunum, svá at brakaði í hverju tré. Því gekk lengi; þá var farit ofan af húsinum ok til dura gengit. Ok er upp var lokit hurðunni, sá Grettir at þrællinn rétti inn hófuðit, ok sýndisk honum afskræmiliga mikit ok undarliga stórskorit.

A light burnt in the hall throughout the night. And when the third part of the night had passed, Grettir heard great noise outside. Then it had come up to the house and rode over the hall and struck with its heels so that it creaked in every beam. This goes for a long time, then it went from the hall to the door. And when it opened up the door, Grettir saw that the thrall stretched his head in and it seemed to him hideously powerful and strangely huge.

### 中文意译

屋子的灯亮了一夜。等到鸡鸣三更的时候，格雷蒂尔听到外面传来一阵骚动。尸鬼爬上了屋子，从房顶上面绕了过来，它的爪子踩在屋顶的木板上，每一条都发出嘎嘎的响声。声音又持续了一会儿。然后它从房子上摸到房门前。接着门打开了。格雷蒂尔看见那只尸鬼把脑袋探进来，那头颅长得丑陋吓人却又看上去力大无比。

### 语法

1. af mundi þriðjungr at nótta  
munu 的过去式时常表示不确定的语气，“大约，可能”。af+ 时间表示“过了...”。
2. var þá farit upp á húsin  
无人称被动的典型用法，不强调动作的主体。
3. upp var lokit hurðunni  
loka ‘lock’ 本是“关门”之意，但 loka upp 表示“开门”。另外，loka 接与格，因此本句也是无人称被动。

Glámr fór seint ok réttisk upp, er hann kom inn í dyrnar. Hann gnæfaði ofarliga við ræfrinu. Snýr skálanum ok lagði handlegginn upp á þvertréit ok gægðisk inn yfir skálann. Ekki lélt bóni heymra til sín, því at honum þótti óerit um, er hann heyrði hvat um var úti. Grettir lá kyrr ok hrærði sik hvergi. Glámr sá at hrúga nökkrur lá í setinu, ok rézk nú innar ep-tir skálanum ok þreif í feldinn stundar fast. Grettir spryndi í stokkinn ok gekk því hvergi. Glámr hnykti í annat sinn miklu fastara, ok bifadisk hvergi feldrinn. Í þriðja sinn þreif hann í með báðum hondum svá fast at hann rétti Grettir upp ór setinu; kiptu nú í sundr feldinum í millum sín.

Glamr advanced slowly and stood up on his feet, as he came inside through the door. He rose high up to the roof and turned to the hall and set his forearm up on the cross-beam and peered in over the hall. The farmer let out no sound for him to hear, for he thought it was enough to hear what was outside. Grettir lay quiet and moved not a bit. Glamr noticed that some heap lay along the side of the hall and now made his way further into the hall and seized the cloak tightly. Grettir pressed his feet against the plank and this cloak held firm. Glamr pulled for a second time much harder, but the cloak still moved not at all. At the third time, he grasped the cloak with both hands and pulled so hard that he raised Grettir up from the seat and they tore the cloak between them into

pieces.

### 中文意译

格拉姆慢慢地从门里走进去，站起身来。他爬到屋顶上，用前臂把自己挂在横梁上，向下俯视整个仓库。农民（仓库的主人）一点声音也不敢出，光是外面的声音已经够他受了。格雷蒂尔安静地躺着，一动不动。格拉姆注意到墙壁边上的地板上放着什么东西，于是又往房子的深处走去，用手抓住盖在格雷蒂尔身上的布。格雷蒂尔用双脚抵住地，那层布纹丝不动。格拉姆又去拉那布，这次用了更大的力气，可是布依旧不动。第三次他用两只手紧紧地攥住布，拼命往上提，竟一下把格雷蒂尔从地上拉了起来。他们之间的布也被撕得粉碎。

### 语法

#### 1. gægðisk

gægjask ‘bend forward and peep’ 的过去式，这个动词只有反身式。

#### 2. bifask

古诺尔斯语中只有反身式，表示“松动，摇晃”。后来也用主动态 bifa 表示“移动”。

Glámr leit á slitrit er hann helt á, ok undraðisk mjók hverr svá fast mundi togask við hann. Ok í því hljóp Grettir undir hendr honum ok þreif um hann miðjan ok spenti á honum hrygginn sem fastast gat hann, ok ætlaði hann at Glámr skyldi kikna við. En þrællinn lagði at handleggjum Grettis svá fast at hann hórfaði allr fyrir orku sakir. Fór Grettir þá undan í ýmis setin. Gengu þá frá stokkarnir, ok alt brotnaði þat sem fyrir varð.

Glamr looked at the rag which he was holding on to and was quite astonished that someone could pull so hard against him. And at that moment Grettir sprang from under his arms and seized him around his waist and clasped his back as tight as he could, he expected that Glamr would sink at his knees, but the thrall wrenched Grettir's forearms so hard that he gave away completely because of his violence. Grettir then fell to another sideboard and the planks flew about and all that came before them were broken.

### 中文意译

格拉姆看着他手上的破布，想到有人竟然有如此大的力气和他对抗，不禁大吃一惊。趁这个时候，格雷蒂尔从格拉姆的手底下猛地跳起来，用双手绕住他的腰，用全力抵住他的背。格雷蒂尔本以为这样格拉姆就会跪倒下去，但那尸鬼狠狠拧住他的前臂，格雷蒂尔在他的蛮力下败下阵来。他摔到另一边的木板上，木头随之砸得飞了起来。两人面前的东西统统被弄断了。

### 语法

#### 1. fyrir orku sakir

和英文 ‘for the sake of ...’ 的结构一致。orku, orka ‘work’ 的属格，这里是“力量”的意思。

#### 2. gengu frá

和 ganga af 类似，表示“从... 中分离出来”，这里表示木板从基座上被砸飞。

Vildi Glámr leita út, en Grettir færði við foetr hvar sem hann mátti. En þó gat Glámr dregit hann fram ór skálanum. Áttu þeir þá allharða sókn, því at þrællinn ætlaði at koma honum út ór boenum; en svá ilt sem at eiga var við Glám inni, þá sá Grettir at þó var verra at fásk við hann úti, ok því brauzk hann í móti af öllu aflu at fara út. Glámr færðisk í aukana ok knepti hann at sér, er þeir komu í anddyrit. Ok er Grettir sér at hann fekk eigi við spornat, hefir hann alt eitt atriðit at

Glamr would find a way out, but Grettir braced his feet against every place that he was able to reach. Yet Glamr managed to drag him out from the hall, they had such a fierce struggle that the thrall intended to bring him outside of the house. But so hard as it was to hold Glamr on the inside, Grettir thought it was even worse to struggle with him on the outside, and therefore he fought against him with all his strength on the way out. Glamr smote him to the utmost of

hann hleypr sem harðast í fang þrælnum ok spyrnir báðum fótum í jarðfastan stein, er stóð í durunum. Við þessu bjósk þrællinn eigi; hann hafði þá togazk við at draga Grettí at sér, ok því kiknaði Glámr á bak aprí ok rauk qfugr út á dyrnar, svá at herðarnar námu uppdýrit ok ræfrit gekk í sundr, bæði viðirnir ok þekjan frerin; fell hann svá opinn ok qfugr út ör húsinu, en Grettir á hann ofan.

his strength and pulled Glamr to himself as they came to the porch. And as Grettir saw that he could not resist, he made a sudden movement that he dashed against the thrall's breast as hard as possible and kicked him with both feet against a stone fixed to the ground, which stood before the door. For this, the thrall had not prepared himself, for he had been struggling to drag Grettir to himself and he reeled back because of this and flew backward out straight to the door, so that his shoulders struck the lintel and the roof broke apart, both beams and the frozen thatch. Glamr fell on his back and tumbled backward to the outside the house, and Grettir fell on top of him.

### 中文意译

格拉姆想要找到一条出去的路，但格雷蒂尔用脚抵住一切他能够到的地方，不让他出去。但终于格拉姆还是把格雷蒂尔拖出了大厅，两人厮打在一起不分胜负，于是那尸鬼决定把格雷蒂尔拉到房子的外面去。在房子里和尸鬼搏斗已经十分困难，格雷蒂尔觉得到外面去局势会更加不利，因此他尽全力拖住格拉姆。格拉姆使出浑身力气猛锤格雷蒂尔，把他拉到了门廊。格雷蒂尔自认为招架不住，于是猛地冲向格拉姆的胸口，朝着门外的一块石头的方向一脚踹在他身上。尸鬼正在把格雷蒂尔往外拖，哪里想得到这招，格雷蒂尔把他撞得飞了。他向后倒去，肩膀笔直地砸在门框上。整个屋顶塌了下来，横梁和冻僵的茅草散落一地。格拉姆仰躺着摔倒在房子外面，格雷蒂尔伏在他的身上。

### 语法

1. gat Glámr dregit  
geta+过去分词表示“有能力做”，和 fá+过去分词的用法类似。
2. fásk við hann  
fásk 是 fá 的反身式，‘exert oneself’，fásk við，‘struggle against’。下文的 brauzk 是类似的意思。
3. í aukana  
固定短语，‘to the utmost’。
4. eitt atriðit  
均是宾格形式，表示度量，‘at one moment; at once’。
5. bjósk  
búa 的反身式，búa 作及物动词用时，表示“准备”。

Tunglskin var mikit úti ok gluggaþykkn; hratt stundum fyrir, en stundum dró frá. Nú í því er Glámr fell, rak skýit frá tunglinu, en Glámr hvesti augun upp í móti. Ok svá hefir Grettir sagt sjálfr, at þá eina sýn hafi hann sét svá at honum brygði við. Þá sigaði svá at honum af qllu saman, mœði ok því, er hann sá at Glámr gaut sínum sjónum harðliga, at hann gat eigi brugðit saxinu, ok lá náliga í milli heims ok heljar.

En því var meiri ófagnaðarkraptr með Glámi en flestum qðrum aptrgögnum, at hann mælti þá á þessa leið:

The moon was shining bright through the dense cloud, which drew sometimes over yet sometimes off. Now at this moment when Glamr fell, the cloud was driven away from the moon and Glamr glared up towards it, so that Grettir said to himself, that it was the only scene he had seen that made him tremble. All his fatigue and else made him faint when he saw that Glamr was staring hard at him so that he could not pull out his sword and lay nearly between life and death.

But there was more unfriendly-power in Glamr than most other return-walkers, that he spoke in this wise:

### 中文意译

皎洁的月光穿过浮云的缝隙。格拉姆倒下的时候，云层一下子散开了，月光直照下来。尸鬼抬头怒视着月亮，这光景让格雷蒂尔一下魂飞魄散，他自己也承认，在他见过的场面中这是唯一让他战栗的。格拉姆转头恶狠狠地看向他，他顿时晕了过去，没有力气抽出自己的短剑，就这样半昏半死地躺倒在地上。

但格拉姆的怪力比其他的尸鬼来得强，他这么说到：

### 语法

#### 1. hratt stundum fyrir, en stundum dró frá

hrinda ‘push’ 和 draga ‘drag’ 的无人称用法，表示云层的自然运动。

#### 2. hvesti augun

hvessa 本是“削尖”的意思。hvessa augu 是一种比喻的说法，它有两种意思：一是指目光尖锐，二是指热衷、期待、鼓励做某事。

#### 3. sigaði svá at honum

siga 本是“淹没”的意思，这里是一种无人称的说法，‘it sank all over him’. 表达的含义就是“晕倒；昏厥”。

#### 4. í milli heims ok heljar

heimr 和 hel 是一组相对的概念，表示“人间”和“冥府”。í milli heims ok heljar 即表示“处在生死关头”，形容人的处境或健康状况。

“Mikit kapp hefir þú á lagit, Grettir”, segir hann, “at finna mik. En þat mun eigi undarligt þykkja, þó at þú hljótir ekki mikit happ af mér. En þat má ek segja þér, at þú hefir nú fengit helming afsl þess ok þroska er þér var ætlaðr, ef þú hefðir mik ekki fundit. Nú fæ ek þat afl eigi af þér tekit er þú hefir áðr hrept, en því má ek ráða, at þú verðr aldri sterkari en nú ertu, ok ertu þó nógú sterkr, ok at því mun morgum verða. Þú hefir frægr orðit hér til af verkum þínnum; en heðan af munu falla til þín sektir ok vígaferli, en flest öll verk þín snúask þér til ógæfu ok hamingjuleysis. Þú munt verða útlægr gorr ok hljóta jafnan úti at búa einnsamt. Þá legg ek þat á við þík, at þessi augu sé þér jafnan fyrir sjónum sem ek ber eptir, ok mun þér erfitt þykkja einum at vera; ok þat mun þér til dauða draga.”

“What a great effort you have made, Grettir”, said he, “to find me. And that will seem no strange to me that you would get no good luck from me. But I can tell you that, you have now only half the might and strength as they were supposed to be, had you not found me. Now I can't have that power taken, which you had before, but I can rule that, you shall never be stronger than you are now. And your might is nevertheless strong enough, but to this many shall also come. You have become famous here for your deeds but from now exile and battle shall fall upon you, and most of your actions will twist you into misfortune. You shall become an outlaw and always have to live out all alone. Then I put that before you, that these eyes shall always be before your vision, as I laid behind, and you shall find it difficult to be alone, and that will haunt you till the day of your death.”

### 中文意译

“格雷蒂尔啊，你可使花了不少力气，”他接着说：“才终于找到了我。（如果现在你杀了我）以后交了霉运，我也一点都不会奇怪的。我可以告诉你，假如你没有找上我的话，你的力量和雄风会是现在的两倍。眼下我虽然夺不走你从前积累的力气，但我能肯定，你再也不会像现在这么强壮了。即便现在你的本事还算不错，但很多人马上就会赶上你。你靠你的那些英雄事迹在这里出尽风头，但以后流放和厮杀就会伴你一生，你所做的事也会让你不幸。法律不会再保护你，以后你一辈子要漂泊在外，孤身一人。我要把这双眼睛放在你面前，它们以后会永远跟随着你。你会发现流亡的日子是多么难受，可到死也摆脱不了。”

## 语法

1. útlægr útlægr ‘outlawed’ 是北欧法律中对罪犯的最严厉处罚方式，一般译为“放逐”。早期北欧社会没有中央集权政府，故而没有行刑的主体机构，但社会共同体可以宣布罪犯被“放逐”，使之得不到任何的法律保障。任何人可以迫害或杀死放逐犯，而不必被追究法律责任，因此放逐事实上可等同于死刑。

## 2. þat mun þér til dauða draga

注意 *þér* 不是 *draga* 的直接宾语，因为 *draga* 接宾格。*draga til* 是一个固定的说法，通常表示“注定”，且常是无人称的，如 *nema til verra dragi* ‘unless things turn worse’. 这里的句子虽然有一个形式的主语 *þat*，但它还是或多或少受无人称结构的影响，用与格表示对象。

Ok sem þrællinn hafði þetta mælt, þá rann af Grettí  
ómeigin, þat sem á honum hafði verit. Brá hann þá saxinu  
ok hjó hofuð af Glámi ok setti þat við þjó honum.

And as the thrall had said this, the faintness which had  
come over him went away from him. He drew his sword and  
hewed the head off Glamr and placed it between his thighs.

## 中文意译

等到那鬼说完这些，格雷蒂尔已经从昏厥中清醒过来。他拿起短剑砍下了格拉姆的头，把它放在大腿中间。

## 3.3 埃吉尔萨迦 (Egils saga) 选读

《埃吉尔萨迦》从埃吉尔的祖父乌尔弗 (Úlfr) 说起，讲述了埃吉尔家族的历史和埃吉尔一生的战斗和人际交往，时间跨度长达一百五十余年。埃吉尔是一个极具冒险精神的人物，他一生曾为多个领主冲锋陷阵，也因为自己鲁莽暴躁的脾性与人结仇，数次被国王放逐。埃吉尔同时也是诸多萨迦的主人公中最会写诗的，诗才是维京人看重的品质，埃吉尔的诗作不仅为他赢得了名声，甚至有几次挽救了他的生命。《埃吉尔萨迦》也因此被誉为最有文采的萨迦。

节选部分的故事 (44 章) 是这样的：埃吉尔一行前往阿特罗伊岛 (Atløy, 挪威西部的一个小岛) 办理差事，挪威王埃里克 (Eiríkr) 的仆人波尔瑟 (Bárðr) 接待了他们。波尔瑟骗埃吉尔说麦酒已经喝尽，只用酸奶招待他。可是等到当天的晚些时候，国王和王后也来岛上举行宴会，波尔瑟却拿出了充足的麦酒欢庆。埃吉尔在宴会期间不断地作诗讽刺波尔瑟两面派的行为 (在中世纪挪威，作诗的能力非常被看重，而埃吉尔恰好长于写诗)，另一方面埃吉尔酒量惊人，喝起来不受控制，让主人非常难堪。波尔瑟和王后设计在酒中给埃吉尔下毒，却最终被埃吉尔识破了。他拔剑戳死了波尔瑟连夜潜逃，埃里克派人追击埃吉尔却反而失去了几名手下，从此埃吉尔和埃里克结下了仇。

Þá gekk Bárðr til dróttningar ok sagði henni, at þar var  
maðr sá, er skömm færði at þeim ok aldregi drakk svá, at  
eigi segði hann sik þyrsta. Dróttning ok Bárðr blönduðu þá  
drykkinn ólyfjani ok báru þá inn. Signdi Bárðr fullit, fekk  
síðan qseljunni. Færði hon Agli ok bað hann drekka. Egill  
brá þá knífi sínum ok stakk í lófa sér. Hann tók við horninu  
ok reist á rúnar ok reið á blóðinu.

Then Bardr goes to the queen and said to her, that there  
was a man who brought disgrace to them and that he never  
drank too much and always said he was thirsty. The queen  
and Bardr then mixed the drink with poison and brought it  
in. Bardr consecrated the full horn and gave it to ale-maid.  
She carried it to Egil and asked him to drink. Egil then took  
out his knife and pricked his palm. He took the horn, carved  
runes upon it and smeared it with blood.

## 中文意译

于是波尔瑟到王后那里对她说，有个不速之客酒量惊人，怎么喝都喝不够。这人还口出狂言让王室蒙羞。王后和波尔瑟就把毒药掺在酒里，把装酒的牛角杯带进宴厅。波尔瑟为酒杯祝圣，然后把它递给侍酒女。侍女将杯子传给埃吉尔并请他饮酒。埃吉尔于是抽出佩刀，挑破自己的手掌。他接过酒杯，在

上面刻下符文并把血涂在上面。

### 语法

- aldregi drakk svá, at eigi segði hann sik þyrsta

读者最好把这里的 svá at 理解为 ‘so much that’ 而不是简单的 ‘so that’，即 ‘never drink so much, that he says he is not thirsty’.

- signdi Bárðr fullit

signa ‘sign’ 本是 “做记号” 的意思，维京人在饮酒前有时会在酒杯上刻锤子的符号。在基督教传入前，锤子在神话中和闪电联系在一起，都被视作圣物（例如，雷神的武器就是锤子）。

- Agli

Egill 的与格，又作 Egli. 注意非重读音节的 i 受与格词尾的影响而脱落。

Hann kvað:

Ríustum rún á horni.  
Rjóðum spjöll í dreyra.  
Þau velk orð til eyrna  
Óðs dýrs viðar róta.  
Drekum veig, sem viljum,  
Vel glýjaðra þýja.  
Vitum, hvé oss of eiri  
Ql, þats Bárðr signdi.

He said:

Let us carve a rune on the horn  
And reddens the spell with blood  
I choose words for tree-root of  
The ear of the furious beast [horn]  
Let us drink as we wish  
Gleeful drink from the maid  
Let us see how the ale agrees with us  
That ale consecrated by Bardr

### 中文意译

他吟了这样一首诗：

我把符文刻酒杯  
刺破掌心淋鲜血  
酒杯乃由兽角造  
选好咒语才显灵  
侍女献酒爽精神  
开怀畅饮随心意  
我们倒要瞧瞧看  
波尔瑟真怀好心？

### 语法

- eyrna óðs dýrs viðar róta

这句话工整的语序应是： til viðar róta eyrna óðs dýrs ‘for the tree-roots of the ears of wild animal’，指的是酒杯。viðar rót，指的是树的根部，维京人认为树根有灵魂，因此它常用于巫术魔法。eyri óðs dýrs，说的是野兽的耳部，指的是兽角。合起来，这个短语大概指的是兽角的根部，而酒杯的形状与之类似，故而可用作其代称。同时由于 viðar rót 的特殊含义，这个说法同时又有一点与巫术相关的意味。

- velk

velja ‘choose’ + ek 的合写。

- þats

þat es 的合写。

Hornit sprakk í sundr, en drykkrinn fór niðr í hálm. Þá tók at líða at Qlvi. Stóð þá Egill upp ok leiddi Qlvi útar til duranna ok helt á sverði sinu. En er þeir koma at durunum, þá kom Bárðr eftir þeim ok bað Qlvi drekka brautfararminni sitt.

### 中文意译

牛角杯一下裂成两半，酒全撒在了铺在地上的干草上。这时奥维尔（埃吉尔的同行伙伴）有些醉了。埃吉尔于是站起来扶着奥维尔出门，一边走一边握紧自己的利剑。但他们正要出门时，波尔瑟追了上来，让奥维尔喝一杯临别酒。

The horn burst asunder and the drink fell to the straw. Then Aulvir began to faint. Egil stood up and led Aulvir to the door and held on to his sword. But when they came to the door, Bardr came after them and asked Aulvir to drink to the farewell.

### 语法

#### 1. tók at líða at Qlvi

líða ‘pass’ 有无人称用法 líðr at e-m, 表示“晕厥”之类的意思，即 ‘faintnesss come over someone’. 这里和 teka at ‘begin to’ 连用。

#### 2. brautfararminni

由 braut ‘away’, fór ‘journey’, minni ‘memorial toast’ 合成。minni 的本义是“记忆，回忆”，在宴会、祭祀的语境下，指的是献给诸神的酒。

Egill tók við ok drakk ok kvað vísu:

Ql ber mér, því Qlvi  
Ql gervir nú fólvan.  
Atgeira lætk úrar  
Ýring of grón skýra.  
Qllungis kannt illa,  
Oddskýs, fyr þér nýsa,  
Rigna getr at regni,  
Regnbjóðr, Hárs þegna.

Egil took the cup and drank it, saying:

The ale is brought for me, for Aulvir  
Now turns pale by ale  
I let ox-spears' [horns']  
Clean rain [mead] flow through my beard [lips]  
You are totally unaware of what is before you  
Rain-bringer of the cloud of spear-point [army?]  
The rain of High's thane [poetry?]  
Now comes to rain

### 中文意译

埃吉尔拿起酒杯，一饮而尽，吟唱道：

美酒已为我备好  
奥维尔不胜酒力  
举杯满斟欢畅饮  
清酒滔滔过嘴唇  
诸君可知前头路  
兵刃相接厮杀起  
此诗所言必实现

## 语法

这首诗比较晦涩，一般认为的散文形式为：Ql ber mér, því at ql gerir nú qlvi fólvan; læt ek atgeira úrar ýring skýra of grön. Kannt qllungis illa nýsa fyrir þér, oddskýs regnbjóðr; regni Hárs þegna getr at rigna. 解说见下：

### 1. ql ber mér

注意 ql 是宾格，ber 是无人称用法。额外加与格 mér 表示动作的承受者。

### 2. þvít

því at 的合写。

### 3. atgeira úrar ýring

字面义 ‘rain of the spears of ox’. 其中 atgeira úrar ‘spears of ox’，指的是兽角，代指酒杯。整个短语合起来说的是 ‘rain of horn’，即酒。

### 4. of grön skýra

这里的 of 是介词，相当于 um. grön 本义是 “胡子”，但常比作 “嘴唇” 用。skýra 本义是 “解释；说清楚”，这里说 “让酒说清我的胡子 (是怎样的)”，指的是 “品鉴美酒”。

### 5. oddskýs regnbjóðr

一般认为第 6 行的 oddskýs ‘spear-point of cloud’ 和第 8 行的 regnbjóðr ‘rain-bringer’ 是连在一起使用的。oddský 意思相对清楚，指的是盾牌，进而可指战争。盾牌的比喻复合词常有 ský ‘cloud’，这是把云比作“具有遮挡能力的物体”。oddský，即“能阻挡枪尖的”。regnbjóðr 最好和 oddskýs 合到一起解读，oddskýs regn ‘shield-rain’ 应理解作一个整体，指的是 “战争”。整个短语 oddskýs regnbjóðr 表示 “招致战争的”，有多种解读：一是对男子的称谓，那么这句话就是埃吉尔对国王手下的称呼；二是指波尔瑟下毒的行为，那么埃吉尔就是在预言他们的所作所为要导致纷争。

### 6. regni Hárs þegna getr at rigna

rigna ‘rain’ 的无人称结构，接一个与格宾语 regni. Hárs þegna ‘The High’s man’，指的可能是 “诗人”。无疑，Hár 指的是奥丁，而由于奥丁与诗歌的密切关系，说 “奥丁的子民” 是 “诗人” 是合理的。如果是这样，regn Hárs þegna ‘skald’s rain’ 就指的是 “诗歌”。所谓的 ‘The poem begins to rain’ 可能是说埃吉尔正在吟诗的事件本身，也可能暗指他诗歌里提到的内容（与国王的纠纷）就要发生。

Egill kastar horninu, en greip sverðit ok brá. Myrkt var í forstofunni. Hann lagði sverðinu á Bárði miðjum, svá at blóðrefillinn hljóp út um baki. Fell hann dauðr niðr, en blóð hljóp ór undinni. Þá fell Qlvir, ok gaus spýja ór honum. Egill hljóp þá út ór stofunni. Þá var niðamyrkr úti. Tók Egill þegar rás af bænum.

Egil cast the horn and grasped his sword and drew (it towards Bardr). It was dark in the hall. He put the sword into the middle of Bardr, and the point of the sword came out from his back. He fell dead and blood flowed from the wound. Then Aulvir fell and vomited. Egil dashed out of the hall. It was pitch dark outside. Egil immediately took a course from the building.

## 中文意译

埃吉尔把杯子一摔，另一手抽出利剑。此时门廊里一片漆黑。埃吉尔举起剑向波尔瑟刺去，利剑正中波尔瑟，剑尖穿过他的胸膛，从后背穿了出来。波尔瑟应声倒地毙命，鲜血从伤口中汩汩向外流淌。奥维尔也栽倒在地上，把胃里的东西都吐了出来。埃吉尔跑出屋子，外面伸手不见五指，他立刻离开了那间房子。

## 语法

### 1. gaus spýja ór honum

spýja 既可作名词也可作动词，意思是 “呕吐 (物)”。这里是把它作名词用，动词是 gaus, 原形 gjósa ‘gush’.

【之后，埃里克赦免了奥维尔，但下令搜捕并杀死埃吉尔。然而埃吉尔设法逃脱了追捕，并跑到英格兰为埃塞尔斯坦国王（Athelstan）效力。埃里克宣布埃吉尔为法外之徒，只要他在挪威现身任何人都可以合法地将他诛杀。然而一次埃吉尔重返挪威时，国王命人前去报复，结果尽数被埃吉尔杀死，国王的一个儿子也因此丧命。埃吉尔之后又逃到英格兰，但一次由于遇到风浪，埃吉尔不得不弃船上岸。然而，此时埃里克的兄弟哈康（Hákon Aðalsteinsfóstri）夺权上台，埃里克和一些随从跑到英格兰避难，而埃吉尔不巧恰好落到了埃里克的属地里，埃吉尔自知这次难以逃脱，于是打算直接与埃里克会面以求得生路。埃吉尔的义兄弟和挚友阿林比约恩（Arinbjörn）是埃里克的重臣，因此埃吉尔首先去找阿林比约恩出主意。阿林比约恩答应为埃吉尔说清，并建议埃吉尔作颂歌讨好他，于是带着埃吉尔觐见国王（59 章）。】

Arinbjörn mælti: “Ek fylgi hingat þeim manni, er kominn er um langan veg at sækja yðr heim ok sættast við yðr. Er yðr þat vegr mikill, herra, er óvinir yðrir fara sjálfviljandi af qðrum löndum ok þykkjast eigi mega bera reiði yðra, þó at þér séð hvergi nær. Láttu þér nú verða hófðingliga við þenna mann. Lát hann fá af þér sætt góða fyrir þat, er hann hefir gert veg þinn svá mikinn sem nú má sjá, farit yfir mórg hóf ok torleiði heiman frá búum sínum. Bar honum enga nauðsyn til þessar farar nema góðvili við yðr.”

### 中文意译

阿林比约恩说道：“我是陪了一个人来觐见的，他不远万里前来向陛下求和。这是何等的荣耀啊，陛下！您的敌人竟自觉地从国外归来向您投诚，只因您的威名远扬四海，他虽然与您远隔重洋亦心怀敬畏。陛下应以君主之风待他，与他冰释前嫌。人人都能看到，他完全是出于对您的好意飘洋过海，克服了多少艰难险阻从家中过来朝见，这岂不是为陛下增添了光彩？”

### 语法

#### 1. sækja yðr heim

heim 作副词，表示“在家”。sækja e-n heim 表示“到某人的住处去拜访”。

#### 2. vegr

vegr 一般是“路”的意思，但也可以表示“荣耀”（可能由动词 vega ‘weigh’ 派生），前者的属格一般是 vegar，后者是 vegs.

#### 3. sjálfviljandi

由 sjálfr 和 vilja 构成的复合词，用其现在分词形式作状语。

Þá litaðist konungr um, ok sá hann fyrir ofan hofuð mónum, hvar Egill stóð, ok hvessti augun á hann ok mælti: “Hví vartu svá djarfr, Egill, at þú þorðir at fara á fund minn? Leystist þú svá heðan næstum, at þér var engi ván lífs af mér.”

Þá gekk Egill at borðinu ok tók um fót konungi. Hann kvað þá:

Kominn emk á jó Íva  
Angrbeittan veg langan  
Oldu enskrar foldar  
Atsitjanda at vitja  
Nú hefr sískelfir sjálfan  
Snarþátt Haralds áttar

Arinbjorn said: “I lead hither someone who has come a long way to visit you, and to reconcile to you. It is a great honor for you, my lord, that your enemies travel willingly from other lands, and deem that they cannot endure your wrath although you were nowhere near. Now let yourself be princely to this man. Let him get from you a good peace, as he has made your honor so great as now can be seen, coming over many seas and hardships to you from his home. No compulsion but goodwill to you drove him to this journey.”

Then the king looked around and saw above the heads of men where Egil stood. He glared at him and said: “Why were you so bold, Egil, that you dared to go to my court? You escaped from here last time, and you had no hope of life from me.”

Then Egil went to the table and clasped the foot of the king. He then sang:

I have come on sea-horse [ship]  
Traveled long and arduous voyage  
To visit English land  
Where the king stays  
Now the ever-wielder of wound-light [sword]

Viðr ofrhuga yfrinn  
Undar bliks of fundinn

With dauntless courage  
Has found himself with  
Strong strand of Harold's family [Harold's son]

### 中文意译

国王抬头看去，只见埃吉尔站在人群中间，比周围人高出一头。他狠狠盯住埃吉尔，说道：“好啊埃吉尔！你真是胆大包天，竟敢到我这里来？上次你侥幸逃走，这次可休想让我宽恕你的性命。”

埃吉尔跪倒在国王桌前，一把抱住国王的脚，唱道：

骑上海神千里马  
不远万里来见驾  
乘风破浪到英国  
只求拜见好君王  
大王威名四海传  
哈拉尔德好子孙  
我虽好战有勇气  
但求大王抬贵手

### 语法

这首诗的后四句应作 Nú hefir sískelfir undar bliks viðr yfrinn ofrhuga of fundinn sjálfan snarþátt Haralds áttar, 解说见下。

#### 1. jó Íva

Íva 是 Ívi 的属格，但词源不明，可能是海神的名字。

#### 2. angrbeittan

由 angr ‘grief’ 和 beita ‘feed’ 的过去分词合成。beita 是 bíta ‘bite’ 的使动态，但在航海术语中有“迎风航行”的意思（‘bite the wind’），因此这个词指埃吉尔的航行充满困难。

#### 3. qldu

原形 alda ‘wave’，常用于合成词。这里最好把 qldu veg 连到一起，指“水路”。

#### 4. vitja atsitjanda enskrar foldar

vitja ‘visit’ 接属格。atsitjanda, sitja at 的现在分词属格形式。

#### 5. sískelfir undar bliks

und blik ‘wound-light’，所谓“伤口上的闪光”，指的是“武器”。sískelfir 有 sí ‘ever’ 和 skelfir ‘shaker’ 构成。合起来表示“挥剑的人”，指的是“战士”，这里就是说埃吉尔自己。

#### 6. snarþátt Haralds áttar

‘strong strand of Harald’s family’，指的是国王埃里克，因为埃里克是其父哈拉尔德最骄傲的儿子。

Eiríkr konungr sagði: “Ekki þarf ek at telja upp sakar á hendr þér, en þó eru þær svá margar ok stórar, at ein hver má vel endast til, at þú komir aldri heðan lífs. Áttu engis annars af ván en þú munt hér deyja skulu. Máttir þú þat vita áðr, at þú myndir enga sætt af mér fá.”

Gunnhildr mælti: “Hví skal eigi þegar drepa Egil, eða mantu eigi nú, konungr, hvat Egill hefir gert, drepit vini þína ok frændr ok þar á ofan son þinn, en nítt sjálfan þik, eða hvar viti menn slíku bellt við konungmann?”

King Eirik said: “I don’t need to count the charges against you, but there are so many and great, and each one may well warrant that you would never come out of here alive. You have nothing else to expect but to die here. You might have known before, that you would never be reconciled to me.”

Gunnhild said: “Why not kill Egil at once, or don’t you remember now, O king, what Egil has done, killed your friends and kinsmen and your son in addition, even denied yourself. Where do people know such a thing against a king?”

Arinbjörn segir: “Ef Egill hefir mælt illa til konungs, þá má hann þat bæta í lofsorðum þeim, er allan aldr megi uppi vera.”

Gunnhildr mælti: “Vér viljum ekki lof hans heyra. Láttu, konungr, leiða Egil út ok hoggva hann. Vil ek eigi heyra orð hans ok eigi sjá hann.”

Þá mælti Arinbjörn: “Eigi mun konungr láta at eggjast um þoll níðingsverk þín. Eigi mun hann láta Egil drepa í nótt, því at náttvíg eru morðvíg.<sup>5</sup>”

Konungr segir: ”Svá skal vera, Arinbjörn, sem þú biðr, at Egill skal lifa í nótt. Hafðu hann heim með þér ok fær mér hann á morgin.”

### 中文意译

国王埃里克说：“我不消逐一列举你的罪状，因为你犯下的罪行已经罄竹难书，任何一项都能置你于死地。指望逃生是痴心妄想，你来这儿只有一死。你应该早就知道，我与你不可能和解。”

贡希尔德说：“何不立刻将埃吉尔处死？陛下，难道您忘了埃吉尔对您的作为？他先是杀了你的亲朋好友，还杀了您的儿子，甚至还公然抵抗您。有哪个地方的人听说过竟有人能对国王如此不敬？”

阿林比约恩说道：“如果埃吉尔确实说过诋毁君主的话，那么不妨让他作一首颂歌来抵偿，因为诗歌能流传千古。”

贡希尔德回答说：“我们才不愿意听他的奉承。陛下，立刻把埃吉尔推出去斩首。我不想听到他的颂歌，看到他就生厌。”

于是阿林比约恩说：“陛下才不会被你的谗言左右。另外他也不会在晚上斩杀埃吉尔，因为这是谋杀。”

国王说：“你说的是，阿林比约恩，就按你说的做。埃吉尔能活过今晚，你把他关在家里，明天早上带他来见我。”

### 语法

#### 1. telja upp sakar á hendr þér

hönd 有一些固定搭配，如 á hönd/hendr e-m 表示 ‘against someone’（这里的 hönd/hendr 是单数/复数宾格而非与格）。和 sok 这类表示“诉讼，指控”的词搭配最为典型。

#### 2. ein hver má vel endast til ...

本句中的 ein hver 指的是埃吉尔的罪行中的任何一桩。endast, enda ‘end’ 的反身式，表示“持续”，相当于 ‘persist, last’。这里的字面意思是：直到埃吉尔死的时候，他的罪行也不会消失。

#### 3. þar á ofan

固定短语，á ofan 表示“更；另外”，语义和英语 ‘on top of that’ 类似。

Arinbjörn þakkaði konungi orð sín. “Væntum vér, herra, at heðan af muni skipast mál Egils á betri leið. En þó at Egill hafi stórt til saka gert við yðr, þá lítið þér á þat, at hann hefir mikils misst fyrir yðrum frændum. Haraldr ko-

Arinbjorn said: “If Egil has spoken evil of the king, then he can now amend it in words of praise that shall live for all time.”

Gunnhild said: “We do not like to hear his praise. O king, put Egil out and behead him. I won’t hear his words nor see him.”

Then said Arinbjorn: “The king will not yield himself to all your vile work. He will not kill Egil at night, since putting someone to death at night is murder.”

The king said: “So shall it be, Arinbjorn, as you asked. Egil shall live this night. Detain him home with you and bring him to me in the morning.”

Arinbjorn thanked the king for his words. “We hope, my lord, that from now on Egil’s suit would be settled on a better path. But even if Egil has done much wrong against you, then look at this, that he has lost much because of your

<sup>5</sup> 维京人区分 morð ‘murder’ 和 víg ‘manslaughter’. 一个人杀死别人后（可能是出于防卫、复仇等），如果立刻向被杀者的邻居供认自己的行为，那么这就称为“杀人”（víg）。反之，如果一个人试图隐瞒自己的杀人行为，例如在夜晚暗杀人，那这个行为就是“谋杀”（morð）。根据杀人者和被杀者的关系，杀人有时是正当的，或是可以依靠支付“血钱”（wergild，向死者家属支付的赔偿金）抵罪，但谋杀的性质则恶劣得多，谋杀犯通常会被放逐。náttvíg ‘night-manslaughter’ 就被认为是一种谋杀，因此国王不得不暂时放过埃吉尔。

nungr, faðir þinn, tók af lífi ágætan mann, Þórólfs, fóður-bróður hans, af rógi vándra manna, en af engum sôkum. En þér, konungr, brutuð lög á Agli fyrir sakar Berg-Qnundar<sup>6</sup>. En þar á ofan vilduð þér hafa Egil at dauðamanni ok drápuð menn af honum, en ræntuð hann fé qllu, ok þar á ofan gerðuð þér hann útlaga ok rákuð hann af landi, en Egill er engi ertingamaðr. En hvert mál, er maðr skal dæma, verðr at líta á tilgerðir. Ek mun nú,” segir Arinbjörn, “hafa Egil með mér í nóttr heim í garð minn.”

kinsmen. King Harald, your father, took the life of a good man, Thorolf, his father's brother, by the slander of wicked men, and for no fault. And you, O king, broke the law on Egil for Rock-Onund's case. And besides you wanted to have Egil killed as well as his men, you also robbed him of all his wealth, and on top of that you made him an outlaw and drove him from the land, but Egil is a man who stands no nonsense. And every case that a man has to judge must be examined with caution. I will now,” says Arinbjorn, “have Egil with me tonight in my yard.”

### 中文意译

阿林比约恩向国王道谢。“陛下，我们希望就此埃吉尔的案子能有所转机。埃吉尔确实冒犯了您，不过请您想想，埃吉尔也因您的家族受了许多损失。您的父亲哈拉尔德国王曾诛杀了埃吉尔的伯父索罗尔夫。索罗尔夫是个好人并无过错，是有小人进谗言才让哈拉尔德杀死了他。陛下您在大石头安诺恩德的案子上也违背了律法迫害埃吉尔。此外，您还派人追杀埃吉尔并杀了他的不少手下。您夺了他的家产又宣布他是法外之徒并把他驱逐海外，可埃吉尔不能忍受这样的耻辱。所有官司在决断时都当慎重起见，”阿林比约恩说：“恕我今晚先把埃吉尔带回家去。”

### 语法

#### 1. heðan af

时间性副词，表示“从今往后”。同义的表达还有 heðan frá 或 heðan í frá.

#### 2. muni skipast mál Egils

skipast, skipa ‘arrage’ 的反身态，表示“发生改变（常有向好的含义）”，即 ‘be improved for the better’.

#### 3. hafi stórt til saka gert við yðr

gera til saka við e-n, 固定短语，指“给某人造成麻烦”，类似于英语 ‘make trouble with’.

#### 4. ertingamaðr

指“甘愿被羞辱，耻笑的”。erting, 来自动词 erta ‘tease, taunt’.

#### 5. verðr at líta á tilgerðir

verða at+ 动词不定式强调必要性。tilgerð, 指人的作为之类。

Var nú svá. Ok er þeir kómu í garðinn, þá ganga þeir tveir í loft nökkurt lítit ok ræða um þetta mál. Segir Arinbjörn svá: “Allreiðr var konungr nú, en heldr þótti mér mykjast skaplyndi hans nökkut, áðr létti, ok mun nú hamingja skipta, hvat upp kemr. Veit ek, at Gunnhildr mun allan hug á leggja at spilla þínu máli. Nú vil ek þat ráð gefa, at þú vakir í nóttr ok yrkir lofkvæði um Eirík konung. Þætti mér þá vel, ef þat yrði drápa tvítug ok mættir þú kveða á morgin, er vit komum fyrir konung. Svá gerði Bragi, frændi minn, þá er hann varð fyrir reiði Bjarnar Svíakonungs, at hann orti drápu tvítuga um hann eina nóttr ok þá þar fyrir hófuð sitt. Nú mætti vera, at vér bærim gæfu til við konung, svá at þér kæmi þat í

Then it went that they came back into the yard, and went into a small loft and talk about this matter. Arinbjorn says so: “The king was very angry now, but I thought his mood softened somewhat before he is relieved, and now luck will decide what would happen. I know that Gunnhild will put all her mind into spoiling your case. Now I want to give you this advice, that you stay awake tonight and compose a praise poem about King Eirik. It would seem good to me then if it were a twenty-stanza poem and you could recite it in the morning when we come before the king. So did Bragi, my kinsman, when he was in the wrath of Bjorn the Swedish king, that he composed a twenty-stanza poem about him one night

<sup>6</sup> Berg-Qnundr 是人名，通译大石头安诺恩德。埃吉尔与他有土地的纠纷，本来埃吉尔在官司中占理，但由于埃吉尔和埃里克结仇，埃里克反而在庭上偏袒大石头安诺恩德。

frið við konung.”

and then got his head for it. Now it might be that we would have luck with the king so that it will bring you to peace with him.”

### 中文意译

阿林比约恩一行回到了住所，走进了楼上的一间小房间讨论起刚才的事。阿林比约恩说：“陛下方才甚是动怒，但我看他的怒气到头来也会缓和些，接下来会发生什么只好听天由命。我知道贡希尔德会绞尽脑汁搅黄你的官司，现在你且听我的建议：今晚你要不眠不休，为埃里克作一首颂诗。我看这诗最好要有二十个诗节，你明天在国王面前当场吟诵。我的祖先布拉吉曾触怒了瑞典国王比约恩，他一晚就做出了二十个诗节的赞诗，保住了自己的脑袋。我们说不定也有这般好运，能让你和国王重归于好。”

### 语法

#### 1. áðr létti

létti, létta ‘relieve’ 的虚拟式。这句话是说国王的怒气最后可能平息下来。

#### 2. allan hug á leggja

leggja á, 固定短语，相当于英语 ‘impose’.

Egill segir: “Freista skal ek þessa ráðs, er þú vill, en ekki hefi ek við því búizt at yrkja lof um Eirík konung.”

Arinbjörn bað hann freista. Síðan gekk hann brott til manna sinna. Sátu þeir at drykkju til miðrar nætr. Þá gekk Arinbjörn til svefnhúss ok sveit hans, ok áðr hann afklædist, gekk hann upp í loftit til Egils ok spurði, hvat þá líði um kvæðit.

Egill segir, at ekki var ort: “Hefir hér setit svala ein við glugginn ok klakat í alla nóttr, svá at ek hefi aldregi beðit ró fyrir.”

### 中文意译

埃吉尔说：“我会试试按你的想法做。不过我自己完全不想恭维他。”

阿林比约恩请他作诗，之后他到手下那里去饮酒寻欢到半夜。然后阿林比约恩和他的手下返回睡房。临睡前阿林比约恩上楼去看埃吉尔，问他有没有把诗写出来。

埃吉尔说什么都还没有写出来：“一只燕子停在窗边叫了整夜，我没能得到片刻安宁。”

### 语法

#### 1. hefi ek við því búizt

búizt, búa ‘make ready’ 的反身态的分词。búask 即 ‘prepare oneself with ...’. buásk við e-u 在此基础上有一定引申义，表示“期待，有意愿做...”。

#### 2. hvat þá líði

líða ‘pass, go’ 的无人称用法。hvat líði e-m/e-u/um e-t 类似于英语中 ‘what is going on with someone/something’.

Síðan gekk Arinbjörn á brott ok út um dyrr þær, er ganga mátti upp á húsit, ok settist við glugg þann á loftinu, er fuglinn hafði áðr verit. Hann sá, hvar hamhleypa nökkr fór annan veg af húsinu. Arinbjörn sat þar við glugginn alla nótina, til þess er lýsti. En síðan er Arinbjörn hafði þar komit, þá orti

Egil says: “I will try to follow the advice that you purpose, but the last thing I expect is to praise King Eirik.”

Arinbjorn bade him try. Then he went out to his men. They sat drinking til midnight. Then Arinbjorn and his men went to the sleeping room and before he took off his clothes, he went to the loft to check Egil out and asked what was going on with the poem.

Egil says that nothing was done: “Here a swallow has sat by the window and twittered all night so that I have never got rest for that.”

Then Arinbjorn went on his way and came out by the door leading up to the roof, and seated himself by the window of the loft where the bird had sat before. He saw that something of a witch-shape moved away from the roof in another way. Arinbjorn sat there by the window all night till

Egill alla drápuna ok hafði fest svá, at hann mátti kveða um morgininn, þá er hann hitti Arinbjörn. Þeir heldu vørð á, nær tími myndi vera at hitta konung.

dawn. And after Arinbjorn had come there, Egil then composed all the poems and learned them so by heart that he could recite them in the morning when he met Arinbjorn. They kept watch for a fit time to meet the king.

### 中文意译

于是阿林比约恩起身，穿过通向屋顶的小门，在那鸟儿之前所在的地方坐下。他看到一只奇形怪状的恶鸟一下从房子的另一边飞走了。阿林比约恩坐在窗前直到天明。而阿林比约恩一来，埃吉尔诗兴大发，一口气作出了所有诗并牢记于心，第二天早上见到阿林比约恩时能脱口背出。两人等待一个合适的时间面见国王。

### 语法

#### 1. hamhleypa

由 ham ‘shape’ 和 hleypa ‘leap’ 构成，ham 在神话中常常和“变形术”之类的概念联系到一起，因此 hamhleypa 指的是能幻化变形的东西。由于王后贡希尔德通晓法术，有人认为这只鸟是王后派来（或变来）干扰埃吉尔的。

#### 2. nær tími myndi vera at hitta konung

表示时间的无人称句，相当于英语 ‘when it comes to the time ...’. nær tími, ‘about time’, nær 的原级和比较级同形，而其比较级有 ‘fitter’ 的意思，这里最好取这个意思。

Eiríkr konungr gekk til borða at vanða sínum, ok var þá fjlommenni mikit með honum. Ok er Arinbjörn varð þess varr, þá gekk hann með alla sveit sína alvápnaða í konungsgarð, þá er konungr sat yfir borðum. Arinbjörn krafði sér inngöngu í höllina. Honum var þat ok heimult gert. Ganga þeir Egill inn með helming sveitarinnar. Annarr helmingr stóð úti fyrir durum.

King Eirik went to the table (to dine) as usual, and there was a great crowd of people with him. And when Arinbjorn became aware of this, he went with his men fully armed to the king's palace while the king sat at the table. Arinbjorn demanded entrance into the hall and it was granted. He and Egil went in with half of his men, and the other half stood outside before the door.

### 中文意译

埃里克国王和往常一样坐到桌前用餐，周围有许多手下陪着。阿林比约恩得到了消息，便让自己的手下全副武装地前往行宫。他们一行人到达时，国王还在用餐，阿林比约恩请求参见国王，国王准他进来。于是他和埃吉尔以及一半随从走进厅堂，而另外一半人马则在大门外等候。

### 语法

#### 1. gekk til borða

ganga til borða/borðs 是固定短语，表示“就餐”。事实上 borða 还可作动词解，由 borð 派生而来，意思就是“用餐”。

#### 2. at vanða sínum

vanða 原形 vanði 或 vandi, 表示“习惯”。at vanða, 固定短语“根据习惯，照旧”。

Arinbjörn kvaddi konung, en konungr fagnaði honum vel.

Arinbjorn greeted the king and the king welcomed him well.

Arinbjörn mælti: “Nú er hér kominn Egill. Hefir hann ekki leitat til brotthlaups í nótt. Nú viljum vér vita, herra, hverr hans hluti skal verða. Vænti ek góðs af yðr. Hefi ek þat gert, sem vert var, at ek hefi engan hlut til þess sparat at gera

Arinbjorn said: “Now Egil has come here. He has not attempted to escape at night. Now we wish to know, my lord, what his case is to be. I expect good terms from you. I have done everything that was fitting and spared no effort in word

ok mæla svá, at yðvarr vegr væri þá meiri en áðr. Hefi ek ok látit allar mínar eigor ok frændr ok vini, er ek áttá í Nóregi, ok fylgt yðr, en allir lendir menn yðrir skilðust við yðr, ok er þat makligt, því at þú hefir marga hluti til mín stórvél gert.”

### 中文意译

阿林比约恩向国王致意，国王欢迎他的到来。

阿林比约恩于是说：“陛下，埃吉尔已带到这里。他昨夜未曾尝试逃跑。陛下，现在我们想知道，埃吉尔的案子究竟会如何？我希望您能网开一面。我已经说了所有该说的话，做了所有该做的事来劝您放过埃吉尔，好让您获得更大的荣耀。在别的贵族抛弃您的时候，我跟随您来到这里，舍弃了在挪威的财产和亲朋好友。这么做全是因为您曾对我有恩。”

### 语法

#### 1. hefi engan hlut til þess sparar

字面义 ‘spare nothing to ...’，指的是“不遗余力地做某事”。

Þá mælti Gunnhildr: “Hættu, Arinbjörn, ok tala ekki svá langt um þetta. Margt hefir þú vel gert við Eirík konung, ok hefir hann þat fullu launat. Er þér miklu meiri vandi á við Eirík konung en Egil. Er þér þess ekki biðjanda, at Egill fari refsingalaust heðan af fundi Eiríks konungs, slíkt sem hann hefir til saka gert.”

Þá segir Arinbjörn: “Ef þú, konungr, ok þit Gunnhildr hafið þat einráðit, at Egill skal hér enga sætt fá, þá er þat drengskapr at gefa honum frest ok fararleyfi um viku sakar, at hann forði sér, þó hefir hann at sjálfvilja sínum farit hingat á fund yðvarn ok vænti sér af því friðar. Fara þá enn skipti yður sem verða má þaðan frá.”

### 中文意译

贡希尔德说：“住口！阿林比约恩，此事不必再多啰嗦。你确实对国王有功，但国王亦论功行赏。你应该对国王更加忠心，而不是偏袒埃吉尔。埃吉尔已犯下滔天大罪，你如何好意思求国王把他毫发无伤地放走？”

阿林比约恩反驳说：“陛下，如果您和皇后贡希尔德一心不肯豁免埃吉尔，那么体面的做法是给埃吉尔喘息之机，留给他一个星期离开此地，因为他是自愿来拜见您请求和解的。之后，就按您的想法了结你们间的矛盾吧。”

### 语法

#### 1. þér miklu meiri vandi á við Eirík konung

vandi 有“困难”和“义务，责任”两方面的意思，e-m er vandi á við e-n 是固定短语，表示“某人（短语中的与格）对另一人（短语中的宾格）负有责任”。

#### 2. einráðit

ein-ráða 的过去分词，相当于英语 ‘single-minded, resolved’.

#### 3. drengskapr

and deed to magnify your honor than before. I have also lost all my possessions, kinsmen, and friends that I had in Norway, and followed you when all other landed-men (barons) deserted you; and that is proper since you have done so good to me.”

Then Gunnhild said: “Cease, Arinbjorn, and do not talk about this at length. You have done much good to King Eirik, and he has rewarded it well. You owe far more duty to King Eirik than Egil. It is not for you to ask that Egil should go unpunished from here from the court of King Eirik, as he has done much wrong.”

Then says Arinbjorn: “If you, O king, and you Gunnhild, has made up your mind that Egil shall get no reconciliation here, then it is honorable to give him respite and leave for a week, that he saves himself, as he has come here of his own accord to meet you and expect peace from you. Then let your disputes end as they may.”

dreng 是维京人社会中特有的概念，指那些勇敢、守信、有价值的人。drengskapr 即那些符合“dreng”行为，指“高尚的品行”之类。

#### 4. um viku sakar

sók 除了可以构成表示原因的短语 fyrir sakar e-s, 也可以和 um/of 等构成表示时间的短语。um viku sakar, ‘for one week’. 也有用复数宾格 sakir 的形式，如 um nökcorra nátta sakir ‘for some nights’.

#### 5. skipti

本指的是两个人之间的交易，也延伸出“交情；纠纷”等含义。这里指的就是埃吉尔和埃里克结的仇。

Gunnhildr mælti: “Sjá kann ek á þessu, Arinbjörn, at þú ert hollari Agli en Eiríki konungi. Ef Egill skal ríða heðan viku í brott í friði, þá mun hann kominn til Aðalsteins konungs á þessi stundu. En Eiríkr konungr þarf nú ekki at dyljast í því, at honum verða nú allir konungar ofreflismenn, en fyrir skömmu myndi þat þykkja ekki líkligt, at Eiríkr konungr myndi eigi hafa til þess vilja ok aðferð at hefna harma sinna á hverjum manni slíkum sem Egill er.”

Arinbjörn segir: “Engi maðr mun Eirík kalla at meira mann, þó at hann drepi einn bónðason útlendan, þann er genget hefir á vald hans. En ef hann vill miklast af þessu, þá skal ek þat veita honum, at þessi tíðendi skulu heldr þykkja frásagnarverð, því at vit Egill munum nú veitast at, svá at jafnsnemma skal okkr mæta báðum. Muntu, konungr, þá dýrt kaupa líf Egils, um þat er vér erum allir at velli lagðir, ek ok sveitunger mínir. Myndi mik annars vara af yðr en þú myndir mik vilja leggja heldr at jorðu en láta mik þiggja líf eins manns, er ek bið.”

#### 中文意译

贡希尔德说道：“这下我可看出来了，阿林比约恩，你对埃吉尔的忠诚胜过对你的国王。假如真的让埃吉尔平安无事地逃离一周，那他很有可能跑到埃塞尔斯坦国王那里去。陛下不会自欺欺人，现在各国的王公都比他要强得多了。要放到不久前，陛下可是快意恩仇，要报复埃吉尔这样冒犯了他的人哪还用得着左思右想？”

阿林比约恩说道：“就算陛下杀了埃吉尔，也没人会说他是个伟大的人，因为埃吉尔他杀死了个外国农夫的儿子，而这个人还自愿跑过来向他投诚。假如陛下一意孤行，还想要借此受人称赞，我倒不妨让帮他宣传宣传，好让他的昏庸被人口口相传。埃吉尔和我已决定互相帮助，想要对付一个就必然遇到我们两个。陛下，如果你真想要埃吉尔的性命，那就要付出惨重的代价，因为那时我和我的手下都必横尸地上。我想，您不会真的打算要我的命，而不是放过一个我请求您宽宥的人吧？”

#### 语法

##### 1. hafa til þess vilja ok aðferð

vilja 在这里不是动词，而是弱名词 vili 的宾格，‘have the will and aggression to ...’。

##### 2. hefna harma sinna á hverjum manni

hefna e-s á e-m, 指“为了某事报复某人”。harmr 的意思是“忧愁”，但常暗示这种忧愁是受伤害所致。这里指的是埃吉尔触犯埃里克的行为使他心烦。

Gunnhild said: “I can see this, Arinbjorn, that you are faithful to Egil than to King Eirik. If Egil should ride away from here for a week in peace, then he will come to King Athelstan at that time. King Eirik need not conceal himself in this, that now all the kings have become more powerful than him. Yet a short time ago that would not have been likely, that King Eirik should not have the will and aggression to avenge his wrongs upon each man such as Egil.”

Arinbjorn says: “No man would call Eirik a greater man although he has killed a foreign farmer’s son, who has come under his power. But if he wants to achieve greatness from this, then I should assist him in this, that these tidings will seem more worthy of telling, since Egil and I will help each other and we two will be equally dealt. You might, O king, pay costly for Egil’s life, when we, my followers and I, are all laid dead on the ground. I expect something different from you than that you would be rather willing to kill me than let me receive the life of one man which I request.”

## 3. jafnsnemma skal okkr mæta báðum

mæta ‘meet’ 接与格。另外此句为无人称句，略去了主语。这里是说任何人（要找我们之中一人的麻烦的话）会遇到我们两个。

## 4. at velli, jørðu

字面义‘at ground’，固定短语，一般指坏事，表示建筑被毁，人被杀等等。

Pá segir konungr: “Allmikit kapp leggr þú á þetta Arinbjörn, at veita Agli lið. Trauð mun ek til vera at gera þér skaða, ef því er at skipta, ef þú vill heldr leggja fram líf þitt en hann sé dreppinn. En ærnar eru sakar til við Egil, hvat sem ek læt gera við hann.”

Ok er konungr hafði þetta mælt, þá gekk Egill fyrir hann ok hóf upp kvæðit ok kvað hátt ok fekk þegar hljóð:

## 中文意译

国王说：“你为了帮助埃吉尔真是煞费苦心。即便你愿意舍弃自己的生命拯救埃吉尔，到了那时候我也不愿伤害你。不过埃吉尔是罪有应得，我对他的所做的一切都合情合理。”

国王说完这番话，埃吉尔走到他面前高声朗诵起他的诗来。厅内一片寂静。

Then the king says: “You have great eagerness for this, Arinbjorn, to give Egil help. Reluctant might I be to do you harm, if it comes to that, if you would rather lay down your life than that he be killed. But there are sufficient causes against Egil for whatever I let done to him.”

And when the king had said that, Egil went before him and began to recite his poem and spoke loud and won silence:

Vestr fórk of ver  
En ek Viðris ber  
Munstrandar mar  
Svás mitt of far  
Drók eik á flot  
Við ísa brot  
Hlóðk mærðar hlut  
Míns knarrar skut  
Buðumk hilmi lqð  
Ák hróðrs of kvqð  
Berk Óðins mjøð  
Á Engla bjøð  
Lofat vísa vann  
Víst mærik þann  
Hljóðs biðjum hann  
Þvítat hróðr of fann  
Hygg, vísi, at  
Vel sómir þat  
Hvé þylja fet  
Ef þogn of get  
Flestr maðr of frá  
Hvat fylkir vá  
En Viðrir sá  
hvar valr of lá  
Óx hjorva hlom

I traveled west over sea  
And I bring the sea [poem]  
Of Odin's mind-shore [breast]  
Such is my condition  
I dragged the oak [ship] afloat  
at ice break [spring]  
I load the stern of my mind-vessel  
With a cargo of praise  
I offer myself to the king with hospitality  
I have the duty of praise  
I bear Odin's mead [poem]  
To the land of Angles  
I have worked out a praise of the prince  
Certainly I should praise him  
I ask him for hearing  
Since I have composed his praise  
Pay heed, O king  
That befits you well  
How I start to recite  
If I obtain silence  
Many men have heard  
What fights the king has fought  
And Odin saw  
Where the slain lay  
The thump of swords grew

Við hlífar þróm	Against the shield's rim
Guðr óx of gram	The battle waxed around the king
Gramr sótti fram	The king attacked onward
Par heyrðisk þá	There was heard then
Paut mækis á	The river of sword flowed [battle increased]
Malmhríðar spá	The prophecy of metal-storm [thump of battle]
Sús mest of lá	Where the greatest battle lay
Vasat villr staðar	The web of spear [battle]
Veðr darraðar	Did not go astray
Of grams glaðar	Around the rows
Geirvangs raðar	Of king's shining spear-land [shield]
Þar er í blóði	There in blood
Í brimils móði	And the wrath of seal [?]
Vøllr of þrumði	Battleground stood fast
Und véum glumði	Roared under the standard

## 中文意译

乘船向西过重洋	我以诚心待大王	敬请大王留神听
满载诗歌献大王	赞美之责不敢忘	诗歌能赞您英明
奥丁密酒长诗兴	英国之土千里远	在场诸位且肃静
好求大王发善心	我携赞歌来请愿	容我把诗从头吟
春风化雨暖冰霜	大王丰功垂千古	大王百战征沙场
橡木入水作舟航	交口称誉心诚服	攻无不克声名扬
我吟赞歌抒胸怀	赞歌已成记心中	奥丁在上能明鉴
但愿大王笑颜开	只等大王准我颂	多少战士死刀剑

刀盾相击声铿锵	刀枪林立密如织
弓弦齐鸣震天响	人声鼎沸激战时
大王领军临阵前	国王列军持盾行
人马喧腾王身边	盾光闪闪似黄金
战场声势愈激烈	鲜血赤红染战场
血流成河漫原野	大军行船怒涛上
刀剑出鞘响叮当	军旗高举迎风展
鏖战犹酣今开场	鸣锣喧天杀声酣

## 语法

埃吉尔的这组诗歌被称为“赎头诗”(Hófuðlausn ‘head ransom’), 它的格律比较特殊。一般的游吟诗善用头韵 (Alliteration) 而不押韵, 但这组诗歌不仅有头韵, 韵脚也是工整的。由于其格律复杂, 文采斐然, 气势恢宏, 这类诗被称为 dróttkvætt ‘court poetry’, 尤用于歌颂君王功德。埃吉尔所作的诗更属上品。注意这首诗中多有小品词 of, 不仅出现在动词前也出现在一些名词前, 它们都没有实际的意义。

## 第一首

## 1. Viðris ber munstrandar mar

Viðrir 是奥丁的别名。munstrond ‘mind's stand’, 指的是“胸膛”, 胸膛的比喻复合词常和“心; 思想”有

关，类似的说法还有 *hugarland* ‘mind’s land’ 等。*marr Viðris munstrandar*, ‘sea of Odin’s chest’, 指的是“诗歌”。

## 2. ísa brot

字面义 ‘broken ice’，指“春天”。

## 3. hlóðk mærðar hlut míns knarrar skut

*hlaða* ‘load’ 接双宾格宾语的用法，但一般用介词 *af* 表示装载的东西。*hlaða skut hlut/af hluti* ‘load stern with cargo’.

## 第二首

### 1. buðumk hilmi lǫð

*bjóða* 的反身态，这里单纯的表示 ‘offer myself’. *hilmi*, *lǫð* 都是与格，分别表示 ‘for the king’ 和 ‘with hospitality’，均作副词用。

### 2. ák

á 和 ek 的合写，á 原形 *eiga*.

### 3. Óðins mjøð

常见的比喻复合词，指“诗歌”。

### 4. lofat vísa vann

*vann*, *vinna* ‘make’ 的过去分词。这里接另一个过去分词 *lofat* 表示类似于英语中 ‘make something done’ 的含义，另见 Baldrs draumar 第 10 节。

## 第三首

### 1. vel sómir þat

*sóma* ‘befit’ 接与格，这里省略了 *þér*.

### 2. frá

*fregna* ‘ask, hear’ 的过去式。

### 3. vá

*vega* ‘kill’ 的过去式。

## 第四首

### 1. óx

*vaxa* ‘wax, grow’ 的过去式。

### 2. guðr óx of gram

*guðr*, 现作 *gunnr*, 诗歌用词，指“战争”。这里的 *of* 不是小名词，与 *um* ‘around’ 同义。*gramr*, 一般指“神的愤怒”，诗歌中常代指“君王”。

### 3. þaut mækis á

*mækis* á ‘river of sword’，指“鲜血；战争”。*þaut*, *þjóta* ‘emit a whistling sound’ 的过去式，这里的字面义是“水流声”，指战斗愈演愈烈。

### 4. malmhríðar spá

‘prophecy of metal-storm’，指的是战斗中兵器交锋的声音。

## 第五首

### 1. vasat villr staðar

*vasat*, 由否定后缀-*at* 和系动词 *vas* 合成。*villr* ‘bewildered, astray’，可以接一个属格名词表示被弄错或偏离的东西。*villr staðar*, ‘astray from the (original) place’.

### 2. vefr darraðar

‘web of spear’，指“战争”。

### 3. of grams glaðar geirvangs raðar

geirvangi 'spear-land', 指的是“盾牌”。raðar, 今作 raðir, røð 'row' 的复数宾格。geirvangs raðar, 指的是“盾墙”。

#### 4. brimils móði

这个词意义不明, brimill 是一种大海豹。因此下一句 vøllr of þrumði 'battleground remained?' 也意思不明朗。有人认为 móðr brimils 指的是“船只”, 这两句可能描写的是海战行船的场景。

#### 5. und véum glumði

und 不是伤口, 而通 undir. véum, vé 的与格, 诗歌中指军旗之类的东西。glumði, glymja 'rattle' 的过去式。

【第六至第二十首大致也是称赞国王战斗英勇、为人慷慨的, 暂略去不表。】

Eiríkr konungr sat uppréttir, meðan Egill kvað kvæðit, ok hvessi augun á hann. Ok er lokit var drápunni, þá mælti konungr: “Bezta er kvæðit fram flutt, en nú hefi ek hugsat, Arinbjörn, um mál vårt Egils, hvar koma skal. Þú hefir flutt mál Egils með ákafa miklum, er þú býðr at etja vandræðum við mik. Nú skal þat gera fyrir þínar sakar, sem þú hefir beðit, at Egill skal fara frá mínum fundi heill ok ósakaðr. En þú, Egill, hatta svá ferðum þínum, at síðan, er þú kemr frá mínum fundi af þessi stofu, þá kom þú aldregi í augsýn mér ok sonum mínum ok verð aldri fyrir mér né mínu liði. En ek gef þér nú hoþuð þitt at sinni. Fyrir þá sök, er þú gekkt á mitt vald, þá vil ek eigi gera níðingsverk á þér, en vita skaltu þat til sanns, at þetta er engi sætt við mik né sonu mína ok enga frændr vára, þá sem réttar vilja reka.”

#### 中文意译

埃吉尔吟诗的时候, 埃里克国王正襟危坐, 注目凝视着埃吉尔。待到诗歌吟诵完毕, 国王说: “这诗作得甚好。我已经拿定了主意, 阿林比约恩, 该如何了结埃吉尔与我的恩怨。你为了埃吉尔求情可谓煞费苦心, 甚至不惜与我动刀兵。看在你的面子上, 我就如你说的做, 放埃吉尔一条生路, 离开我的领地。至于你, 埃吉尔, 你一离开我的行宫就再也不要出现在我或者我的儿子的眼前, 也不要靠近我和我的手下。我这次暂且饶过你的性命, 看在你自愿来受我处置的份上, 我不会做什么不体面的事情。但你须明白, 我与你的恩怨远谈不上和解, 我的儿子或亲属若仍想寻你报复, 那时便不会放过你。”

#### 语法

##### 1. flutt

flytja 'perform; plead' 的过去分词。

##### 2. né enga frændr vára

engi 在否定词或比较级后表示 'any'.

##### 3. þá sem réttar vilja reka

reka 接属格时表示“复仇”, 既可以接要报复的人, 也可以接报复的事。reka réttar 也是常见的说法, rétr 'right, claim, indemnity' 有为某事报偿的意思。

King Eirik sat upright while Egil was reciting the poems and looked keenly at him. And when the song of praise was ended, then spoke the king: “The poem has been recited excellently; and now I have made up my mind, Arinbjorn, about how our case shall go. You have pleaded Egil’s case with great enthusiasm, since you offer to make a conflict with me. Now shall I do for your sake, as you have asked, to let Egil go from my land safe and unhurt. But you, Egil, conduct your travels in such a way that, after leaving my court and this hall, never come in sight of me and my sons and never appear before me nor my followers. But I give you your head this time. For this reason that you came into my power (on your own accord), I will not do anything dastardly on you indeed; but you should note that, this is no reconciliation between you and me, or my sons or any of our kin who wish to take vengeance.”

## 第四章 第一文法论（Fyrsta Málfræðiritgerðin）

《第一文法论》是冰岛的第一篇语法著作，大约写于 12 世纪中期，作者不详。这篇文章之所以被称为“第一”文法论，是因为在同一本手稿中还有其他三篇语法著作，这四篇论文分别称为“第一”至“第四”文法论。

《第一文法论》分成三个部分：引言<sup>1</sup>、元音论、辅音论。作者在其中详细论述了当时冰岛语的音系情况，并用音素对立的观点科学地论证了自己的观点。根据冰岛语的语音特点，作者还探讨了正字法的问题，并为冰岛语拟制了一份字母表。

### 4.1 引言

Í flestum löndum setja menn á bökr annat tveggja þann fróðleik, er þar innanlands hefir gørzk, eða þann annan, er minnisamligstr þykkir, þó at annars staðar hafi h]eldr gørzk, eða lög sín setja menn á bökr, hver þjóð á sína tungu. En af því at tungurnar eru [ó]líkar hver annarri, þær þegar er ór einni ok inni sömu tungu hafa gengizk eða greinzk, þá þarf ólíka stafi í at hafa, en eigi ina sömu alla í öllum, sem eigi ríta gríkkir látinustofum girzkuna ok eigi látinumenn girzkum stofum látnu, né enn heldr ebreskir menn ebreskuna hvárki girzkum stofum né látnu, heldr rítr sínum stofum hver þjóð sína tungu.

In most places, men write in books either significant events which have occurred within their country, or wonders that seem most memorable even though they happened rather aboard. Men also write in books their laws, each group of people with their own language. However, since languages are different from each other as soon as they have branched off or been separated from the common ancestor, it is required to have different letters in these languages, just as the Greeks do not write Greek in Latin letters, and the Latin men do not use Greek letters to write Latin, and the Hebrews write Hebrew in neither Greek letters nor Latin, rather, different people write their language with their own letters.

#### 中文意译

在世界上的大多数地方，人们都在书中记下他们国家中发生的大事，抑或是那些异域的奇闻轶事，有时人们也记载律法。不同的人群用不用的语言书写他们的故事。然而，当不同的语言从它们共同的祖先中分离开来时，它们就变得形态各异，并且需要采用不同的书写系统了。希腊人不会用拉丁字母写希腊文，罗马人自然也不用希腊字母写拉丁语，同样地，希伯来人既不用拉丁字母也不用希腊字母写希伯来语。不同的人用不同的文字书写语言。

#### 语法

1. annat tveggja ... eða ...  
annarr tveggja 或 annarr hvárr 是固定短语，字面意思是 ‘another of two’，相当于 ‘either’，因此也可以和 eða 连用。
2. hefir gørzk  
gera 的反身式 gerask 的过去分词，相对罕用。gerask 多表示类似于 “发生；成为”的含义，相当于 ‘become, arouse’ 等。
3. hver þjóð á sína tungu  
本句省略了一个表示书写的动词，如 ríta.
4. þegar er  
相当于副词， ‘as soon as’.
5. þær ór einni ok inni sömu tungu hafa gengizk eða greinzk

<sup>1</sup> 三个标题均系笔者添加。

**þær** 是阴性代词，指的是 **tungur**（阴性）。**einni ok inni sōmu tungu** ‘one and the same tongue’，指的就是一种共通语。**gengizk, ganga** 的反身式过去分词，**gangask** ‘be altered, changed’. **greinzk, greina** ‘discern, divide into branches’ 的反身式过去分词，**greinask** ‘branch out, differ, be separated’.

### 6. þá þarf ólíka stafi í at hafa

**þurfa** ‘need’ 接无人称结构，与宾格搭配。í at hafa，其中的 í 是 í tungum 的省略。

Hveriga tungu er maðr skal ríta annarar tungu stofum, þá verðr sumra stafa vant, af því [...] at eigi finnsk þat hljóð í tungunni, sem stafirnir hafa, þeir er af ganga. En þó ríta enskir menn enskuna látínustofum, öllum þeim er réttræðir verða í enskunni, en þar er þeir vinnask eigi til, þá hafa þeir við aðra stafi, svá marga ok þesskonar sem þarf, en hina taka þeir ór, er eigi eru réttræðir í máli þeira.

Whatever language a man shall write with letters from another language, there will be some letters missing because it cannot be found in that language the sounds that these missing letters have, which are superfluous. However, Englishmen do write English in Latin letters, they use all the Latin letters that are pronounced correctly in English, but when these no longer suffice, they add other letters, as many and of such a kind as is needed. Also, they take away from the alphabet those that cannot be read correctly in their language.

### 中文意译

如果有人要用别的语言的文字来书写他自己的语言，那么他就会发现字母不够用了，因为他的语言中的有些发音是那个字母表里所缺失的。然而，英国人确实用拉丁字母写英文，他们先是保留了全部在英文和拉丁文中发音一致的字母，当字母不够用的时候，他们则按需增添字母。当然，他们也剔去了那些发音和英语不一致的字母。

### 语法

#### 1. af ganga

ganga af 有“多余”之意。

#### 2. þeir vinnask eigi til

vinnask ‘last, suffice’，一般接 til.

#### 3. hafa við aðra stafi

hafa við e-u 有“与...相适合”的含义，这里指的就是增添字母。

Nú eptir þeira dœnum, alls vér erum einnar tungu, þó at górzk hafi mjók ɔnnur tveggja eða nökkut báðar, til þess at högra verði at ríta ok lesa, sem nú tíðisk ok á þessu landi, bæði lög ok áttvísí eða þýðingar helgar, eða svá þau in spakligu frœði, er Ari þórgilsson hefir á boekr sett af skynsamligu viti, þá hefi ek ok ritit oss íslendingum stafróf, bæði látínustofum öllum þeim er mér þótti gegna til várs máls vel, svá at réttræðir mætti verða, ok þeim qðrum, er mér þótti í þurfa at vera, en ór váru teknir þeir, er eigi gegna atkvæðum várrar tungu. Ór eru teknir samhljóðendr nökkurir ór látínustafrófi, en nökkurir í górvir. Raddirstafir e[ru] engir ór teknir, en í górvir mjók margir, því at vár tunga hefir flesta alla hljóðs eða raddir.

Now, after these examples, as we speak one (common) language, even though one of our languages or two have changed quite a bit, in order to make it easy to read or write, as is now the fashion on this island, both laws and genealogical knowledge or sacred writings, or the wise lore that Ari Thorgilsson has written in his books with discreet wit, I have made an alphabet for all us Icelanders with all the Latin letters which I believe to fit well with our language so that they can be pronounced correctly. I also take the ones that seem useful to me while omitting those that go against the pronunciation of our language. Some consonants of Latin letters are taken away but some are added. No vowels are omitted and quite a lot are supplemented since our language has the most phonemes and vowels.

## 中文意译

讲了这些例子之后，我们来看看冰岛的情况。在冰岛我们讲的是同一种语言，虽然某几个方言可能因为读写的方便已有了很大改变。现在，在岛上已经形成了一股风气，大家喜欢阅读法律、宗族、祭祀方面的知识，又或者是学习阿里·索吉尔松在他的书中兢兢业业讲授的知识。那么，为了使读写更加方便，我为我们冰岛人制作了一张字母表，它里面的字母取自于所有适合我们语言的拉丁字母，可以用来正确地拼写我们的语言。我同样加入了那些我认为有必要、但是拉丁字母表里没有的字母；同样地，我删去了一些与我们的语言相龃龉的。有些辅音字母被保留了下来，有些则去掉了。没有任何一个元音字母被删去，反而我增加了不少，因为我们的语言里的元音和音素是最多的。

## 语法

## 1. vér erum einnar tungu

字面含义 ‘we are of one tongue’，einnar tungu 是用于表描述的属格。

## 2. tíðisk

tíða 的反身式，tíða 又和 tíðr ‘frequent; famous’ 有关，故表示 “成为某种风气”。

## 3. þýðingar helgar

字面意思 ‘interpretations of the sacred’，指的是对《圣经》一类的释文。

Nú af því, at samhljóðendr megu ekki mál eða atkvæði góra einir við sik, eigi svá at þeir megi nafn hafa án raddirstafi, en at raddirstafnum einum [ok] sér hverjum má kveða, sem hann heitir, ok at honum kveðr í hverju máli, ok þeir bera svá tígnum af samhljóðundum sem almætti af hálfmætti, þá hefi ek af því fyrri setta þá bæði í stafrófi ok í umrœðu hér nú.

Now that consonants cannot make a sound or sentence alone by themselves, not even able to name themselves without vowels. But anyone can pronounce a vowel just as it is named and as it is spoken in every word, thus vowels bear such supremacy over consonants as almighty does over half-mighty. As such, I have placed vowels in the first place both in the alphabet and the treatise here.

## 中文意译

辅音本身不能构成声响或者语句，它们甚至没有办法单独构成自己的名字，但任何人都能轻松地按照元音的名字来拼读它，或者任何带有元音的单词。因此，元音比辅音更重要，就像纲比目重要一样。所以，我把元音放在了字母表中的前面，也在这篇论文中先讨论它。

## 语法

## 1. at raddirstafnum einum ok sér hverjum má kveða

省略了主语 maðr. einn ok sér hverr，固定短语，表示 ‘one and all, every one’. sér hverr 或 sérhverr 本身常作形容词，相当于 ‘each’. kveða at, ‘pronounce’.

## 4.2 元音论

Við þá hljóðstafi fimm, er áðr váru í látínustafrófi: a, e, i, o, u, þar hefi ek við gorva þessa stafi fjóra, er hér eru ritnir nú: q, e, ø, y. Q hefir lykkju af ae, en hringinn af oe, því at hann er af þeira hljóði tveggja saman blandinn, kveðinn minnr opnum munni en a, en meirr en o. E er ritinn með lykkju as, en með öllum vexti es, sem hann er af þeim tveim samfeldr, minnr opnum munni en a, en meirr en e. Ø, hann er

With regard to the five vowels that were already in the Latin alphabet, that is, a, e, i, o, u, I have added these four letters which are now written here, q, e, ø, y. Q has its loop from a and its circle from o, since it comes from the blending sound of these two sounds, pronounced with mouth opening less than a, but more than o. E is written with the loop of a, but with the full shape of e, as it is a combination of these two,

af hljóði es ok os feldr saman, minnr opnum munni kveðinn en [e] ok meirr en o, enda ritinn af því með kvisti e[s] ok með osins hring. Y er af røddu is ok us gorr at einni røddu, kveðinn minnr opnum munni en i ok meirr en u, ok skal af því ina fyrri kvísl af hofuðstafs-ue, sem áðr er þeim í stafrófi skipat.

with the mouse less open than *a*, but more than *e*. Ø is the sound of *e* and *o* combined together, pronounced with mouth less than *e* and more than *o*, hence it is written with the cross of *e* and the circle of *o*. Y is the sound of *i* and *u* made to a single one, pronounced with the mouth less open than *i* and more than *u*, and it shall have the first branch of capital *u*, as they were placed formerly in the alphabet.

### 中文意译

对于拉丁字母表里已有的五个元音，也即 *a, e, i, o, u*，我加上了四个变体，如下所示：*q, e, ø, y*。Q 的弯钩来自于 *a*，但其环形则来自于 *o*，因为它的发音正好介于这两个字母中间，开度比 *a* 大但比 *o* 小。*E* 的弯钩来自于 *a*，但它保留了 *e* 的整个轮廓，因为它的发音也是这两个字母的结合，开度比 *a* 小但比 *e* 大。*Ø* 的发音介于 *e* 和 *o* 之间，因此保留了 *e* 的斜杠和 *o* 的轮廓。*Y* 的发音是 *i* 和 *u* 结合到一起的音色，开度小于 *i* 而大于 *u*，因此其上半部分保留了 *u* 的分叉。这些字母按照已有的字母表的顺序排列。

### 语法

#### 1. ae, as; oe, os ...

这里的-e; -s 是词尾，分别代表与格和属格。在当时的正字法中，与格标记-i 常写作-e.

#### 2. sem áðr er þeim í stafrófi skipat

skipa ‘arrage’ 接与格，因此其被动态是无人称的。

Nú má verða at því, at nökkurr svari svá: “Ek má fullvel lesa danska tungu, þó at látnustofum réttum sé ritit. Má ek þó at líkendum ráða, hvé kveða skal, þó at eigi sé allir stafir réttræðir í því, er ek les. Rœki ek eigi, hvárt þú rítr [q] bítt eða a, [e] eða e, y ok u.” En ek svara svá: “Eigi er þat rúnanna kostr, þó at þú lesir vel eða ráðir vel at líkendum; þar sem rúnar vísa óskyrt. Heldr er þat þínn kostr; enda er þá eigi ørvænt, at þeygi lesa ek vel eða mínn maki, ef sá finnsk, eða ráða ek vel at líkendum til hvers ins rétta fóera skal, ef fleiri vega má fóera til rétts en einn veg, þat sem á einn veg er þó ritit, ok eigi skýrt á kveðit, ok skal geta til, sem þú lézk þat vel kunna.” En þó at allir mætti nökkut rétt ór góra, þá er þó vísván, at þeygi vili allir til eins fóera, ef máli skiptir allra helzti í lögum. Enda tel ek þik þá eigi hafa vel svarat, er þú lætr eigi þurfa í váru máli þessa níu raddarstafi: a, q, e, e, i, o, ø, u, y, allra helzti ef ek klýf ór þessum níu sex greinir ins fjórða tegar, þær er sítt mál góri hverr, ef glöggt eru skildar.

Now it may happen that someone would reply this wise: “I can read Danish very well, though it is written in Latin letters. I would probably, though, read what it says, even if not all the letters in what I read are spelled correctly. I don’t care whether you write *q* or *a*, *e* or *ø*, *y* or *u*.” And to this I say: “That is not a good quality of a writing system even though you may read well or comprehend, that is where the system vaguely indicates. That is rather your idea, and it is well possible that I or my mate, if there exists, can not read well or decide which correct interpretation is to be given, if there is more than one way to properly interpret it. But since it is written in one way and not expressed clearly, then it has to be guessed, as you claimed that you know well.” But even though everyone can make something correct out of it, it may well be expected that everyone will not come to the same consensus if the word changes, especially in law terms. Therefore I can say that you have not answered well when you state that we do not need these nine letters *a, q, e, e, i, o, ø, u, y*, and *y* in our language, especially when I can distinguish from these nine letters thirty-six differences, where each produces its own sound, if clearly distinguished.

## 中文意译

现在有人可能要说：“我的丹麦语讲得很熟练，即便它用拉丁字母写出来也照样能看懂。就算有几个字母写得不正确，应该也不会影响我的理解，我才不管你写的是 q 还是 a, e 还是 œ, y 还是 u 呢。”对此我的评价是：“就算你看得懂写的是什么，这些稀里糊涂的地方也不是一个良好的书写系统应有的品质，倒不如说是你自己的坏习惯。对于我和与我志同道合的人来说，当一个词有好多种正确的解释时，我们可能就没法搞清楚它到底指的是什么。由于文字上没有区分，虽然你号称能看得懂，我们却只能靠猜了。”退一步来说，就算大家都能或多或少看懂一些，可当一个词的形态发生变化时，还怎么能保证大家还能通过这套书写系统达到同样的认识呢？法律术语中就有很多这样的情况。因此我可以指出你并没有给出充足的理由来证明我们的语言不需要这九个字母 a, q, e, œ, i, o, ø, u, y，相反，我还能用这九个字母举出三十六处区别，每种情况中发音都是不一样的，因此如果不区分子形就会产生混淆。

## 语法

## 1. ráðir vel at líkindum

at líkindum, 字面义 ‘at probability’，这个短语整体做副词用，表示“有可能”。

## 2. enda er þá eigi ørvænt, at þeygi ...

ørvænt, 形容词 ørvænn ‘beyond expectation’ 的中性主格形式。þeygi, þó-eigi 的缩略，‘yet not’. 本句是多重否定结构，‘then it is not beyond expectation that ... not ...’，即‘then it is possible that ... not ...’。

## 3. ef sá finnsk

finna 的反身式有微弱的被动含义，‘if that can be found’. sá 指的是 mínn maki ‘my mate’。

## 4. ráða ek vel at líkindum til hvers ins rétta fóera skal

ráða 有“阅读，理解”的含义。til hvers ins rétta fóera skal, 字面义 ‘which correct (interpretation) is to be given’. 本句是复杂的疑问句。hvers ins rétta, 比较罕见的对特指形式 (inn rétti) 提问的情况。til ... fóera skal, fóera til 表示类似于 ‘lead to’ 的含义。另外，这句话省略了主语，可以翻译成英语中的被动句。其完整的陈述句形式类似于 þat orð skal fóera til ins rétta þýðing ‘the word will lead to the right interpretation’，对 fóera 的宾语提问时，整个介词短语要提到句首。

## 5. ef fleiri vega má fóera til rétts en einn veg

字面义 ‘if more way than one will lead to correct (interpretation)’. 注意 fleiri vega 中的 vega 是复数属格。这个短语本身应作主格，但古诺尔斯语中有时可用比较级 + 复数属格表示同样的意思，此时比较级的变形决定了整个短语的语法范畴。

## 6. ok skal geta til 这里的 geta 是 ‘guess, suppose’ 的意思，它常接 til+ 名词。但是，即便不加 til, geta 也可以表示这个含义，且需接续属格名词。

## 7. þú lézk þat vel kunna

宾格-不定式结构，lézk 来自于 láta ‘let’ 的引申义 ‘express, say’。

## 8. þá er þó víð ván, at ...

字面义 ‘then the hope is certain that ...’，表示肯定的语气，‘then it is certain that ...’

## 9. allra helzta

固定短语，‘especially’.

## 10. sex greinir ins fjórða tegar

注意这里数词表达的方法，sex ins fjórða tegar ‘six of the fourth tens’，指的是 36。因为 fjórði tigrí指的是一般数词表达的方法，sex ins fjórða tegar ‘six of the fourth tens’，指的是 36。因为 fjórði tigrí指的是 30-40. (0-10 是第一个 tigrí, 10-20 是第二个，以此类推)

Nú mun ek þessa stafi átta, alls engi grein er enn i[s] gør, á meðal inna sœmu tveggja samhljóða setja sitt sinn hvern, en sýna ok dœmi gefa, hvé sitt mál góri hverr þeira við inna

Now I shall compare these eight letters, as no distinction is made for i. I will in turn put it between the same two consonants, to show and give examples of how each of them makes

sómu stafa fullting, í inn sama stað settr hvern sem annarr, ok á þann veg svá gefa dœmi of allan þenna böckling á meða[ll] inna líkustu greina, þeira er á stófum verða górvir: sar, sør; ser, sér; sor, sör; sur, syr.

### 中文意译

现在我就比较其中八个字母，因为没有字母和 1 形成区分。举例时，我每次把需要区分的元音发在两个相同的辅音之间，由此来展示不同的元音在同一个环境下是如何产生出不同的意思的。在这本小书里，我将使用以下几个长相最相近的单词 sar, sør; ser, sér; sor, sör; sur, syr。

### 语法

#### 1. sitt sinn hvern

sinn hvern 是一个固定短语，表示 ‘each’，作形容词用，但是这个短语可以拆开使用。这里就是向 sinn hvern 的中性形式 sitt hvern 中间插入中性名词 sinn ‘time’，表示 each time. 下面的 hvé sitt mál hvern þeira 也是类似的结构。请注意不要把 sinn 的意思搞混。

Sar veitti maðr mér eitt, sør mórg veitta ek honum [...]  
Sor goðinn ein sørin. Sur eru augu syr, slík duga betr en spryngi ýr.

its meaning when supported by the same letters and placed in the same position. And in this way, I will give examples throughout this little book, of the distinctions made between the most similar words: sar, sør; ser, sér; sor, sör; sur, syr.

A man put a wound (sar) on me, I put many wounds (sør) on him. [...] The priest swore (sor) the oath (sørin). Sow's (syr) eyes are sour (sur), it is more the case than they popped.

### 中文意译

“伤口”的单数是 sar, 但复数是 sør. 【原文漏掉了 ser 和 sér 的比较】“发誓”的过去式是 sor. “母猪”叫作 syr, 但“酸楚”拼作 sur.

【注：sar 和 sør 今均作 sár; ser 今应作 sér, sér 应作 sær, 但由于没有例文，亦可能有别的解读；sor 今作 sór, 系 sverja 的过去式，sørin 今作 sørin, 原形 sør; sur 今作 súrr, 原形 súrr, syr 今作 sýr.】

En nú elr hvern þessa stafa níu annan staf undir sér, ef hann verðr í nef kveðinn. Enda verðr sú grein svá skýr, at hon má ok máli skipta, sem ek sýni hér nu eptir; ok set [ek] punkt fyr ofan þá, er í nef eru kveðnir: har, hár; rø, ró; þel, þél; fér, fér; isa, isa; orar, órar; óra, óra; þu at, þúat; syna, sýna.

Now each of these letters has another nine letters (derived) from it, when it is pronounced in the nose. And this distinction is so clear that it may change the meaning, which I will show here, and I put a dot above those that are spoken in the nose: har, hár; rø, ró; þel, þél; fér, fér; isa, i sa; orar, órar; óra, óra; þu at, þúat; syna, sýna

### 中文意译

上述的九个字母各自衍生出一个鼻化的元音，这个区别是相当显著的，因为它甚至可以改变词意。我在这里用元音 + 一个上标点的形式标记鼻化元音，试比较：har, hár; rø, ró; þel, þél; fér, fér; isa, i sa; orar, órar; óra, óra; þu at, þúat; syna, sýna.

Har vex á kykvendum, en hár er fiskr. Rø er eitt tré ór seglviðum, en ró er hyrning húss. Þel er á hnæfa bundnum eða hlutr feldar, en þél er smíðartól. Annat er þat, er sauðrinn heitir fér, en annat þat, er han fér lambs. Í sa skýja deild, þá er vér komum í isa. Orar eru órókþir órar. Spakt skyldi it ellzta barn, því at it ellra má óra it óra. Þar vart þu at, er fjaðrklæðit þúat<sup>2</sup>. Priggja syna austr mun ek þér sýna. Nú verðr þetta

Hair (har) grows on living creatures, but shark (hár) is a kind of fish. Yard (rø) is a pole from a sail, but nook (ró) is the corner of the house. Nap (þel) is on a fist that is bound up or part of a cloak, but file (þél) is the tool of a smith. For one thing, a sheep is called fér, but it is quite another when someone gets (fér) a lamb. We can see through (i sa) the opening in the cloud when we come on an iceberg (isa). Mad-

allt saman raddirstafanna: a, á; o, ó; e, é; ε, ᵑ; i, í; o, ó; ø, ð; u, ú; y, ý.

ness (Orar) is our (órar) bad reason. The oldest son should be quiet, for the older may madden (øra) the younger (ðra). You were there (þu at) and ??? I will show (sýna) you bilge water three planks (syna) deep. Now this makes the total of vowels: a, á; o, ó; e, é; ε, ᵑ; i, í; o, ó; ø, ð; u, ú; y, ý.

### 中文意译

“头发”被称为 har, 但 hár 却指的是“鲨鱼”; 船上的“桅杆”叫 rø, 但房子的“角落”是 rø; þel 指的是织物上的“短绒”, 但 þel 却是“锉刀”; fær 说的是“羊”, 可 fær 是“得到”的现在时; “冰山”叫作 isa, 但“看穿”叫 i sa; orar 是“癫疯”的意思, 而 órar 意思是“我们的”; øra 指的是“让人发疯”, 但 ðra 说的是“更年轻”; þu at 表示“你在”, 但 þuat 是???: syna 是“板”的复数属格, 但 sýna 是“展示”的意思。

【注: har 和 hár 今均作 hár; rø 和 rø 今均作 rá; þel 今仍作 þel, þel 今作 þél; fær 和 fér 今均作 fær; isa 今作 ísa, 原形 íss, isa 今作 ísá; orar 今作 órar, órar 今作 várar 或 órar; øra 今作 øera, øra 今作 øera, 原形 øeri, 系 ungr 的比较级的古体形式; þu at 今作 þú at; syna 今作 sýna, sýja 的复数属格, 极罕见; sýna 今作 sýna.】

En þó at ek rit eigi fleiri raddirstafi en raddirnar fundusk í váru máli, átján gørvar ór fimm látinuróddum, þá er þó gott at [v]ita þat, at er grein enn á raddirstofum bæði þeim, er áðr váru í stafrófi, ok þeim qðrum, er nú eru í gørvir, grein sú er máli skiptir, hvárt stafr er langr eða skammr, sem gríkkir ríta í qðru líkneski langan staf, en í qðru skamman. Svá ríta þeir e skamman: ε, en svá langan sem sjá stafr er: η; þann veg o skamman: [o], en þann veg langan: ω. þá grein vil ek enn sýna, því at hon skiptir máli ok, jafnt sem inar fyrri, ok merkja ina löngu með stryki frá inum skómmum: far, fár; rám̄r, rám̄r; ql, ql; uón, uón; seþo, séþo; frám̄r, frá mér; uér, uér; uéñesc, uéñesc; uil, uíl; minna, mínnna; goþ, góþ; móna, móna; Goþrøþe, góþ róþe; mónde, mónde; dura, dúra; rúnar, rúnar; flytr, flýtr; brýnna, brýnna.

Now even though I do not write more vowel letters than the vowels found in our language, that is the eighteen letters made out of five Latin vowels, it is yet good to know that there is a distinction between vowels both in the vowels that were already in the alphabet, but also in those added. The distinction can change the meaning, (according to) whether the letter is long or short, just as Greeks write long letters in a shape different from short ones. Thus, they write short e as ε but the long e like this: η, they write short o as o, but long o as ω. I also wish to show this distinction for it changes meaning as well, just like the previous one, and I will mark the long one with a stroke from the short one: far, fár; rám̄r, rám̄r; ql, ql; uón, uón; seþo, séþo; frám̄r, frá mér; uér, uér; uéñesc, uéñesc; uil, uíl; minna, mínnna; goþ, góþ; móna, móna; Goþrøþe, góþ róþe; mónde, mónde; dura, dúra; rúnar, rúnar; flytr, flýtr; brýnna, brýnna.

### 中文意译

这十八个元音字母由五个拉丁语的元音延伸出来, 构成了我们语言中的全部元音。即便我现在不再添加元音符号了, 但是读者最好仍要记住, 这些原有的元音和新添加的元音还可以构成对立。这种对立能改变词意, 它是通过改变元音的音长产生的。希腊语中, 长短元音的写法是不一样的, 比如把短的 e 写作 ε, 长的 e 写作 η; 短的 o 写作 o, 长的 o 写作 ω。我也想按类似上面的方法构造出某种分别, 因为这种区分确实会改变意思, 因此我在字母上方加一杠来表示长元音, 试比较: far, fár; rám̄r, rám̄r; ql, ql; uón, uón; seþo, séþo; frám̄r, frá mér; uér, uér; uéñesc, uéñesc; uil, uíl; minna, mínnna; goþ, góþ; móna, móna; Goþrøþe, góþ róþe; mónde, mónde; dura, dúra; rúnar, rúnar; flytr, flýtr; brýnna, brýnna.

Far heitir skip, en fár nökkurs konar nauð. Rám̄r er sterkr maðr, en rám̄r inn hási. Ql heitir drykkr, en ql er band. Tungan er málinu uón, en at tønnunum er bitsins uón. Seþo,

Vessel (far) is the name of a ship, but danger (fár) is a kind of distress. A strong man is powerful (rám̄r) but a sore throat is hoarse (rámr). Ale (ql) is a drink, but strap (ql)

<sup>2</sup> 意义不明。来历的手稿编辑者均不译出。

hvé vel þeir séþo er fyr saumførinni réðu. mjók eru þeir menn frámér, er eigi skammask at taka mína konu frá mér. Svá er mórg við uer sínn uér, at varla of sér hon af honum nær. Uéñesc eigi góðr maðr því, þó at vándr maðr uéñesc góðum konum. Dul vættir ok uil, at lina muni erfiði ok uíl. Huglan mann vil ek minna hugþrá ørenda mínnna. Sú kona goðgar goþ, er sjálf er góþ. Móna mín móna, kveðr barnit, við mik góra verst hjóna. Vel líkuðu Goþrøþe góþ róþe, þat eru góðar árar, sem skáld kvað:

Rétt kann róþe slíta  
ræsis herr ór verri.

Leka mónde húsit, ef eigi mónde smiðrinn. Ef gestrinn kveðr dura, þá skyldi eigi bóneddinn dúra. Rúnar heita geltir, en rúnar málstafir. Se þú hvé flotinn flytr, er sækarlinn flytr. Stýrimaðr þarf byrinn brýnna, en sá er nautunum skal brýnna.

is a kind of leather band. The tongue is accustomed (uón) for speech, but the teeth are expected (uón) to bite. Behold (Seþo), how well they sewed (séþo) the seam of the ship's plankings when they are in charge. These men are unscrupulous (frámer) as they are not ashamed to take my wife from me (frá mér). So many women are fond of (uér) her husband (uér), that she hardly keeps her eyes off him. A good man should not fall into bad habits (uéñesc), even though an evil man boasts of (uéñesc) (getting laid with) a good woman. Proud man hopes and wills (uil) that hard work and wretchedness (uíl) will give away. I will remind (minna) thoughtful man of my (mínnna) important errands. The woman who is good (góþ) worships god (goþ). My mammy (móna), says the child will not (móna) treat me like the worst of the household. Godred (Goþrøþe) well like góþ róþe, that is, good oars, as the skald says:

Straight can king's men cut  
Through the sea with oars

The house would (mónde) leak, if no craftsman had set a roof (mónde). If a guest knocks on the door (dura), then the host shall not doze (dúra). Male pigs are called boars (rúnar), but letters are called runes (rúnar). Behold, how raft floats (flytr) when seaman steers (flytr) it. The helmsman needs a straight (brýnna) wind than who is to water (brýnna) the cattle.

### 中文意译

far 指的是“帆船”，而 fár 是“危险”； rámr 形容人“强壮”，但 rámr 指的是喉咙“嘶哑”； ql 说的是“麦酒”，而 qíl 是一种“皮带”； uón 是“习惯”的阴性形式，而 uón 是“期待”的意思； seþo 是“你看”，而 séþo 是“缝纫”的意思； frámer 说人“无礼”，而 frá mér 是“从我这里”的意思； uér 的意思是“丈夫”，而 uér 是“欢喜”的阴性形式； uéñesc 是“习惯于”的意思，而 uéñesc 是说人“自吹自擂”； uil 指人的“愿望”，但 uíl 说的是“苦难”； minna 是“提醒”的意思，而 mínnna 是物主代词“我的”； goþ 是对“神”的称呼，而 góþ 是“好”的阴性形式； móna 是“不想要”，而 móna 是“奶妈”的意思； Goþrøþe 是人名“Godred”，但 góþ róþe 是“好的桨”； mónde 是“可能”的意思，而 mónde 说的是“修缮屋顶”； dura 说的是“房门”，而 dúra 是“打盹”的意思； rúnar 是对“公猪”的称呼，而 rúnar 是一种“字母”； 操作船叫作 flytr，可 flytr 是“漂浮”的意思； brýnna 是“给牲畜喂水”，而 brýnna 是说风“强劲”。

【注： far 和 fár 今形式不变； rámr 今作 ramr 或 rammr, rámr 今形式不变； ql 今形式不变， qíl 今作 ál； uón 今作 vón, 原形 vanr, uón 今作 ván； seþo 今作 sé þú, séþo 今作 séðu； frámer 今作 framir, 原形 framr, frá mér 今作 frá mér； uér 今作 ver, uér 今作 vær, 原形 værr； uéñesc 今作 venisk, 原形 venja, uéñesc 今作 vænisk, 原形 væna； uil 今作 vil, uíl 今作 víl； minna 今作 minna, mínnna 今作 mínnna 或 minna； goþ 今作 goð, góþ 今作 góð, 原形 góðr； móna 今作 mun-a, 由 munu+ 否定后缀构成， móna 今形式不变； Goþrøþe 今作 Guðrœði, góþ róþe

今作 góð rœði; mónde 今作 myndi, 原形 munu, mónde 今作 moendi, 原形 moena; dura 今作 dura 或 dyra, dúra 今形式不变, 也作 dúsa; rúnar 今作 runar, 原形 runi, rúnar 今形式不变, 原形 rún; flytr 今形式不变, 原形 flytja, flytr 今形式亦不变, 原形 fljóta; brýnna 今作 bryンna, brýnna 今形式不变, 原形 brýnn.】

Nú ef nökkur þessa greina sex ins fjórða tegar má svá niðr falla, at aldri[gi] þurfi í váru máli, þá skjótumsk ek yfir, sem vís ván er; eða svá, ef fleiri finnask í mannsins röddu.

Now if any of these thirty-six distinctions should be wrong, that they are never needed in our language, then I am mistaken, which is quite possible, or (I may also be mistaken) if there are more to be found in men's speech.

### 中文意译

如果说这三十六处区别中有任何一处是不对的，在我们的语言中不需要区分它们，那就说明我犯了错误，这是相当可能的事情。同样地，如果我们的语言中还能发现其他区别的话，那也是我的疏忽。

En þat er gott at vita, sem fyrr var getit, er svá kveðr at hverjum raddirstaf í hverju máli, sem hann heitir í stafrófi, nema þá er hann hafnar sínu eðli, ok hann má heldr þá samhljóðandi heita en raddirstaf. <sup>3</sup>

Now it is good to know that, as I have said before, that man pronounces every vowel in whatever sentences just like what it is named in the alphabet, except when it gives up its own nature and (in this case) it may be called a consonant rather than a vowel.

### 中文意译

大家最好要记住我前面所说的话，所有的元音在任何语境下都按它本身的名字来发音，除非它失去了自己的本性。这种情形下，与其说它是元音倒不如说它是辅音。

Þat verðr þá er hann er stafaðr við annan raddirstaf, sem hér eru nökkur dœmi nú: austr, earn, eir, eór, eyrer, uín. Nú er eigi órvænt, at svá svari nökkurr maðr: “þar er orð, at þú rítr þar [e], er flestir menn ríta i, þá er hann verðr fyr samhljóðanda settr, sem nú er skamt frá því, er þú reitt earn, þar sem ek munda iarn ríta, eða svá í mórgum stóðum qðrum.” þá svara ek svá: “þú hefir þar rétt fundit, ok þó eigi alls getit þess, er þér má ek kynliga þykkja ritit hafa, ok þó hafa ek fyr qnnkost svá ritit í flestum stóðum. Ef ek gerða annat mál, sem þar væri full þórf ok cerin efni til, er koenska væri, of þat, til hverra stafa hver orð hafa eðli, eða á hverja lund hverja stafi skyldi saman stafa, þá væri sú bók qnnur qll ok miklu meiri, ok má ek af því eigi þat mál nú mæla innan í þessu. En þó mun ek nökkurum orðum svara um þetta it eina orð, er þú skoraðir helzt í.”

This happens when it is joined with another vowel, as now the example shows: austr, earn, eir, eór, eyrer, uín. Now it is not unlikely that some man would say: “There is a word where you write an e while most people would write i, when it is used as a consonant, as it is (pronounced) shorter. When you just wrote earn, I would write iarn, and so in many other places.” And to this I say: “You have made the right observation, and yet you haven't mentioned everything that may seem strange to you in what I have written, even though I have intentionally written it in most places. If I were to write another book, as there is sufficient necessity and adequate material for it, if only I had the wits to elaborate what letters make up the nature of each word, and in what way each letter should be combined together, and that would be a book totally different and much longer, and therefore, I cannot elaborate the idea here for now. But I would still like to say something about this one word that you have pointed out.”

### 中文意译

当一个元音和另一个元音相邻的时候就会发生上述的情况，譬如这些词 austr, earn, eir, eór, eyrer, uín. 当然，肯定有些人会这么说：“这些词中的 e 大多数人会写作 i，因为它的发音更短些。比如你写成 earn，

<sup>3</sup> 作者在这里讨论的，实际上就是半元音。

我更愿意写作 *iarn*, 以此类推。”对此我的回应是：“你说的对。我在文中很多地方都特意这么写，不过你还没有把它们全找出来。解释这个问题很有必要，同时也有充足的语料作支撑。如果我有余力来写另一本书解释单词的本性如何以及字母之间要如何组合的话，那就会是一篇截然不同的文章，篇幅也更长。因此，我在这里不能展开解释了，不过还是可以对这个现象简单说一点。”

### 语法

#### 1. er þér má ek kynliga þykkja ritit hafa

字面的意思是 ‘must seem strange to you that I should have written this word’, *hafa* 是第一人称单数虚拟式，表示与预期相反的情况。注意 *er* 在这里充当 *hafa ritit* 的宾语。

Fyr því at þat hljóð, er samhljóðandinn hefir, eða sá raddirstafr, er í hans stað er settr ok stafaðr við annan raddirstafr, er eigi auðskilit, því at lítit verðr ok við blandit nær eða gróit við raddirstafr þann, er viðr er stafat, þá er þess leitanda, hvar svá finnim vér kveðit it sama orð, at sá raddirstafr sé frá qðrum raddirstafr skilinn, ok góri sína samstofun hvarr, er optast er viðr stafaðr, svá at eina samstofun góra báðir.

Since the sound that the consonant possesses, or of the vowel put in the place of the consonant and combined with another vowel, is not easy to distinguish, as it is short and almost mingled or grown together with the vowels that it is connected to, therefore it must be sought where we would find this same word that it is pronounced (in such a way) that the (first) vowel is separated from the other, and each makes its syllable, when in most cases the two vowels are combined so that they make one syllable together.

### 中文意译

辅音携带的声响是短小而不容易区分的，而当一个元音被放置在辅音的位置并且与另一个元音结合时，它的声响也如辅音一般与其毗邻的元音混杂在一起。因此我们必须要找到这样的单词，其中的两个元音互相分离，各自构成自己的音节，而一般情况下，两个元音是结合在一起共同构成一个音节的。

### 语法

#### 1. þá er þess leitanda

现在分词表示义务和必要性的例子, ‘then it should be sought’.

Skáld eru hófundar allrar rýnni eða málsgreinar, sem smiðir [smíðar] eða lögmann laga. En þessa lund kvað einn þeira eða þessu líkt:

Hófðu hart of krafðir

Hildr óx við þat skildir

Gang, enn gamlir sprungu

Gunnþings earnhringar<sup>4</sup>

Skalds are the judges in all matters of grammar, just as craftsmen [in crafts] and lawmen in laws. And in this way one of them made a poem like this:

Shields, hard pressed

Had given away and sprang apart

Iron-rings of battle-meetings [mail-shirt]

Battle increased at that

<sup>4</sup> 这首诗是 11 世纪挪威王奥拉夫二世（奥拉夫·哈拉尔松，Olaf Haraldsson）的宫廷诗人 Óttarr svarti (Óttarr the Black) 所作，描述的是奥拉夫率军入侵伦敦的故事。这首诗按散文方法可以写作：

Skildir hart of krafðir, hófðu gang, enn gamlir gunnþings earnhringar sprungu. Hildr óx við þat. 其中 gunnþings earnhringar 有被解读为“刀剑”或“盔甲”的。关于本诗的其他解读，参见 [1].

## 中文意译

吟游诗人是语法方面的行家，他们精通文法一如匠人精通手艺，律师熟稔律法。有一个诗人写了这样的一首诗：

盾牌受压难支撑  
刀锋相击声不停  
盔甲崩裂敌欲走  
战火愈烈难平息

Nú þó at kveðandin skyldi hann til at slíta eina samstqfu í sundr ok gøra tvær ór, til þess at kveðandi haldisk í hætti, þá rak hann þó engi nauðr til þess at skipta stofnum ok hafa e fyr i, ef heldr ætti i at vera en e, þó at mér lítisk eigi at því.  
<sup>5</sup> En ef nökkurr verðr svá einmáll eða hjámáll, at hann mælir á mótt svá morgum mōnnum skynsónum, sem bæði létsuk sjálfir kveða þetta orð, áðr ek reit þat, ok svá heyra aðra menn kveða, sem nú er ritit, ok þú lætr i skulu kveða, en eigi e, þó at þat orð sé í tvær samstofur deilt, þá vil ek hafa ástráð Cátónis, þat er hann réð syni sínum í versum:

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis  
Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis

Now even though the metric would make him split the one syllable into two, so that the line can stand in tune, but yet there is no need for him to change the letter and use e for i, if it should have been i instead of e, which I disagree. And if some man is so insistent and absurd that he speaks against many sensible men, who have declared that they pronounce this word, before I wrote this, and hear others pronounce this, as what is written now, and you insist that it should be pronounced i but not e, even if that word is divided into two syllables, then I will give you Cato's kind advice, with which he advised his son in these verses:

Do not contend with verbose people in words  
Speech is given to all, the wisdom of mind to few

## 中文意译

即便格律可能要求他把 earn 分成两个音节，这样韵律才会整齐。不过他仍然没有必要用 e 替代 i，如果这个音本来就是拼作 i 而不是 e，因此我不同意这个音拼作 i。过去的诗人在写这本书前就记录下了这个词是如何拼读的，如果有人非要固执己见而与这些智者背道而驰，坚称这里应该拼成 i 而不是 e，那么我只好把卡托的建议送给你，这是他教育自己的儿子的：

勿与多言者争辩，空耗心力无所获  
众人皆能夸海口，真知灼见寥寥数

## 语法

## 1. í hætti

hátr 本是“习惯、方式”之类的意思，í hætti 或 eptir hætti 在这里表示押韵。

## 2. rak hann þó engi nauðr

字面义‘no necessity pushed him’，nauðr 用法特殊，它只用在主语的位置，因此有很多比喻性的说法。这里即表示“没有必要做某事”。

þat er svá at skilja: hirð eigi þú at þræta við málrófs-menn; málróf er gefit morgum, en spekin fám. Nu lýk ek hérmumrœðu raddirstafanna, en ek leita viðr, ef guð lofar, at rœða

That is to say: do not quarrel with a glib talker, a big talk is given to many, but wisdom to few. Now I end here the discussion of the vowels, but I will try, if God permits, to say

<sup>5</sup> 这里作者的解释历来有争议。一些学者认为这个词写作 iarn（现作 járn）也能满足格律，另外在原始语中的形式是 \*īsarnā（借自原始凯尔特语 \*īsarnom），亦能佐证这个元音就是 i。如果认为本文作者的解释是对的，他描述的现象可能反映的是古诺尔斯语元音分割的过程：\*e > ea > ia > ja. 其中，从 ea 向 ia 变化的过程中，重音从第一个音节移到了第二个音节，使得 ia 中的 i 进一步辅音化，形成了半元音 j.

nókkut um samhljóðendr.

something more about consonants.

### 中文意译

意思是说：不要与说大话的人争吵，很多人都能夸夸其谈，而有真知灼见的人却很少。对于元音的讨论到此为止，接下来，若是上苍助我，我再讨论一点关于辅音的事。

## 4.3 辅音论

Í nafni samhljóðanda hvers sem eins er nókkurr raddirstastr, því at hvárki nefnir þau nöfn né qnnur engi, ef þeir njóta eigi raddirstafa, sem fyrr var sagt. Nú þó at þat hljóð eða atkvæði, er samhljóðendr hafa, megi varla eitt saman at kveða, enda sé þó nauðr at skilja, hvat þeir stoða í málinu. Enda stoði engi þeira þat allt í málinu, sem nafn hans er til, sem raddirstafirnir góra, þá mun ek svá haga nafni hvers þeira, er áðr hafði eigi svá nafn til, at þá skal af nafninu skilja hvat hann stoðar í málinu, þó at áðr skili eigi. Skal þat atkvæði hvers þeira í hverju máli vera, sem þá lifir nafnsins eptir, er ór er tekinn raddirstastr ór nafninu.

In the name of every consonant there is a vowel, because they cannot name themselves or do anything else if they do not have a vowel, as is said before. Even though the sound or syllable of the consonant can hardly be pronounced by itself alone, it would be yet important to point out its significance in sentences. Since none of the consonants is pronounced like its full name, as the vowels do, I shall arrange a (new) name for every one of them, a name that they have never been called, and, shall make others understand their value in the context even though they don't know in advance. The pronunciation of each consonant in whatever context should be what remains in the name when the vowel is taken away.

### 中文意译

每个辅音的名字里都是有元音的，因此辅音既不能单独拼出自己的名字，也什么都做不了，这在前面已经说过了。不过即使辅音的声响或其构成的音节不能独自成词，讨论辅音在语境中的重要性仍是必要的。由于没有哪一个辅音是根据自己的全名拼读的，我给每个辅音起了一个新名字。这个名字从未有人用过，但能让人一眼就看出在语境中这个辅音的音值，即便他事先并不知道这里是怎么拼的。每个辅音的音值等于其名字去掉元音后剩下来的部分。

### 语法

#### 1. hvat þeir stoða í málinu

stoða 本是“帮助，支持”的意思，在本文的语境中，stoða 表示“发... 的音”（声音由字母承载或“支持”）。

B, [c], d, g, h, p, t, þeir stafir hafa af því mundang mikit eins stafs atkvæði, at aldri má tvá samhljóðendr ins sama hlutar setja í einni samstofun fyr raddirstafinn.

B, [c], d, g, h, p, t, these letters have the average length of one letter, and in no case can two identical consonants be put before a vowel in one syllable.

### 中文意译

b, c, d, g, h, p, t, 这些字母的音长平均等于一个字母的长度，而且在任何情况下一个音节中都不会出现两个同样的字母出现在一个元音前的情况。

### 语法

#### 1. tvá samhljóðendr ins sama hlutar

字面义 ‘two consonants of the same value’，指的实际上是双辅音。

F, l, m, n, r, s, þeir stafir megu hafa tveggja samhljóðanda atkvæði hverr einn, ef svá mjök vil at kveða, svá sem hverr þeira, er eptir raddirstafinn verðr settr, sem þar berr vitni, er vér nefnum þá með svá miklu atkvæði, sem mundim vér, ef svá skyldi ríta nöfn þeira: eff, ell, emm, enn, err, ess. Má ok minka atkvæði þeira, þó at þeir standi eptir raddirstaf í samstofun, ok sé svá nefnd[i]r, sem þessa kostar væri ritin nöfn þeira: ef, el, em, en, er, es, sem ek læt þá svá heita alla ok aldri hafa meirr en eins stafs atkvæði hvern, hvárt sem þeir standa fyr raddirstaf í samstofun eða eptir, nema þar er ek rít samhljóðanda, hverngi er ek rít, með vexti hófuðstafsins, enda standi hann eptir raddirstafinn í samstofun. Þá læt ek þann einn jarteina jafnmikit, sem þar væri tveir eins konar ok ins sama konar ritnir, til þess at rit verði minna ok skjótara ok bókfell drjúgara.

### 中文意译

f, l, m, n, r, s, 只要人们愿意拖长发音，这些字母的音长可以达到两个辅音的长度，比如当它位于元音之后时。如果我们给它们的名字赋一个长音节并分别写作：eff, ell, emm, enn, err, ess，那么就可以清楚地看到这种情况。但它们也可能发短音，而且元音后也允许这种情况。于是它们的名字便写作 ef, el, em, en, er, es. 用这种方式给它们命名可以使得在任何一个音节中同一个辅音字母都不会出现两次，无论它处于元音前还是元音后。如果要表示元音后的长辅音，则用一个大写字母来表示两个同质的音，这样可以书写得更快些，也能节省纸张。

### 语法

#### 1. sem þar berr vitni

bera vitni ‘bear witness’ 的无人称用法，不强调 bera 的主语。

#### 2. bókfell drjúgara

drjúgara 是 drjúgr 的比较级，这个形容词本是“坚固”的意思，后来延伸为“持久”，最后延伸出“用量少，节约”的含义。

Nú þar er þeir stafir eru, er raddirstaf hefir eptra í nafnu, sem eru: b, c, d, g, p, t, ok af því of eykr eigi atkvæði nafns hvers þeira, þá skipti ek þar hófuðstafsins nafni, ok set ek þá raddirstaf fyrr, til þess at aukask megi atkvæði þeira svá í nafninu, sem annars staðar skulu þeir í málínu jarteina. Skal nú hverr samhljóðandi jafnmikit sítt atkvæði leggja til lags við raddirstaf þann, er í nafni hans er, sem hann skal hafa við hverngi annarra, er han verðr [við] stafaðr í hverju málí.

### 中文意译

现在给出的这些字母的名字结尾处有一个元音，因此它们的音值不能延长了。这些字母是 b, c, d, g, p, t，对于它们的大写字母，我准备把元音放到它们名字的前头去，这样可使其音值按照情况延长。所有辅音现在都以一个固定的长度附着在其名字中的元音上，对于其他语境中的元音，辅音以相同的方式与

F, l, m, n, r, s, these letters can each have the sound of two consonants, if a man wishes to pronounce that long, just like when they are placed after vowels, which is easy to find out if we give them names with long syllables and write them as eff, ell, emm, enn, err, ess. And this can be shortened, even when they stand after the vowel in a syllable, and these would be their names, as they are written in this wise: ef, el, em, en, er, es. So I will name them in this way that they never have more than one letter in each syllable, whether they stand before or after the vowel of the syllable, unless I write any one of the consonants with the shape of a capital letter and it follows the vowel in its syllable. Then I let this one character represent what two of the same kind stand for, so that the writing may be smaller and quicker, and it would save the parchment.

Now there are those letters that have a vowel at the end of their names, namely b, c, d, g, p, t, and therefore the sound of their names cannot be extended, then I would like to change the names of their capital letters and place the vowel in the front, in order that the syllable in their names can be lengthened according to what it should represent in other places. Now each consonant should properly add an equally long sound to the vowel in its name as it does to any other vowel that it is combined within any context.

之结合。

### 语法

#### 1. annars staðar skulu þeir í málínu jarteina

annars staðar 都是单数属格，整体作副词用，表示“其他地方”。annars 本身也可以单独作副词用，相当于‘else’。

En fyr því nú, at sumir samhljóðendr hafa sín líkneski ok nafn ok jartein, en sumir hafa hofuðstafs líkneski ok nafn ok jartein, en sumir hafa hofuðstafs líkneski ok skip[t] stofum sumra í nafni ok aukit atkvæði bæði nafns ok jarteinar, en sumir halda líkneski sínu, ok er þó minkat atkvæði nafns þeira, ok jartein sú, er þeir skulu hafa í málínu, skal þeiri lík, er í nafninu verð[r], þá skal nú sýna leita bæði líkneski þeira ok svá nöfn fyr ofan ritin, at yfir þat megi nú allt saman líta, er áðr var sundrlauslega umröett:

And for now, some consonants (b, c, d, g, p, t) have their own shape, name and value but some (f, l, m, n, r, s) have their shape, name and value from a capital letter. However, others (B, C, D, G, P, T) get the shape from a capital letter but with some letters in its name changed or sound lengthened both in name and value. Some others (f, l, m, n, r, s) maintain its shape but with its name shortened to represent what it should be in speech so that its value can be in accord with its name. Now I shall attempt to show the shape of both the shape of the consonant and its name, which is written above, so that one may altogether find what has been treated separately:

### 中文意译

有些辅音（即 b, c, d, g, p, t）有自己的形状、名字和音值，有些辅音（即 f, l, m, n, r, s）的形状、名字、音值则是从大写字母里借来的。有些辅音（即 B, C, D, G, P, T）虽然从大写字母那里借来了外形，但改变了原来的几个字母或是延长了音值。剩下的一些（即 f, l, m, n, r, s）则保留了原本的形状，但缩短了音长使其名字的发音与这个辅音在语境中的音值一致。我现在写出这些字母的形状，并在上方注上它们的名字，以便读者直接看出辅音的音与形的关系：

### 语法

#### 1. jartein sú, er þeir skulu hafa í málínu, skal þeiri lík, er í nafninu verðr

jartein 在本文中的意思就是“字母的音值”。skal þeiri lík, 省略了系动词 vera. líkr 或 glíkr ‘alike, similar’ 接与格 (þeirri er ...)。本句的直译是 ‘the sound value that they have in speech should be similar with that in their name’.

be	ebb	che	ecc	de	edd	ef	eff	ge	egg	eng	ha	el	ell
b	B	c	K	d	D	f	F	g	G	g	H	l	L
em	emm	en	enn	pe	epp	er	err	es	ess	te	ett	ex	the
m	M	n	N	p	P	r	R	s	S	t	T	x	þ

Sá stafr, er hér er ritinn c, er látinumenn flestir kalla ce ok hafa fyr tvá stafi: fyr t ok s, þá er þeir stafa hann við e eða i, þó at þeir stafi hann við a eða o eða u sem k, sem svá stafa skotar þann staf við alla raddarstafi í látinu ok kalla che, hann læt ek ok che heita í váru stafrófi, ok stafa ek svá við alla raddarstafi sem k eða q, en þá tek ek úr stafrófi báða, ok læt þenna einn, c, fyrir hvárn hinna ok svá fyr sjálfan sik, alls þeir

The letter, which is written as c and most Latin people call ce, has the sound of two letters: t and s when placed before e or i, but k before a, o, and u. This is how Scots combine this before all vowels in Latin and named che. I shall also call it che in our alphabet, and pronounce it before all vowels as k or q, and then I take both these two letters out of the alphabet, and let this one, c, represent both of them as well as

hófðu áðr allir eitt hljóð í [flestim] stóðum eða jartein. En fyr því at c hefir inn sama voxt, hvárt sem hann er hófuðstafr ritinn eða eigi, allra helzt er ek rít[ka] þá hófuðstafi störr en aðra í riti, er eigi standa í vers upphafi, ok skulu tvá stafi jarteina, ok þá rít ek fyr hans hófuðstaf þenna staf: k, fyr því at þá hefr hann sín voxt, þó at nökkut lægisk við. Er ok eigi allfjartekit til þess vaxtar honum, alls sá stafur stendr í griksku ok heitir kappa ok jarteinir xx í tólu þar. En hér shall hann í máli váru standa fyr cc, sem aðrir inir smæri hófuðstafir jarteina tvá stafi í máli. Má hann ok í tólu várri jarteina cc tíroeð, sem ce tvau í látínu. Áðr hann væri fyr tvá stafi settir ok hann hét che, þá hafði hann eftra e en c í nafni sínu, en nú skipti hann ok hafi e fyrst í nafninu ok heiti ecc, enda siti um svá górt.

### 中文意译

在这里写作 c 的字母被大多数拉丁人读作 ce。当它出现在 e 或 i 之前时，它的发音是 t 和 s 的叠加，但在 a o u 之前读作 k。苏格兰人则一律把元音前的 c 读作 k，并给这个字母取名 che。我也给这个字母取名 che，并使之在一切元音前表示 k 或 q 的音，然后把这两个字母从字母表里去掉，而统一用 c 表示，因为它们三个的音值在大多数情况下是一致的。由于大小写的 c 形状一致，而且除了在篇章开头的地方之外，我在书写时并不把大写字母写得比其他更大些，因此我用 k 表示其大写字母，所以即便是它写成比较小的样子，依旧有自己独立的形状。这个做法也并非牵强附会，因为在希腊语中，这个字母读作 kappa 并且表示 xx 这个音，但在我们的语言里就用 cc，和其他大写的辅音字母一样用来表示两个字母。这个字母也可用来表示两百，就像罗马数字中用两个 C 表示两百一样。在用来表示双辅音前，这个字母名字中的 e 本来是在 c 后面的，但现在则改变了顺序，把 e 放到前面，称为 ecc 了。

### 语法

#### 1. lægisk

lægja ‘lower’ 的中动态，这里表示字母写成小写。

#### 2. siti um svá górt

sitja um 可以表示“不改变某事”，这句话可直译为 ‘leave (what) was done unchanged’，即“结束讨论”的意思。

Þat n, er stendr fyr g hit næsta í einni samstöfum, þat er minnr í nef kveðit en meirr í kverkr en önnur n, af því at þat tekr viðblund nökkut af g. Nú góri ek þeim af því vinveittar samfarar sínar, ok góri ek einn staf af báðum, þann er ek kalla eng, ok rít ek á þessa lund: g. Hann læt ek jarteina einn sem hina tvá, svá at allt sé eitt, hvárt þú rítr hrngr eða hrigr, nema þat er rit minna, er stafir eru færir.

### 中文意译

在 g 之前的 n 发音更偏向于喉音而非鼻音，因为其受到了 g 的影响。因此我把这两个字母合到一起，用一个字母表示它们两个，写作 g，而读作 eng。由于这一个字母可以等价地表示两个音，所以写 hrngr

itself, since they all had one sound or token in most places. But because c has only the same shape whether it is written as a capital one or not, and most importantly, I don't write the capital letter any larger than the others in the text, if it doesn't stand at the beginning of a verse and represent two letters. I will write the following letter k for the capital, so that it has its own shape even when it is lowered. Also, the shape is not far-fetched, since it stands in Greek and is called *kappa* and represents *xx* in that language. But here it shall stand for cc in our language, representing two letters in the sentence just like other small capitals. It may also stand for two hundred in our language, like double c in Latin. Before it was used for two letters and called *che*, it had e after c in its name, but now it would change the sequence and have e in the front of its name, and that is all for this.

The n which stands before the next g in a syllable is pronounced less in the nose and more in the throat than other n, for it is influenced by g. Now I shall make them closely united, and make one letter from both, which I call *eng*, and write in this way: g. I let this letter represent the two sounds so that all these would be the same, whether you write hrngr or hrigr, except that the writing and letters are fewer.

还是 hrígr 并没有任何区别，只是后者写起来更短些。

### 语法

#### 1. vinveittar samfarar

字面义 ‘friendly travelling-together’，指的是两个字母关系紧密。

Hvárki hefi ek brugðit vexti né nafni á h, því at hann má hvárki vaxa né þverra, né á engi veg skapask í sínu atkvæði.

I have changed neither shape nor name for *h*, since it can neither grow longer nor shorter, nor in any way be changed.

### 中文意译

*h* 的字形、音值和名字我都没有改，因为在任何情况下其发音都不能延长或缩短，也不会变成其他的样子。

X, ý, z, &, [~], þeira stafa má þarnask, ef vill, í váru máli, því at engi er einka jartein þeira, alls þeir eru fyr þá eina stafi hafðir, er áðr eru í stafrófi, sumir fyr tvá, sem x ok z, & eða ~, er fyr fleiri verðr stundum, en sumir fyr einn sem ý eða stundum ~.

X, ý, z, &, [~], these letters can be omitted, if one wishes, from our language, because they do not represent any particular sound, but refer to one letter that is already in the alphabet, and some are for two, like x and z, & or ~, which can also stand for more letters while some others can only stand for one, like ý and sometimes ~.

### 中文意译

x, ý, z, &, ~ 这些字母其实可以从字母表中略去，因为其不代表任何单独的音，而是代指字母表里已有的字母。x, z, & 或 ~ 可以代表两个字母，而 ý 和某些环境下的 ~ 则只能代表一个。

X, hann er samsettr í látínu af c ok s. Hann vil ek hafa svá samsettán í váru máli ok ekki sinn láta hann hoþuðstaf vera, því at hann verðr aldrigi fyr c tvau né s tvau ok eigi í upphafi vers né orðs né samstófunnar.

X, it is a combination of *c* and *s* in Latin. I will have it combined likewise in our language and never make a capital letter from it, since it can never stand for double *c* nor double *s* and is by no means at the beginning of a verse, word or syllable.

### 中文意译

*x* 在拉丁语中代表的是 *c* 和 *s* 的叠加。在我们的语言中，我也同样用它表示这两个字母的组合。这个字母没有大写形式，因为它不能代表两个 *c* 和两个 *s*，也不会出现在任何段落、单词或者音节的开头。

Y, hann er grikkiskr stafur ok heitir þar uí, en látínumenn hafa hann fyr ı, ok í grikkiskum orðum at eins þó, ef skynsamliga er ritit. Ok þarf hann af því eigi hér í vára tungu, nema maðr vili setja hann fyr u, þá er hann verðr stafaðr við annan raddrastaf ok hafðr fyr samhljóðanda, er þó láta ek af nú at ríta hann, því at ek sékka u þess meiri þórf fulltings en qðrum raddrastófum, þá er þeir verða fyr samhljóðendr settir.

Y, it is a Greek letter and is called *uī* there, but Latin people use it for *ı*, and it is only in Greek that this letter is written correctly. And hence it is of no need here in our language, except when someone wants to use it for *u*, when it stands next to another vowel and is used as a consonant. And even though I write it here for now, I cannot see that *u* needs such great assistance than any other vowels when they are used for consonants.

### 中文意译

*y* 是一个希腊字母，希腊人管它叫 *uī*，但是拉丁人则用它表示 *ı*，从而只有希腊人的用法是这个字母的本来面貌。因此，我们的语言中没有必要采用这个字母，除非有人想用它表示元音前被辅音化的 *u*。我

姑且把这个字母写在这儿，不过我并不觉得这种情况下的 u 需要额外的字母来表示。

### 语法

#### 1. at eins

固定说法，相当于副词 ‘only’.

Z, hann er samsettr af deleth, ebreskum staf svá ritnum: ȝ, ok settr er fyr d, ok af þeim ȝðrum, er heitir sade, ok er svá ritinn: ȝ, ok er fyr es í látnu settr. Alls hann sjálfur er ebreskr stafr, er þó sé hann í látnustafrófi ok hafðr, því at ebresk orð vaða opt í látnunni. Honum vísa ek heldr ór váru máli ok stafrófi, því at þó verða fyr nauðsynja sakir fleiri stafir í þar, en elligar vilda ek hafa. Vil ek heldr ríta, þeim inum fám sinnum er þarf, d ok s, alls hann er ofvalt í váru máli af d samsettr ok s, en ekki sinn af [þ] ok s.

Z, is a combination of *deleth*, the Hebrew letter that is written as ȝ, which stands for *d*, and of another letter called *sade*, which is written as ȝ and stands for *es* in Latin. Although it is a Hebrew letter, it could be found in the Latin alphabet, since Hebrew letters often come into Latin. I would rather remove it from our language and alphabet since there is sufficient reason that there have been more letters than I wish to have. I would rather write, only few times when necessary, *d* and *s*, since it is always in our language the combination of *d* and *s*, but never þ and *s*.

### 中文意译

z 来自于希伯来语中 *deleth* 和 *sade* 的组合，前者写作 ȝ，后者写作 ȝ，在拉丁语中表示 *es*。尽管这本身是一个希伯来字母，在拉丁字母表里也能找到它的身影，因为许多希伯来字母流入了拉丁字母中。我认为这个字母应该去掉才好，因为有充足的理由说明我们的字母表的体量已经超过了我的预期。在少数必要的情况下，我也宁可用 *d* 和 *s* 来表示这里的音，因为我们的语言中总是出现 *d* 和 *s* 的结合，而非 þ 和 *s*。

& er heldr samstofun en staf[r], ok eru stafaðir saman e ok t í látnu, en e ok þ í váru máli, ef hafa skyldi. En ek hefi hann sem sízt í váru máli ok stafrófi, því at aldrigi verðr sú samstofun svá í váru máli ein saman, at eigi standi í þeiri inni sömu samstofun nökkurr samhljóðandi fyr e-it.

& is a syllable rather than a letter, and is the combination of *e* and *t* in Latin, but *e* and *þ* in our language, if we were to use it. But I have it removed from our language and alphabet, since in no case can this combination occurs alone, so that there is no consonant standing before the *e* in the same syllable.

### 中文意译

& 与其说是一个字母倒不如说是一个符号，在拉丁语里等同于 *e* 加上 *t*，但在我们的语言中则相当于 *e* 加上 þ，如果非要使用它的话。不过我从我们的语言和字母表里去除了这个字母，因为这个组合在任何情况下不会单独出现，使得 *e* 之前没有任何辅音。

Títull hefir enn ekki eðli til stafs, en hann er þó til skynningar rits ok minkunar settr fyr ýmsa stafi aðra, stundum fyr einn, en stundum fyr fleiri. Set ek hann optast fyr m eða stundum fyr n eða fyr er samstofun, þann er [svá] er vaxinn: ȝ. Kanka ek til þess meiri ráð en lítil: bindi hverr með titli, sem tilfylindiligt ok auðskilligt þykkir. Títull hefir þó nökkura jartein til nafns þess, er hann á, þó at hann megi eigi svá merkja af nafni sem aðra stafi. Títan heitir sól, en þaðan af er minkat þat nafn, er titulus er á látnu. Títull, kveðum vér, þat er sem lítil sól sé, því at svá sem sól lýsir, þar er áðr var

The Tittle letter has no quality of a letter, but in quick and shortened writings it is used for various other letters, sometimes for a single one and sometimes for more. I mostly use it for *m* and sometimes *n* (ȝ), or *er*, when written as this: ȝ. On this letter I cannot give more advice than this: bind whatever letter to the Tittle letter as long as it is suitable and understandable. Yet the name ‘Tittle’ has somewhat representation, although it cannot be drawn from its name as the other letters. Títan is the name of the sun, and titulus is diminished from it in Latin. Title, as we say, is like a little sun, for the sun illu-

myrkt, þá lýsir svá titull bók, ef fyrir er ritinn, eða orð, ef yfir er settr.

minutes what was dark, so the ‘tittle’ (title) casts light on the book if it is written in the front of the book, or on the word, when it is written above.

### 中文意译

上标号（写作<sup>-</sup>或<sup>~</sup>）不是一个字母，而是一个速写标记，用于表示多个其他字母。有时它可以代表一个单独的字母，有时则表示字母组合。我基本用它代表 m，或 n<sup>(~)</sup>，有时也可以表示 er，这时候要写成这个形式：<sup>~</sup>。对于这个字母的用法我只能提这样一点：只要合情合理，上标号可以解读成任何字母。不过，上标号（Tittle）这个名字却有些深意，虽然这个名字并不像其他字母的那样能给出音值的信息。上标号的拉丁文 títlus 是 Títan 的指小词，而 Títan 是太阳神的名字。标题（title 和 tittle 是同源的）就像一个太阳一样，太阳照亮了黑暗，而标题则照亮了书籍。标题写在书的前面，等写到单词的前面，也即单词上面时，标题就变成了上标号了。

Staf þann, er flestir menn kalla þorn, þann kalla ek af því heldr the, at þá er þat atkvæði hans í hverju máli, sem eptir lifir nafnsins, er ór er tekinn raddirstafr ór nafni hans, sem alla hefi ek samhljóðendr samða í þat mark nú, sem ek reit snemma í þeira umrœðu. Skal þ standa fyrri í stafrófi en titull, þó at ek hafa síðarr umrœðu um hann, því at hann er síðarst í fundinn. En af því fyrr um titul, at hann var áðr í stafrófi, ok ek lét hann þeim fylgja í umrœðu, er honum líkir þarnask sína jartein. Höfuðstaf thesins rít ek hvergi nema í vers upphafi, því at hans atkvæði má eigi œxla, þó at hann standi eptir raddirstafr í samstöfun.

The letter, which most men call *born*, I would prefer to call it *the*, so that its sound in every context will be what is left of the name when the vowel is removed from it, as I have now arranged all the consonants in this way, as I wrote earlier in the treatise. *þ* shall stand before the Tittle letter in the alphabet, even though I have discussed it later, since it is the last to be brought forward. And because Tittle was already in the alphabet, I let it follow those which as well lack a sound value of their own. I do not write the capital letter of the, except at the beginning of a verse, since its sound cannot be lengthened, even when it stands after the vowel in the syllable.

### 中文意译

被人们称为 born 的字母（þ），我习惯于称之为 the，这样在任何情况下，这个字母的发音就是移去其名字中元音后剩下来的部分，这和我之前命名辅音的方式一致，参考论文的前述部分。þ 在字母表里处于上标号的前面，虽然我先讨论了上标号，这是因为 þ 在字母表的最后，上标号则跟着其他那些没有自己的音值的一起讨论。在开头之外的地方，我不会用到 þ 的大写形式，因为它的音长不能延长，即便它处于元音之后。

### 语法

#### 1. samða

semja ‘arrage’ 过去分词的异体形式。

Nú þó at ek hafa mjök skyndiliga mælt um höfuðstafanna rit, þeira er fyr tvá skal einn vera, þá kalla ek eigi rangt né illa ritit, þó at hinir tveir sé þar heldr ritnir, er hvárgi er höfuðstafr, er þó vilja ek heldr einn staf ríta, þar sem bæði stoðar jafn-mikit einn ok [tveir], til þess, sem ek sagða, at rit verði minna ok skjótara ok bókfell drjúgara..

Now even though I have spoken in haste about the writing of capital letters, which will alone represent two letters, and I do not call it wrongly or badly written even if there are two letters written, which are not capital ones. But I will prefer to write one letter, when both of them have an equal sound value, so that, as I said, the writing can be shorter and quicker and parchment can be saved.

### 中文意译

即便我已经简要说明了大写字母的用法，也即用来代表两个字母，不过写出两个小写字母也没有问题。当两个字母的音值一样时，我更愿意写一个大写字母，这样书写得更快，也更节省纸张。

En þat veit ek eigi, hvat þá skal at hafa, ef svá illa verðr, at enn høggsk nøkkurr í ok mælir svá: “þar sem þú rítr høfuðstaf einn” kveðr hann, ef hann ræðr þat, “eða samhljóðendr tvá eins konar samfelda í einni ok inni sòmu samstøfu, segir þú, þar vil ek hvárki ríta samhljóðendr tvá né høfuðstaf einn, til þess at auka atkvæðit, né enn heldr þann, sem eigi sé høfuðstafr, til þess at minka. Heldr rít ek einn ins sama konar jafnan, ok eigi høfuðstaf nema í upphafi orðs ok vers, ok kveð [ek] svá mjók eða lítt at hverjum, sem ek ræð síðan, eða eigi rœki ek, at ek kveða jafnmjók at öllum.”

But I would not know what to do, and it would be unfortunate, if someone breaks in and says so: “Where you write a capital letter”, if he decides to say, “or two consonants of the same quality in one and the same syllable, as you say, I will write neither two consonants nor one capital letter to lengthen the pronunciation, nor will I use a letter that is not capitalized to shorten its sound. I prefer to write them all the same and not use a capital letter except at the beginning of a word of a verse, and I pronounce each word as long or as short as I wish, or I will not care if I pronounced them all the same.”

### 中文意译

不过，若是有人提出像下面这样的观点的话，那么很遗憾，我对此无话可说了。他如是说：如你所说，你用大写字母表示同一个音节中两个同质的音，不过我既不用两个小写字母，也不用一个大写字母来延长发音，也不用小写字母表示短辅音，我更愿意在所有地方都写成一个样子，只在句首的地方用大写。我无所谓字母发音的长短，就算把它们读成一样长的也无所谓。

### 语法

#### 1. høggsk nøkkurr í

høggvask í 有一种比喻的用法，表示“唐突地打断；突然开始某个话题”，和英语 ‘break in’ 类似。

Hvat þá skal at hafa, kvað ek -hvæt þá nema sýna honum svá skýr dømi þeira greina, er hann skilr engvar áðr vera, at þá þykkisk hann of seinn verða til at mæla sjálfr á móti sér ok verða fyrri at bragði [en] þeir, er ella m[y]nd[i] fífla hann ok kalla, sem væri spakara, ef þegði. Nú eru hér þau dømi, er bráðafangs fundusk þeir, en síðan nøkkuru ljósligar til máls færð ok skilningar: ú bé, Ube; secr, sekr; hó dó, hødo; áfarar, afarar; þagat, þagat; ql, ql; frame, frame; uina, uina; crapa, crapa; huer, huer; fús, fús; sceót, sceót.

What then can be done, I said – only to show him such clear examples of the differences which he never understands before, that then he will find it too late to speak against himself and will hurry to take back his words to get ahead before those who may otherwise mock him and say he would be wiser if he kept silent. Now here are the examples which are found in great haste, and are presented for more clarity: ú bé, Ube; secr, sekr; hó dó, hødo; áfarar, afarar; þagat, þagat; ql, ql; frame, frame; uina, uina; crapa, crapa; huer, huer; fús, fús; sceót, sceót.

### 中文意译

对此，我只能给出下列明晰的例子展示长短辅音的区别，这些例子自然是闻所未闻的，看完之后他必然追悔莫及，想要收回自己的话，不然，他就要受智者的嘲笑，说他还是不说话为好。下面就是这些例子：ú bé, Ube; secr, sekr; hó dó, hødo; áfarar, afarar; þagat, þagat; ql, ql; frame, frame; uina, uina; crapa, crapa; huer, huer; fús, fús; sceót, sceót.

### 语法

#### 1. þykkisk hann of seinn verða ...

þykkja 的反身式的典型用法，提升的主语和感受者一致，均为 hann, ‘he thinks he is too late ...’.

## 2. verða fyrri at bragði en þeir ...

比喻性的说法，字面意思 ‘become former to draw (back his words) then they ...’，即 ‘draw back his words before they ...’

## 3. síðan nökkr

nökkr 的属格作副词用，表示“大概”。类似的说法还有 svá nökkr 等。

Ú bé þat eru tvau nöfn tveggja bókstafa, en Uþe þat er eins manns eitt nafn. Secr er skógarmaðr, en sekr er ílát. Hó dó, þá er Hølgatroll<sup>6</sup>dó, en heyrði til høðo, þá er þórr bar hverinn. [...] Betra er hverjum fyrr þagat, en annarr hafi þagat. Eigi eru ql ql at einu. Meiri þykkir stýrimannsns frame, en þess er piljurnar byggvir frame. Sá er mestr guðs uína, er mest vill til uína. Vaða opt til kirkju crapa, þó at þar fái leið crapa. Huer kona ok [huer] karlmaðr skyldu þess fús, sem guð er fús. Þá munu þau till góðra verka sceót ok hafa guðs hylli sceór.

Ú bé are the names of two letters, but uBe is the name of a man. Convicted (secr) is an outlaw, but sack (sekr) is a bag. The high died (Hó dó) when Holgatroll died, but you could hear the handle (høðo), when Thor carried the kettle. [...] It is better for every man to be silent (þagat) first than he is silenced (þagat) by other men. Not all (ql) ale (ql) are the same. The steersman's fame (frame) is greater than those who sleep on the forward (frame) deck. He is the greatest of god's friends (uína) who will work (uína) most for him. People often wade to church through thawed snow (crapa), even though that would produce a hard (crapa) journey. Every (Huer) woman and every (huer) man should be willing (fús) for what gods desire (fús). Then they shall be quick (sceót) to do good things and quickly (sceór) enjoy the grace of god.

## 中文意译

ú bé 是两个字母的名字，而 Uþe 是男子名；secr 意思是“被判罚流亡的人”，而 sekr 是“袋子”的意思；hó dó 说的是“高人之死”，而 høðo 是“挂水壶的钩子”；【原文漏掉了 áfarar 和 afarar 比较的例子，这两个词分别是介词 á 和 af 和 for ‘journey’ 构成的合成词。】þagat 是“保持安静”的意思，而 þagat 是“使人安静”的意思；ql 指的是“麦酒”，而 ql 意思是“全部”；frame 是人的“名声”，而 frame 是“在前面”的意思；uína 是“朋友”的复数属格，但 uína 是“工作”的不定式；crapa 是“融雪”的意思，而 crama 意思是“艰辛”；huer 和 huer 分别是“所有人”的阴性和阳性形式；fús 和 fús 分别是“愿意”的中性复数和阳性单数形式；sceót 是“快速”的形容词，但 sceór 却是“快速”的副词。

【注：ú bé 今形式不变，Uþe 今作 Ubbi; secr 今作 sekkr, sekkr 今作 sekkr; hó dó 今作 há dó, høðo 今作 hoðdu, 原形 hadda; áfarar 今形式不变，原形 áfør, afarar 今作 affarar, 原形 affør; þagat 今形式不变，原形 þegja, þagat 今作 þagatt, 原形 þegga; ql 今形式不变，ql 今作 qll, 原形 allr; frame 今作 frami, frame 今作 frammi; uína 今作 vina, 原形 vinr, uína 今作 vinna; crapa 今作 krapa, 原形 krapi, crapa 今作 krappa, 原形 krappr; huer 今作 hver, huer 今作 hverr; fús 今形式不变，fús 今作 fúss; sceót 今作 skjótt, sceór 今作 skjótt。】

Nú um þann mann, er ríta vill eða nema at váru máli ritit, annat tveggja helgar þýðingar eða lög eð[a] áttvísí eða svá hverigi er maðr vill skynsamliga nytsemi á bók nema eð[a] kenna, enda sé hann svá litillátr í fróðleiksástinni, at hann vili nema lítla skynsemi heldr en engva, þá er á meðal verðr innar meiri, þá lesi hann þetta kápítúlum vandliga, ok bœti, sem í morgum stqðum mun þurfa, ok meti viðleitni mína en várkynni ókœnsku, hafi stafróf þetta, er hér er áðr ritit, unz

Now for any man who wishes to write or learn our written language, either for sacred writings or laws or genealogies or whatever useful knowledge that man will rationally learn or know from books, if he is humble in his love of knowledge so that he will gain a little wisdom than none when he is among more matters, then let him read this chapter carefully, and improve it, as it would need in many places, appreciate my efforts but excuse my ignorance, and use the alphabet which

<sup>6</sup> 全名 Þorgerðr Hølgatrolla，在挪威受人尊敬的一个女守护神形象。见于挪威王列传 (Heimskringla)。

hann fær þat, er honum líkar betr:

has been written here, until he gets one that he likes better:

### 中文意译

对于任何一个求知若渴的人来说，若是他想要书写或是阅读我们的书面语，不管是为了阅读宗教典籍或律法，还是为了了解家谱或者其他任何书本上可提供的一切有用的知识，只要他对知识抱有虔敬的爱，想要借此获得一些智慧以面对未来更多的事务，那么就应该请他好好读一读这篇文章，修订其中的错误，尊重我的努力而原谅我的疏忽，在更好的字母表提出之前，使用这套字母吧：

a à	q Þ	e è	i i	o ò	ø ð	u ù	y ý	b b	c k	d d	f f
g G	g	h	l l	m m	n n	p p	r r	s s	t t	x	þ

# 第五章 中世纪手稿选读

本章节主要介绍一些基础的中世纪手稿判读知识。在之前的章节中，我们采用的都是经过标准正字法修正的文稿。编者在组织这些文字时，有意将它们向现代的冰岛语正字法靠拢以方便阅读。现在，我们将直接阅读一部分原始手稿，手稿中的记载和我们之前看到的“标准化”的文本有几个主要的不同：

1. 字体不同。我们将认识加洛林手写体（Carolingian minuscule）及其变体。
2. 大量省略、缩写、连写。为了节省纸张，这是中世纪手稿的特点。我们将认识一些常见的速写记号。
3. 粗糙的正字法。在中世纪手稿中，许多发音上的细节并没有体现到文字中，例如字母不分清浊长短等。

## 5.1 基础知识

### 5.1.1 字体

绝大多数古诺尔斯语的手稿的成书时间都在 1100 年后，当时在欧洲大陆流行的字体是所谓的“加洛林体”，这是一种清晰、易于掌握的古拉丁文小写体，由统治法兰克王国的加洛林王朝最先推广，也因此得名。

加洛林体主要是用于书写拉丁文的，但伴随着宗教和文化的影响，日耳曼地区也开始使用这种字体。当然，随之而来的问题就是拉丁字母并不能表示日耳曼语中所有的音，例如擦音 þ 和 ð 就没有对应的字母。英国人最早解决了这个问题，他们重新结合了卢恩字母和拉丁字母补充了一部分拉丁语没有的字母，并且改进出了一套适合他们语言的字体：岛屿体（Insular script）。古英语的音系和古诺尔斯语有许多相似之处，于是，当时的北欧人从英国人那里借来了表示日耳曼语特有音素的字母，并对加洛林体做了改动，这种字体后来称为哥特体的前身，称为‘praegothica’，即“早期哥特体”。早期哥特体相比加洛林体而言横向间距更加紧致，字母仅靠在一起，连写和合写字母很多，笔锋尖锐。

下图从上到下分别是加洛林体、岛屿体和早期哥特体的样例（理想情况），当然由于中世纪的正字法问题以及各种字体存在的变体，这还不是我们手稿中看到的情况。读者通过此图大致了解各字体的基本样貌即可，请不要把它当成某种标准：

Carolingian	æ b c d e f g h i i k l m n o p q r s t u      x y
Insular	æ b c d e f g h i i k l m n o p q r s t u v þ x þ z
Protogothic	æ b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

在下一节的手稿中，我们遇到的主要也是早期哥特体，一些字形和上图中的情况还有一定的区别，值得注意的几点是：

1. i/j、u/v 区分不明显。准确来说此时的手稿还不区分 i/j 以及 u/v, i 和 j 都写作 i, 类似于希腊字母 iota; u 和 v 都写作 v, 但底部不如 v 那么尖锐。有时 i 会写到字母右上角;
2. d 写作 ð, 和岛屿体类似;
3. f 写作 f, 它和现代字母的区别在于左边的一竖延伸到基准线下方;
4. s 总是写作 f, 这称为‘long s’, 和 l 容易搞混;
5. t 写作 t, 和 c 类似, 这也是从岛屿体中借来的;
6. þ 和 ð 基本和现在的字母形状相似, 其中 ð 实际上是在 ð 的基础上加了一条横杠。不过注意, 现代字母中这条横杠是直的, 手稿中这条杠在收笔时常向左下方弯曲, 形成一个钩子状的符号。这个钩子有时候会靠到 ð 上, 形成一个小圆圈;

7. 从岛屿体中借来了字母 *p*, 这个字母叫作 ‘vend’，由卢恩字母演变而来，音值相当于 *v* 或者 *u*，它主要用在词首；
8. *y* 写作 *ŷ*，顶上的一点使之与 *p* 更好地区分开。

### 5.1.2 合体字

在中世纪的手稿中，有时会把多于一个字母的合成一个字形，这称为合体字（Ligature）。最典型的例子就是英语字母 *W*，它就是 *VV* 或者 *UU* 的合体字。有两个合体字比较重要：

1. *ꝑ*

这是 *a* 和 *u/v* 的合体字，如 ‘auka’ 写作 *ꝑka*.

2. *ꝑ*

这个字母称为半 *R* (*R rotunda*)。它一开始是和 ‘o’ 合写的，如 *oziŋin*，后来，它也可以和任何右半部分是圆型的字母合写，如 ‘b, p’ 等。

### 5.1.3 速写记号

为了加快书写速度和节省纸张，许多单词被缩写、省略或用记号代替，本书把这些记法统称为速写记号（Scribal abbreviation）。一些通用的记号如下表所示，很多记号表达的含义在各种语言中是通用的：

记号	意义	说明
h	hann	快速缩写人称代词
þ	þat	快速缩写指示代词
k	konungr	快速缩写专有名词
j	ok	形如 7，通用的速记符号，表示“和”
ȝ	maðr	用卢恩字母的名字快速缩写常见名词
m̄	maðr	用首尾字母快速缩写常见名词
mʒ/m;	með	ʒ 是拉丁语中用来缩写 et 的字母，在古诺尔斯语中表示相近的音值 eð, ; 和 ; 形近
t̄	til	实际上相当于在 t 上方简写了一个 i
f̄	skal	由 f 向 l 连笔，省略了中间两个字母
ō	m/n	上横杠，表示一个含鼻音的音节，如 nēa ‘nema’
ð/ð/ð	r/ir/er/ri	闪电状或类似于 7 的符号，表示一个含 r 的音节，常见于词尾，如 marg ‘margir’
ö	ra/ar	形如 w 的符号，实际上是加洛林体字母 a 变体 (a)，表示 ar 或 /ra，如 bē ‘bera’

### 5.1.4 正字法

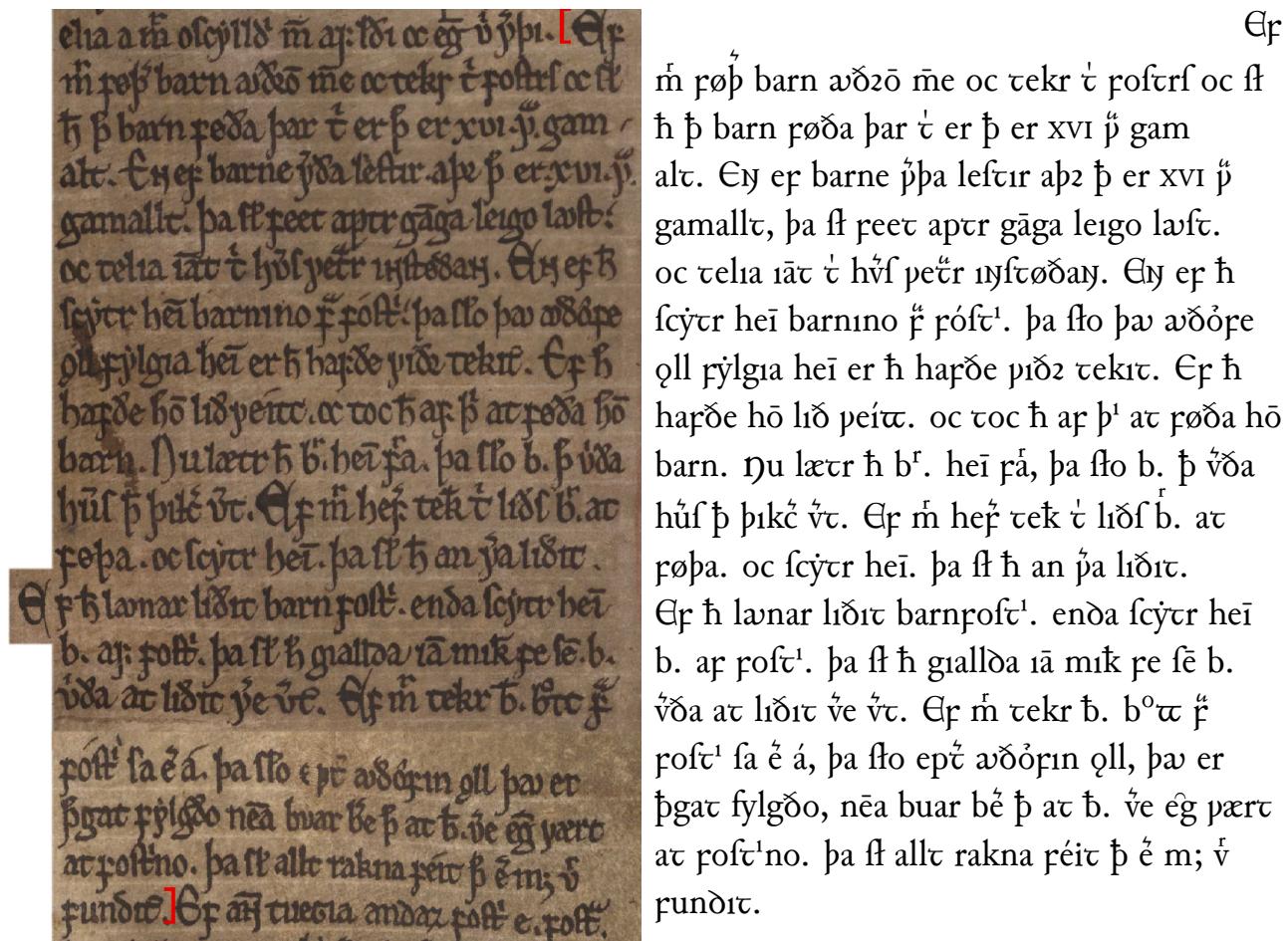
了解了字体和记号之后，读者还需要对中世纪的正字法（更准确地来说，是书写习惯）有基本的认识：

1. 长音。中世纪手稿大多数不标记长音，用 ‘~’ 标记长音的情况罕见；
2. 双辅音。常用大写字母表示双辅音，但这个大写字母和小写字母等大。如 legja = leggja,
3. 弱读辅音。非重读的/u/和/i/基本写作 o 和 e，因此手稿中的词尾和教材中的略有区别；
4. 变元音。变元音的记号在手稿中比较混乱，大致有以下几点规律：
  - (a). ø 可写作 eo, ø, o, ey 等；
  - (b). œ 可写作 œ, ao, au, o 等；
  - (c). æ, e 可写作 e, e, æ 等；

5. 常用 c 代表 k 音。一般和元音连用时比较常见，如 oc = ok, calla = kalla,
6. þ 和 ð 常混用。

## 5.2 例文

下面的例文摘录自灰天鹅法典 (Grágás, Grey Goose Laws)，这是 13 世纪中期的一本法典。手稿节选自冰岛学者 Árni Magnússon 整理的 AM 334 fol 系列<sup>1</sup>。下面节选的法案 (AM 334 fol :: 24r) 属于“赡养法” (Ómaga Bálkur<sup>2</sup>) 的部分，是关于代养孩子的：



在这里，我们看到许多熟悉的记号，但也有一些是没有见过的或不清楚的，还有一些字形难以分辨。下面是转写本段时的一些难点：

1. foðr; foða: 这两个词的不定式都是 foða，可见当时 þ 和 ð 仍然混用。
2. aððo: 这里出现了两个合体字：a 和 ð，其中 ð 比较难以分辨。读者比较后面的 handrit 中出现的 ð 就会发现，这里的 ð 后面好像增加了一个小圆圈，这正是和 ð 合写时留下的。另外，这个词中的 au 对应的实际上是 o，因此 aððo = oðrum，这只能依靠读者对古诺尔斯语的知识解决。
3. m̄e: 这个词在 m 上添加了一个横杠，因此相当于缩略了一个鼻音音节。一般来说，如果被缩略的词的首字母是 m 的话，一般都是 maðr，结合词尾的 e 可以判断这个词是 maðr 的复数与格 manni.

<sup>1</sup> 扫描件可见 [https://myndir.handrit.is/file/Handrit.is/AM%20334%20fol./52/SECONDARY\\_DISPLAY](https://myndir.handrit.is/file/Handrit.is/AM%20334%20fol./52/SECONDARY_DISPLAY)

<sup>2</sup> ómagi 或 úmagi 指的是不能独立生活的人，如小孩、老人、贫民等。法律规定自由民有赡养他们的义务。

4. Þ: 这个词比较难判断，它是 vetr 的复数属格 vetra，我们可以看到只有首字母以及上标表示的 ra 保留了下来，中间的 et 被省略了，但数词 + vetra gamall 是古诺尔斯语表示年龄的固定表达，因此可以如此缩写。
5. feet: fé 和后缀 it，这里的正字法对判读造成一定的困难。
6. þoſcr<sup>t</sup>: foſtri，注意最后一个 i 写成了上标形式以进一步节省空间。
7. flo: skulu，注意它和 fl 的区别，复数词尾由 o 提示。
8. aðóþe: 字典形一般记作 auð-hæfi，这个词发生了进一步的音变，因此判读困难。它的字面义是“适合某人的财富”，因此表示财产。
9. þiðz: viðr，这是介词 við 的另一种形式。
10. b.: 我们发现这里出现了一个新的缩写，代指上文重复出现的 barn.
11. b.: 表示 búi 的复数 búar，这个词是“邻居”的意思，在冰岛自由邦时期，邻居常作为旁证人出庭，因此在法律文献中经常出现这个词。注意这个词和 barn 的缩写有所区分。
12. b<sup>o</sup>w: 表示 brott，现写作 braut.
13. e<sup>g</sup>: 表示 eigi，这里的圆弧形记号只能提示读者这个词被缩略了，但并没有指出缩略的方式，读者必须结合语境和语言知识判断。

有一些字体也稍显独特，不过总体来说不影响阅读，例如大写的 E 写作 Ē 或 E，大写的 N 写作 Nj 等等。有些写法是受其他字体影响所致，例如大写字母就和安色尔体（Uncial，一种全大写字母的字体，过去曾用于抄写拉丁语和希腊语）相似，也有一些是早期哥特体特有的装饰性笔画。对于各种字体的演变历史和特点的研究不在我们的讨论范围内，因此这里不详细展开。

将正字法进一步规范化后的结果如下所示，我们根据法律文书的特点进行了分段：

ÓMAGA BÁLKR  
K 141. Um barn fóstr

Ef maðr fœðir barn qðrum manni ok tekr til fóstrs, ok skal hann þat barn fœða þar til er þat er XVI vetra gamalt.

En ef barni verða lestir áðr þat er XVI vetra gamalt, þá skal fœit aprt ganga leigulaust ok telja jamnt til hvers vetrar innstæðann.

En ef hann skýtr heim barninu frá fóstri, þá skulu þau auðhæfi qll fylgja heim er hann hafði viðr tekit.

Ef hann hafði honum lið veitt, ok tok hann af því at fœða honum barn. Nu lætr hann barn heim fara, þá skulu búar þat virða, hvers þat þykkir vert.

Ef maðr hefir tekit til liðs barn at fœða, ok skýtr heim, þá skal hann án vera liðit.

Ef hann launar liðit barnfóstri, enda skýtr heim barn af fóstri, þá skal hann gjalda jamn-mikit fé sem búar virða at liðit væri vert.

Ef maðr tekr barn braut frá fóstri sá er á, þá skulu eptir auðhæfin qll þau er þangat fylgðu, nema búar beri þat, at barn væri eigi vært at fóstrinu, þá skal allt rakna fœit þat er með var fundit.

DEPENDENTS SECTION  
Chapter 141. On child fostering

If a man raises a child for another person and undertakes fostering (for him), then he is to raise that child until he is sixteen years old.

But if defects befall the child before he is sixteen years old, the money (paid for fostering) is to go back without interest and it should be calculated in equal amounts for each year.

And if he sends the child home from fostering, then all the possessions that the child owns are to go home with him.

If he has come to his aid and therefore raises the child for him, now that he has sent the child home, then the neighbors shall assess what they think the service was worth.

If he has undertaken (the duty) of fostering and (now) sends the child home, then he is freed from the duty.

If he (wishes) to reward the fostering-father for his service since he has sent the child home from fostering, then he is to pay the same amount of money that the neighbors think the service was worth.

If the parent takes the child away from fostering, then all the resources that went there with the child are to remain unless neighbors give a verdict that the child could not live there. In that case, all the investments found for the child's

keep are to be paid over.

## 中文意译

### 赡养法

#### 第一百四十一章 收养子女

- 一、收养人替他人抚养子女的，应将子女抚养至 16 岁。
- 二、养子女不满 16 岁而出现残疾的，收养人应将送养人支付的财物退回。退回的钱按年等量累加，且不计利息。
- 三、收养人将养子女送回生父母时，养子女拥有的财产应一并送回。
- 四、收养人帮助他人抚养子女的，当收养人将养子女送回时，收养人的邻居应评估其抚育的成本。
- 五、收养人为帮助他人而替其抚养子女的，当其将养子女送回时，收养关系即解除。
- 六、收养人将养子女送回生父母后，若生父母愿为其支付报酬的，则应按收养人邻居所评估的价值支付酬金。
- 七、生父母将子女从养父母处带走的，则随子女送到养父母处的财物都留在养父母处，但邻居裁定养父母未能善待养子女的情况除外。此时，这些财物应退还给生父母，但生父母仍应补偿收养期间支出的费用。

## 语法

这篇法律文献有一定难度。值得注意的是，这段文字的主语不是很清楚，收养人、送养人以及孩子都可以用第三人称代词 *hann* 指代，这对句意的判读造成了一定困扰。

下面分条目解释一些难点：

### 第一条

#### 1. fœða barn qðrum manni

复数与格 *qðrum manni* 表示受惠的对象，与格起到的作用类似于英文的 ‘for’.

#### 2. taka til

*taka* 能和许多介词构成丰富的含义。*taka til* 和英语 ‘take to’ 含义也有相似之处，主要表示 “开始做，承担” 等。

### 第二条

#### 1. lestir verða barni

*lestir* 是 i-词干阳性名词 *løster* 的复数，表示 “缺陷、残疾” 等含义。

*verða* 接与格时表示 “发生”，与格提示发生的对象，相当于 ‘happen to, befall’.

#### 2. leigulaust

*leigu-lauss* 的副词形式。*leiga* 指的是记利息的钱，它的反义词是 *instæða*，这个词在下一句也出现了。

### 第四条

#### 1. hvers þat þykkir vert

*vert* 是形容词 *verðr* ‘worth’ 的中性强变化形式，这个形容词的补语要用属格，因此疑问词采用 *hvers*. 此外这句话省略了系动词 *vera*，其最完整的形式是 ‘*hvers þat þykkir búum vera vert*’.

### 第五条

#### 1. án vera

直译为 ‘be without’，它有时可以延伸为 “从... 中之脱身”，类似于 ‘free from’. 在本句中，*án vera liðit* 的 *liðit* 就指的是抚养孩子这件事，因此这个短语可以理解为尽到了抚养的义务/责任。结合上文看，指的就是抚养关系的结束。

### 第六条

#### 1. enda

enda 是一个语义比较微妙的介词，它一般用在这样的句型中：

A, enda B 其中 A 和 B 是两个分句

根据 B 中动词的语气不同，enda 主要表示两种含义：

(a). 虚拟式

表示“在 A 句的基础上，假定发生 B 句，则...”。这种情况下一般还会再接一个分句 ‘þá ...’，此时 enda 表示条件，类似于‘in case that, supposing that’。

(b). 直陈式

此时的 enda 和‘and’比较类似，用于承接句子。但是 enda 略有一点表示原因的意思，表示 A、B 两句在逻辑上是顺畅的。

由于 skýtr 是直陈式，这里的 enda 不能理解为表条件，而应认为是大致表示承接和因果。这里的意思是，“养父母将子女送回”和“生父母支付报偿”是逻辑上关联的。另外，注意 enda 前后两句的主语不同，第二个分句的主语是前一个句子中的‘barnfóstri’。

## 2. fé sem búar virða at liðit væri vert

注意 sem 引导的定语从句中的宾语从句：virða at ‘assess that ...’，liðit 是宾语从句的主语。

## 第七条

### 1. sá er á

这里的 á 不是介词而是 eiga 的第三人称单数现在时，这里 eiga 表示的是亲缘关系：eiga barn. sá 与句子的主语 maðr 相对应，因此 maðr sá er á 表示‘the man who owns (the child) = the father of the child’。

## 第六章 冰岛历史选读

本章对冰岛的历史进行简要的介绍，主要包括冰岛的发现、冰岛的定居情况、基督教的传入以及一些著名的冰岛人的成就——格陵兰岛和“文兰”（Vinland）的发现等。

### 6.1 移民书（Landnámabók）选读

移民书（Landnámabók, Book of Settlement）是一部冰岛的谱系学著作，它最早由著名冰岛学者 Ari Porgilsson 在 12 世纪早期编写，详细描述了挪威人在 9 世纪和 10 世纪挪威人在冰岛的定居情况。

移民书是关于冰岛早期历史的主要来源之一。它共分为 5 个部分，超过 100 多章，记录了 1400 多个定居点和 400 多个冰岛人的宗谱，包括定居者的名字、家庭、财产和土地所有权。移民书另还包括有关冰岛早期社会和文化的其他信息，例如早期定居者如何建立家庭、养育孩子、种植作物和养殖动物。移民书也涉及冰岛的法律和政治制度。

本章节选了移民书的前言和第一章的部分内容，主要介绍了冰岛的发现过程，部分内容有删改。

Í aldarfarsbók þeiri, er Beda prestr heilagr gerði<sup>1</sup>, er getit eylands þess, er Týli heitir ok á bókum er sagt, at liggi sex dægra sigling í norðr frá Bretlandi. Þar sagði hann eigi koma dag á vetr ok eigi nóttr á sumar, þá er dagr er sem lengstr. Til þess ætla vitrir menn þat haft, at Ísland sé Týli kallat, at þat er víða á landinu, er sól skínn um nætr, þá er dagr er sem lengstr, en þat er víða um daga, er sól sér eigi, þá er nóttr er sem lengst. En Beda prestr andaðist sjau hundruð þrjátigi ok fimm árum eftir holdgan dróttins várs, at því er ritat er, ok meir en hundraði ára fyrr en Ísland byggðist af Norðmönnum.

En áðr Ísland byggðist af Noregi, váru þar þeir menn, er Norðmenn kalla Papa. Þeir váru menn kristnir, ok hyggja menn, at þeir hafi verit vestan um haf, því at fundust eftir þeim bækr írskar, bjöllur ok baglar ok enn fleiri hlutir, þeir er þat mátti skilja, at þeir váru Vestmenn. Enn er ok þess getit á bókum enskum, at í þann tíma var farit milli landanna.

In the book *On the Condition of Time*, which the Venerable Priest Bede wrote, there is mention of an island called Thule, and it is said in books that it should lie six days' sailing to the north of Britain. He says that day never comes in winter, nor night comes in summer, when the day is longest. This is the reason why the wise men suppose that Thule must be Iceland, for there are many places where the sun shines at night there when the day is longest, but there are also many places where the sun isn't to be seen during the day, when the night is as longest. Bede the Priest breathed his last 735 years after the incarnation of our Lord, according to written sources, and more than 120 years before Iceland was settled by the Norse men.

But before Iceland was settled from Norway there were men there, which the Norwegians called papar. They were Christians and people believe that they must have come across the ocean from the west, because Irish books, bells, croziers, and lots of other things were found after them, which shall clarify the fact that they must have been Irish. And it is recorded in English books that there were sailings between these lands at the time.

#### 中文意译

可敬者贝德在他的著作《论时间》中提到了一个名为图勒的岛屿，据说，从不列颠岛向北航行六天就可以到达那里。贝德说在那里的寒冬终日不见白昼，而盛夏则终日不见黑夜。这就是为什么智者们认为图勒一定是冰岛，因为在冰岛的许多地方，白昼最长之时依旧可在夜晚见到太阳，而黑夜最长之时哪怕白天也无法看到阳光。有文字记载，可敬者贝德在我们的主耶稣降生后 735 年去世，那时距离挪威人

<sup>1</sup> 可敬者贝德，又称圣贝德（672-735），英国编年史家及神学家。前文所述的书 aldarfarsbók 指的可能是其著作 *De temporum ratione* (*The Reckoning of Time*) 或 *De Temporibus* (*On Time*)，两书中都涉及贝德对宇宙、世界的思考，且都提及过古代欧洲传说中的极北之岛图勒。

在冰岛定居还有 120 多年。

但是在冰岛被挪威人定居之前，那里也有人居住，挪威人称之为“巴帕尔”。这些人是基督徒，人们相信他们是从西方飘洋过海而来，因为在他们之后发现了爱尔兰的书籍、钟、牧杖以及许多其他东西，这些都证明了他们的爱尔兰血统。又据英国的书中记载，当时这些地区之间已有航行。

### 语法

1. er getit eylands þess

geta 接属格名词时除了表示“猜想”外，还有“提及，记录”之义。这里是后者的意思，且使用了被动语态。

2. ætla vitrir menn þat haft haft 在这里亦表示因果，即 ‘consider it is the reason’，修饰 til þess.

Svá er sagt, at menn skyldu fara ór Noregi til Færeys. Nefna sumir til Naddoð víking. En þá rak vestr í haf ok fundu þar land mikit. Þeir gengu upp í Austfjörðum á fjall eitt hátt ok sást um víða, ef þeir sæi reyki eða nökkur líkendi til þess, at landit væri byggt, ok sá þeir þat ekki. Þeir fóru aftr um haustit til Færeys. Ok er þeir sigldu af landinu, fell snær mikill á fjöll, ok fyrir þat kólluðu þeir landit Snæland. Þeir lofuðu mjök landit. Þar heitir nú Reyðarfjall í Austfjörðum, er þeir hófðu at komit. Svá sagði Sæmundr prestr inn fróði.

It is said that some men wanted to sail from Norway to the Faroes. People mention that it was Naddod the Viking. But they drifted west into the ocean and found there a great land. They went ashore in the Eastfjords and went up to a high mountain, and looked around in all directions to see if they could find smoke or any other sign that the land was settled, but they saw nothing. Around autumn they went back to the Faroes. And when they were sailing away from the island, much snow fell on the mountains, so they called the land Snowland. They praised the land much. The place where they arrived in the Eastfjords is now called Reydar-fell, so said Saemund the Learned Priest.

### 中文意译

据说曾有人想从挪威出发前去法罗群岛。其中一个被人称作“维京”那多德。可他们被洋流卷向西边，发现了一片广袤的土地。他们从东部峡湾上岸，攀上一座高山，远眺四周，想寻找炊烟或者其他任何能证明这片土地有人居住的迹象，但是他们什么也没看到。到了秋天，他们返回法罗群岛。就在他们离开时，鹅毛大雪覆盖了山峦，于是他们称其为“雪国”，并对这片土地赞不绝口。据牧师赛蒙德所说，他们在东峡湾登陆的地方就是现在的雷扎山。

### 语法

1. nefna sumir til Naddoð víking 这句话中的 Naddoð víking 不是 til 的宾语，而是 nefna 的宾语，nefna e-t til e-s ‘name sth. as sth.’. til 后省略了 ‘one of them’.

2. rak vestr reka ‘drive’ 的无人称用法，‘to be drifted, tossed’.

Maðr hét Garðarr Svavarsson, sánskr at ætt. Hann fór at leita Snælands at tilvísun móður sinnar framsýnnar. Hann kom at landi fyrir austan Horn it eystra. Þar var þá höfn. Garðarr sigldi umhverfis landit ok vissi, at þat var eyland. Hann var um vetr einn norðr í Húsavík á Skjálfanda<sup>2</sup> ok gerði þar húsi.

Um várit, er hann var búinn til hafs, sleit frá honum

A man named Gardar Svavarsson, Swedish by birth, went out in search of Snowland guided by his mother, who was a prophet. He made land east of Eastern Horn where there was a harbor then. Gardar sailed round the land and knew that it was an island. He stayed there over winter in the north of Husa-bay on Skjalfand and built a house there.

In the spring when he was ready for sailing, a boat drifted

<sup>2</sup> 在今冰岛北部。

mann á báti, er hét Náttfari, ok þræl ok ambátt. Hann byggði þar síðan, er heitir Náttfaravík<sup>3</sup>. Garðarr fór þá til Noregs ok lofaði mjök landit. Eftir þat var landit kallat Garðarshólmur, ok var þá skógr milli fjalls ok fjöru.

### 中文意译

有一个名叫加达尔·斯瓦瓦尔松的瑞典人，在他母亲的建议下出发寻找雪国，她的母亲是一位先知。加达尔在岛的东角岬以东的港口登陆。他绕着这片土地航行一周，于是知道这是一个岛屿。他在斯卡尔法德峡湾的胡萨湾北部度过了一个冬天，并在那里修建了房子。

第二年开春时加达尔准备出海，此时一只船从他的船队里漂走了。船上载有一个男人名叫纳特法利，以及一男一女两个奴隶。纳特法利后来在一个地方定居，那里后来就叫“纳特法利湾”。加达尔返回挪威，对这片土地赞不绝口。此后这片土地就被称为“加达尔岛”，山与海之间有着茂密的丛林。

Flóki Vilgerðarson hét maðr. Hann var víkingr mikill. Hann fór at leita Garðarshólms. Með Flóka var á skipi bóndi sá, er Þórólfr hét, annarr Herjólfur. Faxi hét suðreyskr<sup>4</sup> maðr, er þar var á skipi.

Af Færeysja sigldi hann út í haf með hrafna þá þrjá, er hann hafði blótat í Noregi. Ok er hann létt lausan inn fyrsta, fló sá aftr um stafn, annarr fló í loft upp ok aftr til skips, inn þriði fló fram um stafn í þá átt, sem þeir fundu landit. Þeir kómu austan at Horni ok sigldu fyrir sunnan landit. En er þeir sigldu vestr um Reykjanes<sup>5</sup> ok upp lauk firðinum, svá at þeir sá Snæfellsnes<sup>6</sup>, þá ræddi Faxi um: ”Þetta mun vera mikil land, er vér hófum fundit. Hér eru vatnföll stóri”. Síðan er þat kallaðr Faxaóss<sup>7</sup>.

### 中文意译

有一个名叫弗洛基·维尔格达尔松的人，是一个伟大航海家。他出发寻找加达尔岛。弗洛基的船上还有一个名叫索罗尔夫的农民，另一个名叫赫约尔夫的人，以及一位名叫法克西的赫布里底人。

弗洛基从法罗群岛出发，随船携带了三只乌鸦，这些乌鸦是他在挪威祭祀祝福过的。当他放走第一只乌鸦时，它飞回了船头；第二只则飞到空中，然后又飞回了船上；第三只乌鸦径直从船头上向前飞去，他们就沿着这个方向找到了陆地。他们从东边穿过角岬，然后沿着南岸航行。当他们向西驶过雷克雅内斯岬，海湾一下开阔起来，斯奈弗尔斯内斯岬赫然在目。法克西于是说道：“我们一定发现了一片广袤的土地。这里有很宽阔的河流。”此后这个河口就被称为“法克西河口”。

Þeir Flóki sigldu vestr yfir Breiðafjörð<sup>8</sup> ok tóku þar land, sem heitir Vatnsfjörður við Barðaströnd. Þá var fjörðrinn fullr

away from him with a man called Nattfari aboard, and a slave and a bondswoman. Nattfari settled down there at a place called Nattfari-bay. Gardar sailed back to Norway and praised the land much. After that the land was called Gardar's Isle and there were woods between the mountains and the shores.

There was a man called Floki Vilgerdarson. He was a great viking. He went to search for Gardar's Isle. With Floki on board was a farmer called Thorolf, another called Herjolf, and also a Hebridean called Faxi.

From Faroe he set out with three ravens which he had consecrated in Norway. When he set the first one free it flew back over the stem, but the second raven flew into the air, and then back to the ship, while the third flew ahead over the stem, and it was in that direction that they found land. They came to the Horn from the east, and sailed along the south coast. As they sailed west around Reykjanes and the fjord opened up wide so they could see Snæfellsnes. Then spoke Faxi: ‘It must be a big land we've found. Here are big rivers’. After this (the river's mouth) was called Faxi's Mouth.

Floki and his men sailed west over Breida-fjord and made land at the place now called Vatns-fjord, against Barda-strand.

<sup>3</sup> 同在斯卡尔法德峡湾，胡萨湾在东岸，纳特法利湾在其正西岸，二者隔海相望。

<sup>4</sup> Suðreyjar, ‘Southern isles’, 是维京人对赫布里底群岛的称呼，位于苏格兰西部的大西洋中。

<sup>5</sup> 雷克雅内斯岬，位于冰岛西南部，雷克雅内斯半岛的末端。nes 在古诺尔斯语中就是岬之意。

<sup>6</sup> 字面义“雪山岬”，在雷克雅内斯岬以北，海的对岸处。

<sup>7</sup> 今称 Faxaflói, 字面义‘Faxi Bay’。指位于斯奈弗尔斯和雷克雅内斯两个半岛间的海域。法克西找到的地方实际上不是河口，而是一个大港湾。

<sup>8</sup> 冰岛西部大型浅水湾，在法克西湾以北不远处。

af veiðiskap, ok gáðu þeir eigi fyrir veiðum at fá heyjanna, ok dó allt kvíkfé þeira um vetrinn. Vár var heldr kalt. Þá gekk Flóki upp á fjall eitt hátt ok sá norðr yfir fjöllin fjorð fullan af hafísnum. Því kólluðu þeir landit Ísland, sem þat hefir síðan heitit.

Þeir Flóki ætluðu brott um summarit ok urðu búinir lítlu fyrir vetr. Þeim beit eigi fyrir Reykjanes, ok sleit frá þeim bátinn ok þar á Herjólf. Hann tók þar, sem nú heitir Herjólfshöfn. Flóki var um vetrinn í Borgarfirð<sup>9</sup> ok fundu þeir Herjólf. Þeir sigldu um summarit eftir til Noregs. Ok er menn spurðu af landinu, þá létt Flóki illa yfir, en Herjólfur sagði kost ok löst af landinu, en Þórólfr kvað drjúpa smjör af hverju strái á landinu, því er þeir höfðu fundit. Því var hann kallaðr Þórólfr smjör.

### 中文意译

弗洛基一行向西驶过布雷达湾，在一个叫瓦滕斯峡湾的地方登陆。瓦滕斯峡湾紧挨着巴尔达海滩。当时峡湾里到处都是鱼，他们忙着捕鱼，没有准备好干草，结果所有的牲畜都在冬天都饿死了。接下来的春天也相当寒冷。弗洛基登上一座高山，向北眺望，发现了一片充满浮冰的峡湾。因此他们把这个岛叫做“冰岛”，这个名字流传至今。

弗洛基和手下准备在夏天离开，可他们直到冬天才做好准备。结果，他们的船无法绕过雷克雅内斯岬。一艘载着赫约尔夫的小船漂走了，他最后成功上岸，他登陆的地方后来叫作赫约尔夫港。弗洛基在博尔加峡湾过冬并找到了赫约尔夫。第二年夏天他们返回了挪威。当人们问起这片土地的情况时，弗洛基尽说了一些坏话，但是赫约尔夫则公正地评价了其利弊，而索罗尔夫说他们发现的土地上每一根草都滴着油珠。因此他被人唤作为“黄油”索罗尔夫。

Björnólfr hét maðr, en annarr Hróaldr. Þeir váru synir Hrómundar Gripssonar<sup>10</sup>. Þeir fóru af Þelamork<sup>11</sup> fyrir víga sakir ok staðfestust í Dalsfirði á Fjolum<sup>12</sup>. Sonr Björnólfs var Órn, faðir þeira Ingólfss ok Helgu, en Hróalds sonr var Hróðmarr, faðir Leifs.

En þeir Ingólfur ok Leifr fóstbræðr<sup>13</sup> bjuggu skip mikit, er þeir áttu, ok fóru at leita lands þess, er Hrafna-Flóki hafði fundit ok þá var Ísland kallat. Þeir fundu landit ok váru í

At that time the fjord was full of fish, and they paid no heed to making hay because of fishing, so all their livestock died in the winter. The following spring was rather cold. Then Floki went up to a high mountain and discovered northwards over the mountain, a fjord full of drift ice. Therefore they called the island Iceland, and it's been called ever since.

Floki and his men intended to sail away in summer, but they were only ready shortly before winter. Their ship could not cruise around Reykjanes, and a boat with Herjolf on board broke loose from them. He made land at a place now called Herjolfs-haven. Floki stayed the winter in Borgar-fjorda and they found Herjolf. They sailed to Norway the next summer. And when men asked about the land, Floki spoke ill of it, but Herjolf told the good and the bad of the land, but Thorolf said that butter dropped from every blade of grass in the land which they had discovered. That's why he was called Thorolf Butter.

There was a man called Bjornolf, and another called Hroald. They were sons of Hromund Gripsson. They left Telemark because of manslaughter and took up their abode at Dalsfjord in Fjalar. The son of Bjornolf was Orn, the father of Ingolf and Helga. And the son of Hroald was called Hrodmar, father of Leif.

And the blood-brothers Ingolf and Leif prepared a large ship that they possessed and set out to search the land Raven-Floki had discovered, which by that time was called Iceland. They found the land and stayed the first winter at South-Alftafjord

<sup>9</sup> 法克西湾中部峡湾，位于雷卡雅内斯岬以北。

<sup>10</sup> 传说中的英雄人物，其故事见于萨迦 Hrómundar saga Gripssonar，但其最早的版本今已散佚。

<sup>11</sup> 挪威南部城镇。

<sup>12</sup> 挪威西部的市镇名。达尔峡湾位于其治内。

<sup>13</sup> Foster Brother 除了指养兄弟外，也常指互相结拜的义兄弟。义兄弟用刀刺破手臂使血相融，定为誓约，一人死后另一人会为其复仇。这种兄弟关系在古代北欧十分常见。

Austfjörðum í Álftafirði<sup>14</sup> inum syðra. Þeim virðist landit betra suðr en norðr. Þeir váru einn vetr á landinu ok fóru þá aftr til Noregs.

### 中文意译

又说有一个名叫比约尔诺尔夫的人，还有一个叫赫罗尔德。他们都是是赫罗蒙德·格里普松的儿子。两人因为杀人而离开泰勒马克，定居在菲亚拉尔的达尔峡湾。比约尔诺尔夫的儿子名叫沃尔恩，他生了两个孩子因戈尔夫和赫尔加；赫罗尔德的儿子叫赫罗德马尔，他的儿子名叫莱夫。

因戈尔夫和莱夫是结义兄弟，他们准备了一艘大船，出发寻找“乌鸦”弗洛基发现的土地。那时候它已经被叫作冰岛。他们找到了冰岛，并在东峡湾的南阿尔夫塔峡湾过了第一个冬天。二人觉得冰岛的南边比北边更好。他们在这片土地上度过了一个冬天，之后便返回了挪威。

Eftir þat varði Ingólfur fé þeira til Íslandsferðar, en Leifr fór í hernað í vestrvíking. Hann herjaði á Írland ok fann þar jarðhús mikit. Þar gekk hann í, ok var myrkt, þar til er lýsti af sverði því, er maðr helt á. Leifr drap þann mann ok tók sverðit ok mikit fé af honum. Síðan var hann kallaðr Hjorleifr.

Hjorleifr herjaði víða um Írland ok fekk þar mikit fé. Þar tók hann þraela tíu, er svá hétu: Dufþakr ok Geirrøðr, Skjaldbjörn, Halldórr ok Drafdritr. Eigi eru nefndir fleiri. En eftir þat fór Hjorleifr til Noregs ok fann þar Ingólf, fóstbroður sinn. Hann hafði áðr fengit Helgu Arnardóttur, systur Ingólfss.

### 中文意译

之后，因戈尔夫投入了一大笔资金前往冰岛，而莱夫则跟随海盗们向西远航，在爱尔兰大肆抢劫。一次，他发现了一个巨大的地下暗室，于是探身进去，里面伸手不见五指。突然一把剑的闪光在他的脸上，原来是有人持剑在里面守卫。莱夫杀死了那个人，夺走了他的剑和一大笔钱。从此他被称为赫约尔莱夫，意思是“利剑”莱夫。

赫约尔莱夫将爱尔兰洗劫一空，并且抓走了十个奴隶，他们名叫杜夫萨克、盖尔罗斯、斯卡尔比约恩、哈尔多尔、德拉夫德里特，其他的就不一一列举了。之后，赫约尔莱夫返回挪威，找到了他的兄弟因戈尔夫。此前，莱夫与赫尔加结为夫妻，赫尔加是沃尔恩的女儿，也就是因戈尔夫的妹妹。

### 语法

- varði Ingólfur fé þeira 这里的 varði 是 verja 而非 varða 的过去式。verja 除了有“防御”的意思之外，还有“包裹”的意思（来自另一个词源），故有引申义“投入（资金）”。

Þenna vetr fekk Ingólfur at blóti miklu ok leitaði sér heilla um forlog sín, en Hjorleifr vildi aldri blóta. Fréttin vísaði Ingólfí til Íslands. Eftir þat bjó sitt skip hvárr þeira mága til Íslandsferðar. Hafði Hjorleifr herfang sitt á skipi, en Ingólfur félagsfé þeira, ok lögðu til hafs, er þeir váru búinir.

in the Eastfjords. The land seemed to them to be better in the south than in the north. They spent one winter in the land and then went back to Norway.

Later, Ingolf spent their money on an expedition to Iceland, but Leif went on a viking raid to the west. He harried Ireland and found there a large underground chamber. He went inside and it was dark until a light shone from a sword which a man was holding on. Leif killed the man and took the sword and a lot of money from him. Thereafter he was called Hjorleif (Sword-Leif).

Hjorleif harried wide on Ireland and took much treasure. There he took ten slaves, who are called Dufthak, Geirraud, Skjaldbjorn, Halldor, Drafdrit, more are not named. After that Hjorleif went back to Norway and found Ingolf, his blood-brother. Earlier he had married Helga, Orn's daughter, Ingolf's sister.

That winter Ingolf made a great sacrifice to consult the oracles about his destiny, but Hjorleif would never sacrifice to the gods. The oracle directed Ingolf to go to Iceland. After that, each of these brothers-in-law prepared his ship for the expedition to Iceland. Hjorleif had his war-booty on the ship,

<sup>14</sup> álfir 的字面意思是“天鹅”，至少有三个冰岛峡湾叫作这个名字。这里因戈尔夫抵达的峡湾在冰岛东面，今 Djúpivogur 附近。

Sumar þat, er þeir Ingólfur fóru til at byggja Ísland, hafði Haraldr hárfagri verit tólf ár konungr at Noregi. Þá var líðit frá upphafi þessa heims sex þúsundir vetrar ok sjau tigir ok þrír vetrar, en frá holdgan dróttins átta hundruð ok sjau tigir ok fjögur ár.

### 中文意译

当年冬天，因戈尔夫大举祭祀，以求从神谕中获知自己的命运，而莱夫则从不愿祭祀神灵。神启示因戈尔夫前往冰岛。于是，兄弟二人各自准备了船只，准备前往冰岛。莱夫在船上载满了他自己的战利品，而因戈尔夫则带了他们共同的财产。一切准备就绪，二人驶向大海。

因戈尔夫和赫约尔莱夫准备前往冰岛时，“美发王”哈拉尔德已经统治挪威十二年了。那是创世后的6073年，也即耶稣基督降生后的874年。

### 语法

- leitaði sér heilla um forlög sín leita 的反身式 leitask 或者 leita sér 与本身的含义区别不大，leita sér um 可以翻译为‘explore’。heilla 是 heill ‘good luck’ 的复数属格，此时它尤指从吉兆、神谕中获得的礼物。leita heilla 是常见的说法，表示从占卜祭祀中获得启示。

Þeir höfðu samflot, þar til er þeir sá Ísland. Þá skilði með þeim. Þá er Ingólfur sá Ísland, skaut hann fyrir borð qnd-vegissúlum sínum til heilla. Hann mælti svá fyrir, at hann skyldi þar byggja, er súlurnar kæmi á land. Ingólfur tók þar land, er nú heitir Ingólfshöfði<sup>15</sup>, en Hjörleif rak vestr fyrir land, ok fekk hann vatnfátt. Þá tóku þrælarnir írsku þat ráð at knoða saman mjöll ok smjör ok kölluðu þat óþorstlátt. Þeir nefndu þat minþak<sup>16</sup>. En er þat var tilbúit, kom regn mikil, ok tóku þeir þá vatn á tjoldum. En er minþakit tók at mygla, köstuðu þeir því fyrir borð, ok rak þat á land, þar sem nú heitir Minþakseyrr.

### 中文意译

兄弟二人一起航行，但他们看到冰岛后就分道扬镳了。因戈尔夫将他高椅的支柱扔进海里，以求神示。他决定在支柱登陆的地方定居。他上岸的地方后来被称为“因戈尔夫岬”。而赫约尔莱夫则沿着海岸向西漂流，逐渐喝光了淡水。于是，爱尔兰奴隶们想出了一个办法，他们将面粉和黄油揉在一起，说这种食物不会让人口渴。他们给它起了个名字叫作“闵撒克”。但是，这种食物刚刚做好，天就下起了大雨，他们得以用帐篷接水。闵撒克后来开始长出霉斑，他们就把它扔进了海里。它漂到了岸边，后来这个地方就被称为“闵撒克堤”。

Hjörleifr tók land við Hjörleifshöfða<sup>17</sup>, ok var þar þá fjarðar, ok horfði botninn inn at höfðanum. Hjörleifr létt þar

and Ingolf carried what they held in common, and put out to sea when they were ready.

The summer when Ingolf and Hjorleif went to settle in Iceland, Harald the Fairhair had been for twelve years King of Norway; there had elapsed from the beginning of the world 6073 years, and from the Incarnation of our Lord 874 years.

They sailed together until they saw Iceland, and then they got separated. When Ingolf saw the land, he threw overboard his highseat pillars for an omen. He said that he would settle where the pillars made land. He came ashore where is now called Ingolfs-headland. But Hjorleif drifted west along the coast and ran short of water. Then the Irish slaves made a plan to knead together flour and butter and said it would not give thirst. They called it minthak. But when it was made ready, it started raining heavily, and they collected water on tents. When the minthak began to mould they threw it overboard and it drifted ashore at a place now called Minthakseyr.

Hjörleif made land at Hjörleifs-headland, where there was a fjord and its head stretched to the headland. Hjörleif

<sup>15</sup> 冰岛南部的一块小岬。

<sup>16</sup> 古爱尔兰语中 min 是面粉的意思。

<sup>17</sup> 冰岛南部，在因戈尔夫岬以西约 100 公里处。

gera skála tvá, ok er ɔnnur tóftin átján faðma<sup>18</sup>, en ɔnnur nítján. Hjorleifr sat þar um vetrinn.

En um várit vildi hann sá. Hann átti einn uxu, ok lét hann þrælana draga arðrinn. En er þeir Hjorleifr váru at skála, þá gerði Dufþakr þat ráð, at þeir skyldu drepa uxann ok segja, at skógarbjörn hefði drepit, en síðan skyldu þeir ráða á þá Hjorleif, ef þeir leitaði bjarnarins. Eftir þat sögðu þeir Hjorleifi þetta. Ok er þeir fóru at leita bjarnarins ok dreifðust í skóginn, þá settu þrælarnir at sérhverjum þeira ok myrðu þá alla jafnmarga sér. Þeir hljópu á brott með konur þeira ok lausafé ok bátinn. Þrælarnir fóru í eyjar þær, er þeir sá í haf til útsuðrs, ok bjuggust þar fyrir um hríð.

had two houses built there, and one toft was 18 fathoms long and the other 19 fathoms. Hjorleif spent the winter there.

In the spring he wanted to sow. He had one ox and let his slaves to draw the plow. When Hjorleif and his men were at the house, Dufthak gave the advice that they should kill the ox and say a wood-bear had killed it, then they should set upon Hjorleif, if they went to seek the bear. So they told Hjorleif the story, and when they went out to search the bear and spread out in the woods, the slaves set upon every one of them, and murdered them all, as many men as they were themselves. Then they ran away with their women, chattels and the boat. The slaves went to the islands, which they saw at the sea towards the southwest, and prepared themselves to settle for a while.

### 中文意译

赫约尔莱夫在赫约尔莱夫岬登陆，那里有一个峡湾朝着岬角的方向延伸。赫约尔莱夫在那里建造了两座房子，其中一座有 18 英寻长，另一座有 19 英寻长。赫约尔莱夫在那里过了一个冬天。

第二年春天，赫约尔莱夫决定开垦土地。但他只有一头耕牛，于是就让他的奴隶们来拉犁。一天，趁着赫约尔莱夫和他的手下都在房子里时，杜夫萨克建议奴隶们把牛杀死，然后谎称是一头棕熊咬死了它。这样，要是赫约尔莱夫去找熊的话，他们就有机会对他们下手。于是，他们就把这件事报告给了赫约尔莱夫。当赫约尔莱夫和手下在森林里四散开来寻找那头熊时，奴隶们一一将他们杀害，杀死的人数和他们自己的人数一样多。然后，他们带着赫约尔莱夫的妻子、财物和船只逃往先前在海上看到的西南方的岛屿，并在那里安顿了一段时间。

### 语法

#### 1. skyldu þeir ráða á þá Hjorleif

ráða 接与格时有“承担某事”的含义，ráða á e-n/at e-m 于是有“袭击某人”的意思，和英语 set upon 相似。

Vífill ok Karli hétu þrælar Ingólfss. Þá sendi hann vestr með sjó at leita ɔndvegissúlna sinna. En er þeir kómum til Hjorleifshöfða, fundu þeir Hjorleif dauðan. Þá fóru þeir aftr ok sögðu Ingólfí þau tíðendi. Hann lét illa yfir drápi þeira Hjorleifs. Eftir þat fór Ingólfur vestr til Hjorleifshöfða, ok er hann sá Hjorleif dauðan, mælti hann: "Lítit lagðist hér fyrir góðan dreng, er þrælar skyldu at bana verða, ok sé ek svá hverjum verða, ef eigi vill blóta."

Ingólfur lét búa gróf þeira Hjorleifs ok sjá fyrir skipi þeira ok fjárlut. Ingólfur gekk þá upp á höfðann ok sá eyjar liggja í útsuðr til hafs. Kom honum þat í hug, at þeir mundu þangat hlaupit hafa, því at bátrinn var horfinn. Fóru þeir at leita

Vifil and Karli were the names of the slaves of Ingolf. He sent them west along the shore to look for his highseat pillars. When they came to Hjorleifs-headland, they found Hjorleif dead. Then they turned back to tell Ingolf the tidings. He suffered badly by the death of Hjorleif and his men. After that, he set out west to Hjorleifs-headland, and when he saw Hjorleif dead, he said, "It's a shameful end for a warrior, that slaves should put him to death; but I see it happens to people who won't make sacrifices."

Ingolf had Hjorleif and his men laid in grave and took over his ship and share of money. Then he went up to the top of the headland and saw some islands lying to the southwest in the sea. It occurred to him that the slaves might have escaped there since the boat was missing. They set out to search the

<sup>18</sup> 两臂之长，约合 1.8 米。

þrælanna ok fundu þá þar, sem Eið<sup>19</sup> heitir í eyjunum. Váru þeir þá at mat, er þeir Ingólfur kómu at þeim. Þeir urðu felmtsfullir, ok hljóp sinn veg hverr. Ingólfur drap þá alla. Þar heitir Dufþaksskor<sup>20</sup>, er hann lézt. Fleiri hljópu þeir fyrir berg, þar sem við þá er kennt síðan. Vestmannaeyjar heita þar síðan, er þrælarnir váru drepni, því at þeir váru Vestmenn.

slaves and found them at a place called Eid in the island. They were at meat when Ingolf and his men came to them. They were frightened they fled in all directions. Ingolf killed them all. The place is called Dufthaks-score, where he was killed. Many jumped over a cliff which has been named after them ever since. The place was called Westman Islands where the slaves were killed, because they were from the west.

### 中文意译

因戈尔夫有两个奴隶，名为维菲尔和卡利。他派这两人沿着海岸向西寻找他高椅的支柱。当他们来到赫约尔莱夫岬时，却发现赫约尔莱夫已经死了。于是，他们立刻回去向因戈尔夫报告了这一消息。因戈尔夫对赫约尔莱夫一行的死感到万分悲痛。接着他前往赫约尔莱夫岬，看到他兄弟的尸体后说道：“一个勇士竟被奴隶杀死，何其可悲啊！但是依我看，这种事情就是会发生在不愿祭祀的人身上。”

因戈尔夫将死者埋葬，又掌管了他的船和资财。他爬上岬角的高山，远远望见西南边海上的岛屿。联想到赫约尔莱夫的船已经消失不见，因戈尔夫猜想奴隶们或许已经逃到岛上了。于是，他们出发去找奴隶们报仇，并在岛上一个叫作“艾德”的地方发现了他们。因戈尔夫和手下们杀到时，奴隶们正在吃饭，他们惊慌失措，四散逃跑。因戈尔夫将他们赶尽杀绝。杜夫萨克被杀的地方后来被称为“杜夫萨克之痕”。其他很多奴隶们则从悬崖上跳下，于是这座悬崖也以他们命名。这群奴隶被杀的地方叫作“韦斯特曼纳埃亚尔”，意思是“西方人之岛”，因为这些奴隶来自西方的爱尔兰。

### 语法

#### 1. Lítit lagðist hér fyrir góðan dreng

leggja 的反身式有‘set out, go’的意思。lítið leggsk fyrir e-n 是一个固定短语，最初的意思是说某人做了很小的抵抗/行动等等。后用于形容被杀的人死得耻辱，‘to be easily slain, to come to a shameful end’.

#### 2. sjá fyrir skipi þeira sjá fyrir e-u, 固定短语，意思是“管理” .

#### 3. lézt láta 的反身式，意思是“死” .

#### 4. sem við þá er kennt kenna 除了基本义“知道”之外，也有“命名，称呼”的意思，并常用短语 kenna e-t við e-n ‘call sth. after sb.’ 这里 við 后的宾语“奴隶”被省略了。

Þeir Ingólfur hofðu með sér konur þeira, er myrðir hofðu verit. Fóru þeir þá aftr til Hjorleifshofða. Var Ingólfur þar vetr annan, en um sumarit eftir fór hann vestr með sjó. Hann var inn þriðja vetr undir Ingólfsselli fyrir vestan qlfusá. Pau mis-sari fundu þeir Vífíll ok Karli ɔndvegissúlur hans við Arnarháv<sup>21</sup> fyrir neðan heiði.

Ingólfur fór um várit ofan um heiði. Hann tók sér bústað þar, sem ɔndvegissúlur hans hofðu á land komit. Hann bjó í Reykjardal. Þar eru enn ɔndugissúlur þær í eldhúsi<sup>22</sup>. En Ingólfur nam land milli qlfusár ok Hvalfjarðar fyrir utan Brynjudalsá, milli ok ɔxarár, ok qll nes út.

Ingolf and his men took the widows of the men who had been murdered. They went back to Hjorleifs-headland. Ingolf stayed there for another winter. Next summer he sailed westwards along the coast. He passed the third winter at Ingolfs-mount, west of Olfus-river. At that time, Vifil and Karli found his highseat pillars at Arnar-hill, beneath the heath.

Ingolf traveled down over the moor in the spring. He took up his abode where his highseat pillars had come ashore. He lived in Reykjavik. His highseat pillars are still there in the hall. Ingolf took the vast land between Olfus River and Hvalfjord, south of Brynja-dale, and Oxar Rivers, and all the nesses.

<sup>19</sup> 字面义是地峡的意思。

<sup>20</sup> 位于韦斯特曼纳埃亚尔的一座山崖，因山脊上有一条凹痕，故得名。

<sup>21</sup> 今雷克雅未克附近，提到的沼泽地则是 Mosfellsheiði.

<sup>22</sup> 字面义‘Fire house’，指的就是房子的正厅，古时在此处生火保暖。

Ingólf var frægastr allra landnámsmanna, því at hann kom hér at óbyggðu landi ok byggði fyrstr landit. Gerðu þat aðrir landnámsmenn eftir hans dæmum.

Ingolf was the most famous of all the settlers, because he came to the uninhabited land and settled first here. Other settlers came and followed his example.

### 中文意译

因戈尔夫带上死者的遗孀，回到了赫约尔莱夫岬，在那里度过了第二个冬天。第二年夏天，他沿着海岸向西航行。第三个冬天，他在奥尔弗斯河以西的地方过冬，那里后来被称作“因戈尔夫山”。那年，维菲尔和卡利在阿尔纳丘下发现了因戈尔夫的高椅支柱，阿尔纳丘在一片沼泽地的下方。

第二年春天，因戈尔夫穿过荒原，在高椅支柱冲上岸的地方驻扎下来。那年他住在雷克雅未克，他高椅的支柱至今还留在那里的厅堂里。因戈尔夫占据了大片土地，东至奥弗斯河，西至布林雅峡谷以南的赫瓦尔峡湾，北达到奥克萨河，并包括了那一带所有的岬角。

因戈尔夫是所有移民者中最出名的，因为他来到了这片荒无人烟的土地，并第一个在这里定居。其他移民者都效仿他的做法。

## 6.2 冰岛人之书（Íslendingabók）选读

冰岛人之书是由冰岛学者阿里·索吉尔松（Ari Þorgilsson）在12世纪早期编写的一部关于冰岛历史的书籍，它是关于冰岛早期历史的主要来源之一。冰岛人之书主要记载了冰岛的定居、基督教的传入以及一些著名的冰岛主教的情况。冰岛人之书正文共分为10章，第1章介绍冰岛的发现，第2章介绍冰岛法律的由来，第3章介绍冰岛议会的诞生，第4章介绍历法，第5章介绍区划，第6章介绍格林兰的发现，第7章介绍基督教的传入，第8-10章介绍冰岛的主教。在附录中，冰岛人之书介绍了这些主教的后裔以及伊林格<sup>23</sup>人和布雷扎湾人<sup>24</sup>的家谱。

本章节选了冰岛人之书的第1-3以及第7章的内容，主要介绍了早期冰岛法律、宗教等内容。部分章节有删节。

### Frá ÍSLANDS BYGGÐ

Ísland byggðist fyrst ór Norvegi á ðögum Haralda ins hárfagra<sup>25</sup>, Hálfdanarsonar ins svarta<sup>26</sup>, í þann tíð, at ætlun ok tólu þeira Teits, fóstra míns, þess manns, er ek kunna spakastan, sonar Ísleifs byskups, ok Þorkels, fóðurbróður míns, Gellissonar, er langt munði fram, ok Þuríðar Snorradóttur goða, er bæði var margspók ok óljúgfróð, er Ívarr<sup>27</sup> Ragnarssonr loðbrókar<sup>28</sup> létt drepa Eadmund inn helga Englakonung<sup>29</sup>. En þat var átta hundruð ok sjau tigum vetrar eftir burð Krists, at því er ritit er í sogu hans.

### ON THE SETTLEMENT OF ICELAND

Iceland was first settled from Norway in the days of Harald the Fairhair, son of Halfdan the Black, at that time when Ívarr, son of Ragnar Hairy-breeches, slew Saint Edmund, king of England, according to the reckoning and telling of Teit, son of Bishop Isleif and my foster father, who I consider the wisest; and of Thorkel, my uncle, son of Gelli, who remembered far back; and of Thurith, daughter of Snorri the Good, who was both very wise and truthful. And that was 874 winters after the birth of Christ, as is written in his [Edmund's] tale.

<sup>23</sup> 瑞典的一支半神话性质的王室族裔，号称是神弗雷（Freyr）的后代。他们中一些人的名字在古英语史诗《贝奥武夫》中也有记载，故在一定程度上可能是真实存在的。伊灵格人起初在瑞典活动，后来也前往挪威，其故事记载于伊林格萨迦。

<sup>24</sup> 冰岛西部的一个大型浅水海湾。

<sup>25</sup> Haraldr inn hárfagri (Harald the Fairhair), 挪威的统一者，第一任挪威国王，公元872年至930年在位。关于其的可靠记载不多，见于几部王室萨迦。

<sup>26</sup> Hálfdanr inn svarti (Halfdan the Black), 哈拉尔德之父。

<sup>27</sup> Ívarr Ragnarssonr, 又称 Ívarr inn Beinlausi (Ivarr the Boneless), “维京大军”的首领之一，拉格纳之子，率军入侵了英格兰七国。

<sup>28</sup> Ragnar Loðbrók (Ragnar Hairy-breeches), 著名维京英雄，曾在845年3月大举进攻巴黎。

<sup>29</sup> Eadmund inn helga Englakonung, 即“殉道者”埃德蒙（Edmund the Martyr），东盎格利亚王国国王，公元869年抵抗维京人进攻时被杀，但不清楚他具体是死于战场还是被俘后不屈而死。埃德蒙死后被教廷追认为圣徒。

## 中文意译

挪威人最初定居冰岛的时候，还是在“美发王”哈拉尔德治下。哈拉尔德是“黑发”哈夫丹的儿子。那时，“毛裤”拉格纳的儿子伊瓦尔杀了英格兰王埃德蒙。我的养父忒特和我说过这个故事，忒特是主教伊斯雷夫的儿子，他是我见过最有学识的人。我的叔叔名叫索科尔，是格里的儿子，他能记得很久之前的旧事；图里斯是“善人”斯诺里的女儿，她不仅十分睿智，所说的也都真实准确。我从索科尔和图里斯那里也听说了这件事，那是耶稣基督降生后的第 874 个年头。

## 语法

## 1. Í þann tíð ... er Ívarr ...

注意这里定语从句的先行词 tíð 距离 er 非常远，以至于 er 好像是单独引导了一个时间状语从句。

Ingólf hétt maðr nórænn, er sannliga er sagt, at færir fyrst þaðan til Íslands, þá er Haraldr inn hárfagri var sextán vetrar gamall, en í annat sinn fám vetrum síðar. Hann byggði suðr í Reykjavík. Þar er Ingólfshofði kallaðr fyr austan Minþakseyri<sup>30</sup>, sem hann kom fyrst á land, en þar Ingólfssfell fyr vestan olfossá<sup>31</sup>, er hann lagði sína eigu á síðan.

Í þann tíð var Ísland viði vaxit á milli fjalls ok fjöru. Þá varú hér menn kristnir, þeir er Norðmenn kalla Papa, en þeir fóru síðan á braut, af því at þeir vildu eigi vera hér við heiðna menn, ok létu eftir bækr írskar ok bjöllur ok bagla. Af því mátti skilja, at þeir váru menn írskir.

En þá varð fór manna mikil mjók út hingat ór Norvegi, til þess unz konungrinn Haraldr bannaði, af því at honum þótti landauðn nema. Þá sættust þeir á þat, at hvern maðr skyldi gjalda konungi fimm aura, sá er eigi væri frá því skil- iðr ok þaðan færi hingat. En svá er sagt, at Haraldr væri sjau tigi vetrar konungr ok yrði átræðr. Þau hafa upphof verit at gjaldi því, er nú er kallat landaurar, en þar galzt stundum meira, en stundum minna, unz Óláfr inn digri<sup>32</sup> gerði skírt, at hvern maðr skyldi gjalda konungi hálfa mörk, sá er færi á milli Norvegs ok Íslands, nema konur eða þeir menn, er hann næmi frá. Svá sagði Þorkell oss Gellissonr.

There was a Norwegian named Ingolf, who is said truthfully to first travelled from there to Iceland when Haraldr the Fairhair was sixteen years old, and a second time a few years later. He lived to the south in Reykjavík. The place to the east of Minthakseyri where Ingolf first came ashore, is called Ingolfs-headland, but where he took possession afterward to the west of Olfoss, is called Ingolf-mount.

At that time, Iceland was covered by forests between the mountains and the shore. Christians were here then, whom the Norsemen call Papar, but then they left because they did not want to be here alongside heathen people. They left Irish books, bells and croziers, from which man can tell that they were Irishmen.

And then began a very great migration of people here from Norway, until King Harald forbade it because he thought that his land would be deserted otherwise. Then they settled on it that whoever traveled from Norway to Iceland should pay the king five ounces of silver, and he would not be exempt from this. And it is said that King Harald was king for seventy years, and was turning eighty years old. They have been the origin for the payment which is now called “land-tax”, and sometimes more was paid for that and sometimes less, until Olaf the Stout made it clear that each person who would travel between Norway and Iceland must pay the king half a mark, except women or men who he took with him. So Thorkel Gellisson told me.

<sup>30</sup> 古港口名，应在冰岛南部，具体位置不详。

<sup>31</sup> 河流名，位于冰岛西南部。

<sup>32</sup> Óláfr inn digri (Olaf the Stout), 即“圣王”奥拉夫二世，挪威国王，公元 995 年至 1000 年在位。1030 年 7 月 29 日的斯蒂克莱斯塔德战役中战死被封圣。

## 中文意译

据说是有个名叫因戈尔夫的挪威人第一次到达了冰岛，那时“美发王”哈拉尔德年方十六。因戈尔夫几年后又成功到达了冰岛。他住在雷克雅未克的南边。因戈尔夫最初登陆的地方在闵撒克堤的东边，现在称为“因戈尔夫岬”，而他后来据为己有的土地则在奥弗斯河西边，今称“因戈尔夫山”。

那时，冰岛尚未有人烟，山和海岸之间尽是密林。曾有信基督教的爱尔兰僧侣到过岛上，挪威人称他们为“巴帕尔”(Papar)，但他们不愿和异教徒为伍，于是离开了。他们留下了爱尔兰的书籍、钟和牧杖，正是这些物件证明了他们爱尔兰人的身份。

接着，挪威人开始大规模地移民到这里，但后来哈拉尔德国王担心挪威土地会因此荒废，下令禁止了这一行为。之后他们达成了一项约定：凡是从挪威前去冰岛的人就必须向国王缴纳 5 盎司的银两，任何人都不能免除。据说哈拉尔德当了 70 年的国王，快满 80 岁了。这笔钱就是后来所谓“土地税”的前身，土地税时高时低，没有定数，直到奥拉夫二世明确规定每个来往于挪威和冰岛之间的人都要向国王缴纳价值半马克 (4 盎司) 银子的税赋，但与之随行的女人和手下除外。这就是我的叔叔索克尔·格里斯松告诉我的故事。

## 语法

## 1. hafa upphof verit at gjaldi því

我们已在许多地方见过 upphaf 接属格的情况，如 upphaf þeirar sögu, upphaf vers 等。upphaf 有时也可以接 at 或 á 表示相同的意思的。upphof at gjaldi ‘origins of the payment’, upphaf at kvæði ‘beginning of the story’.

## 2. sá er eigi væri frá því skiliðr ok þaðan færí hingat

这里的定语从句和英文的习惯不一致，直译为‘who would never be separated from this and travel from here’. 从逻辑上来说，最好应将 eigi væri frá því skiliðr 放到主句中。这里的 frá því 指的是税赋。

FRÁ LAGASETNING OK ALÞINGISSETNING<sup>33</sup>

## ON THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE LAW AND ALTHING

En þá er Ísland var víða byggt orðit, þá hafði maðr austrænn fyrst lög út hingat ór Norvegi, sá er Úlfjótr hét, svá sagði Teitr oss, ok váru þá Úlfjótslög kölluð, en þau váru flest sett at því, sem þá váru Gulaþingslög eða ráð Þorleifs ins spaka Hörða-Kárasonar váru til, hvar við skyldi auka eða af nema eða annan veg setja. En svá er sagt, at Grímr geitskór væri fóstbróðir hans, sá er kannaði Ísland allt at ráði hans, áðr alþingi væri átt.

Alþingi var sett at ráði Úlfjóts ok allra landsmanna, þar er nú er, en áðr var þing á Kjalarne. En maðr hafði sekr orðit of þræls morð eða leysings, sá er land átti í Bláskóum. Land þat varð síðan allsherjarfé, en þat lögðu landsmenn til alþingis neyzlu. Af því er þar almenning at viða til alþingis í skóum ok á heiðum hagi til hrossahafnar.

And when Iceland had become widely settled, a Norwegian called Ulfjot first brought the laws here from Norway, as Teit told us, and they were called the *Laws of Ulfjot*. But those laws were mostly arranged as *Laws of Gulathing* or the counsel of Thorleif Hortha-Karason the Wise, where something had to be expanded or abolished or arranged in another way. And it is said that Grim the Goat-hair was Ulfjot's foster brother, who explored the whole of Iceland on his advice before the Althing was established.

Althing was established by the advice of Ulfjot and all the people of the land, in the place where it is now, but before it was on Kjalarne. A man who owned land in Bláskógar has been outlawed for killing a slave or freedman. That land became general property, and the people of the land set it to the use of the Althing. Therefore it is public land to cut down wood for the Althing in the forests and to graze horses on the heaths.

<sup>33</sup> Alþingi (All-Thing), 即全体议会庭，或音译为阿尔庭。冰岛的议事机构，后作为法律机关。

## 中文意译

忒特跟我们说，当冰岛全境已有人定居后，一位名叫乌尔夫约特的挪威人首先从挪威带来了法律，它们被称为《乌尔夫约特法典》。可这些法律大多和挪威的《古拉庭法典》相仿，又或是照搬了挪威智者索雷夫·霍尔他-卡拉松的意见，因此有些地方需要扩充，删减或重排。乌尔夫约特据说有个养兄弟叫“山羊发”格里姆，他在乌尔夫约特的建议下游历了冰岛，（可能是为了阿尔庭物色地方）。

阿尔庭是在乌尔夫约特和全体冰岛人的建议下设立的，现在的议会庭沿用其旧址（即今辛格韦德利，Þingvellir）。不过最早阿尔庭则在卡拉尔涅斯地区（今雷克雅未克教区）。布劳斯科加（辛格韦德利旧称）的领主因为杀了一个奴隶还是自由民而被放逐，他的土地就充公用于建设阿尔庭。公民可以在布劳斯科加的森林伐木以供阿尔庭之用，也可在原野上放马。

## 语法

## 1. var víða byggd orðit

orðit, verða ‘turn, become’ 的过去分词，这里用系动词作为助动词表示完成时，因为 verða 可被理解为位移和变化的动作。

## 2. almenning

法律术语，指的是公有的土地，通常指允许任何人放牧的草场之类。

## FRÁ ÞVÍ, ER KRISTNI KOM TIL ÍSLANDS.

## ON THE COMING OF CHRISTIANITY TO ICELAND

Óláfr konungr Tryggvasonr<sup>34</sup>, Óláfssonar, Haraldssonar ins hárfagra, kom kristni í Norveg ok á Ísland. Hann sendi hingat til lands prest þann, er hét Þangbrandr ok hér kenndi mōnnum kristni ok skírði þá alla, er við trú tóku. En þeir váru þó fleiri, er í gegn mæltu ok neittu. En þá er hann hafði hér verit einn vetr eða tvá, þá fór hann á braut ok hafði vegit hér tvá menn eða þrjá, þá er hann hófðu nítt. En hann sagði konunginum Óláfi, er hann kom austr, allt þat, er hér hafði yfir hann gingit, ok lét ɔrvænt, at hér myndi kristni enn takast. En hann varð við þat reiðr mjök ok ætlaði at láta meiða eða drepa ossa landa fyrir, þá er þar váru austr. En þat sumar it sama kómu útan heðan þeir Gizurr ok Hjalti<sup>35</sup> ok þágu þá undan við konunginn ok hétu honum umbsýslu sinni til á nýjaleik, at hér yrði enn við kristninni tekit, ok létu sér eigi annars ván en þar myndi hlýða.

King Olaf, son of Tryggvi, son of Olaf, son of Harald the Fairhair, brought Christianity to Norway and Iceland. He sent hither a priest who was called Thangbrand and preached Christianity to people here and baptized everyone who took the faith. But there were many who spoke against it and refused it. And when he had been there for a year or two, he left after killing two or three men here, who had denied him. And when he came east he told King Olaf everything that had happened to him, and let him believe that Christianity would not prevail yet. And the King became very angry and decided to injure or kill our countrymen who were there in Norway. But in the same summer, Gizur and Hjalti traveled out from here and convinced the king not to and promised him an arrangement of a new attempt, so that Christianity might still be accepted here and that they expected nothing but to succeed.

## 中文意译

奥拉夫·特里格维松——奥拉夫·哈拉尔德松的孙子，“美发王”哈拉尔德的曾孙——第一次将基督教带到冰岛。他派遣了一名叫作桑格布朗德的传教士去岛上传播福音，又给所有皈依基督的人施洗。可是，岛上有很多人不接受基督教，还出言诋毁它。桑格布朗德在岛上传教两年，终于在杀死两个忤逆他的人后离开了冰岛。他向国王讲述了自己的遭遇，并告诉国王基督教还无法在岛上传开来。国王听后勃然大怒，决定要毁伤或是处死当时在挪威的冰岛人。幸而在那个夏天，齐泽尔和希雅提前去挪威打消了国王的想法，并保证他们会继续在岛上传教，且这一次只会成功，不会失败。

<sup>34</sup> Óláfr Tryggvasonr, 史称奥拉夫一世。

<sup>35</sup> Gizurr, 指 Gizurr Teitssonr, 即杀死贡纳尔的冰岛首领。Hjalti, 指 Hjalti Skeggasonr, 亦为冰岛首领。

## 语法

- lét ɔrvænt, at hér myndi kristni enn takast lét ɔrvænt, 省略了宾语 hann, ‘make him (the king) disbelieving’. takast, taka 的反身式，表示“成功，有效”。
- þágu þá undan við konunginn þágu, þiggja ‘accept’ 的复数过去式，þiggja 有时表示“通过请求获得某物”，因此它几乎类似于‘obtain, make succeed’. þiggja e-t undan 是一个衍生的短语，其含义类似于‘get someone/something relieved from/free from’，本句中其宾语是 konunginn，并且额外添加了介词 við ‘against’ 表示远离的对象（其宾语省略了），表示‘get the king relieved from (the thought of injuring or killing ...)’。

En it næsta sumar eftir fóru þeir austan ok prestr sá, er Þormóðr hét, ok kómu þá í Vestmannaeyjar<sup>36</sup>, er túv vikur váru af sumri, ok hafði allt farizt vel at. Svá kvað Teitr þann segja, er sjálfr var þar.

En þeir fóru þegar inn til meginlands ok síðan til alþingis ok gátu at Hjalta, at hann var eftir í Laugardali með tólfmaðnunum<sup>37</sup>, af því at hann hafði áðr sekr orðit fjörbaugsmaðr it næsta sumar á alþingi of goðgá. En þat var til þess haft, at hann kvað at Lögbergi<sup>38</sup> kviðling þenna:

Vilk eigi goð geyja.  
Grey þykki mér Freyja.

En þeir Gizurr fóru, unz þeir kómu í stað þann í hjá ólfossvatni, er kallaðr er Vellankatla<sup>39</sup>, ok gerðu orð þaðan til þings, at á mótt þeim skyldi koma allir fulltingsmenn þeira, af því at þeir hofðu spurt, at andskotar þeira vildi verja þeim vígi þingvöllinn. En fyrr en þeir færi þaðan, þá kom þar ríðandi Hjalti ok þeir, er eftir váru með honum. En síðan riðu þeir á þingit, ok kómu áðr á mótt þeim frændr þeira ok vinir, sem þeir hofðu æst. En inir heiðnu menn hurfu saman með alvæpni, ok hafði svá nær, at þeir myndi berjast, at eigi of sá á milli.

Then in the next summer, they and a priest named Thor-mod came to Vestmannaeyjar when ten weeks of the summer had passed, and they all had a prosperous journey. Thus spoke Teit, who was there himself.

And they traveled from there to the mainland and then to Althing and heard from Hjalti that he was back in Laugardali with twelve men since he had been convicted lesser outlawry for blasphemy the previous summer at the Althing. And the conviction was done because he had recited this at the Law Rock:

I will not decry the God.  
I think Freyja is a dog.

But Gizurr and his companions traveled until they came to the place near Ölfossvatn, which is called Vellankatla, and they sent word from there to the þing that all their supporters should come to meet them, because they had found out that their opponents would keep them away from the Thing-field by force. And before they left there, Hjalti and those who were with him came to them riding. And then they rode to the Thing, and their kinsmen and friends whom they had requested had already come to meet them. But the heathen people gathered together with full arms, and it has become so close to a point that they would fight each other and no one could see a way out.

## 中文意译

第二年，他们从挪威来到冰岛，还带来了一位名叫索尔莫德的传教士。在夏天过去十周后，他们抵达韦斯特曼纳埃亚尔，一路上诸事顺利。忒特当时就在那里，于是将他亲眼所见告诉了我。

他们一行随即前往冰岛大陆，然后来到阿尔庭。这时他们得知希雅提与十二个人一起已回到了劳加达尔谷，因为希雅提一年前在阿尔庭上因亵渎神明而被放逐。他的罪行是在法律石前朗诵了这首诗：

<sup>36</sup> 冰岛西南部岛屿。

<sup>37</sup> 从上下文来看，希雅提一行到达冰岛后应短暂与齐泽尔分开（可能是为了躲避风头），之后再一起前往阿尔庭。

<sup>38</sup> 法律石，冰岛西南部的一块突出岩石，阿尔庭召开的地点，发言人在石上演说。

<sup>39</sup> 一处温泉的名字，在阿尔庭附近。

基督圣名我岂敢亵渎，  
弗蕾雅却是一条牲畜。

齐泽尔一行随后来到奥弗斯湖边的韦拉卡特拉温泉，从那里放出消息，要求他们的支持者都前来会面，因为他们已经获知对手会用武力阻止他们进入阿尔庭。在齐泽尔等人离开温泉之前，希雅提和他的同伴已骑马赶到加入他们。众人随后一起前往阿尔庭，他们所拜托的亲戚朋友都已在那里迎接他们。而异教徒则全副武装地聚集在一起，双方剑拔弩张，眼看局势就要一发不可收拾。

### 语法

1. *fjorbaugsmaðr fjorbaugr* ‘life-money’，是一笔由已决犯付给法庭的钱。一般而言，这类罪犯罪行较轻，故可以付钱“抵罪偿命”。如果罪犯拒绝付钱，他就被终身永久放逐 (full outlawry)，这种惩罚称为 *skóggangr* ‘wood-going’，终身放逐者则叫作 *skóarmaðr* ‘wood-man’，他们被逐出人类社会，事实上相当于死刑。反之，愿意付钱的轻罪犯被称为 *fjorbaugsmaðr*，他们只被要求离开国家三年并处没收财产。这种惩罚则叫作“小放逐” (lesser outlawry)，古诺尔斯语作 *fjorbaugsgarðr* ‘life-money fence’。这个词中的 *garðr* ‘fence, yard’ 指的是一个限定的区域，由于罪犯已经支付赎金，他在离开国家前待在此区域内是安全的，故而 *fjorbaugsgarðr* 成为了小放逐的代名词。
2. *goðgá* 由 *goð* 和 *gá* 组成，*gá* 原意为“犬吠”。
3. *þat var til þess haft* 其中 *haft* 是 *hafa* 的过去分词，但 *hafa* 在这里的含义与 *hæfa* 合流，原意是 ‘aim; hit’. *vera til þess haft* 从而有衍生义 ‘to be the reason for sth.’ *hafa* 的这个含义亦可参考尼亞爾薩迦中贡纳尔的话 ‘hefir hverr til síns ágætis nökkt’.

En annan dag eftir gingu þeir Gizur og Hjalti til Lögbergis ok báru þar upp erendi sín. En svá er sagt, at þat bæri frá, hvé vel þeir mæltu. En þat gerðist af því, at þar nefndi annarr maðr at qðrum vátta, ok sögðust hvárir ór lögum við aðra, inir kristnu menn ok inir heiðnu, ok gingu síðan frá Lögbergi. Þá báðu inir kristnu menn Hall á Síðu<sup>40</sup>, at hann skyldi lög þeira upp segja, þau er kristninni skyldi fylgja. En hann leystist því undan við þá, at hann keypti at Þorgeiri lögsgumanni<sup>41</sup>, at hann skyldi upp segja, en hann var enn þá heiðinn. En síðan er menn kómu í búðir, þá lagðist hann niðr Þorgeirr ok breiddi feld sinn á sik ok hvílði þann dag allan ok nóttina eftir ok kvað ekki orð. En of morguninn eftir settist hann upp ok gerði orð, at menn skyldi ganga til Lögbergis.

And the next day Gizur and Hjalti went to the Law Rock and announced their mission there. And it is said that it was extraordinary how well they spoke. And because of that, it turned out that one person named another as a witness, and both the Christian and the heathen people declared others outlawry, and they left the Law Rock. Then the Christian men asked Hall of Síða to proclaim their laws, which the Christians should follow. But he relieved himself from this by making an agreement with Thorgeir the law-speaker, that he should present them, though he was still heathen then. And then when everyone returned to their abodes, Thorgeir laid himself down, spread his cloak over himself, rested there all that day and the following night and did not say a word. But the next morning he got up and made the announcement that everyone should come to the Law Rock.

### 中文意译

第二天齐泽尔和希雅提前往法律石，在那里宣布了国王的使命。两人口若悬河，引得惊叹连连。然而，人们确因此争吵起来，基督徒和异教徒们各自传唤证人，指责对方不守法律，最后不欢而散。基督

<sup>40</sup> Síðu-Hallr Þorsteinssonr, 冰岛贵族、首领，早期皈依基督教的冰岛首领。

<sup>41</sup> 即 Þorgeirr Ljósvetningagoði Þorkelssonr, 冰岛 9 世纪末至 10 世纪初的宣法官 (Lawspeaker)。宣法官是斯堪的纳维亚的一种特殊法律职业，他们一般由博学之士担任，在庭上引述法律条文，并为人辩护。当时 Síðu-Hallr Þorsteinssonr 是基督徒的宣法官，而 Þorgeirr Ljósvetningagoði 则是异教徒的宣法官。

徒们于是要求他们的宣法官，西萨的霍尔，为他们宣扬基督徒的律法。但霍尔却和当时还信多神教的宣法官索哥尔达成了协定，转而让他代表基督徒们发言。当众人散去后，索哥尔躺下身来，用斗篷蒙住自己的身体，一人独自沉思了一天一夜。第二天早上，他召集所有人来到法律石集会。

### 语法

- at þat bæri frá, hvé vel þeir mæltu bæri 是 bera 的虚拟式，这里是其无人称结构（þat 是几乎形式的宾语）。bera 此时有 ‘it comes to a place’ 的含义，bæri frá 于是衍生出 “超过...” 的意思。
- annarr maðr at qðrum 这里的 at 表示无间隔的接续，类似于英文的 ‘one after another’，其整体是动词短语 nefna vátta • summon witness’ 的宾语。
- keypti at Porgeiri lögsgumanni, at ... kaupa ‘buy’ 在这里也可以表示 “达成某种协议”，kaupa e-t at e-m ‘make a bargain with someone’.

En þá hóf hann tólu sína upp, er menn kómu þar, ok sagði, at honum þótti þá komit hag manna í ónytt efni, ef menn skyldi eigi hafa allir lög ein á landi hér, ok talði fyr monnum á marga vega, at þat skyldi eigi láta verða, ok sagði, at þat myndi at því ósætti verða, er vísaván var, at þær barsmíðir gerðust á milli manna, er landit eyddist af. Hann sagði frá því, at konungar ór Norvegi ok ór Danmörku hofðu haft ófrið ok orrostur á milli sín langa tíð, til þess unz landsmenn gerðu frið á milli þeira, þótt þeir vildu eigi. En þat ráð gerðist svá, at af stundu sendust þeir gersemar á milli, enda hélt friðr sá, meðan þeir lifðu. ‘En nú þykkir mér þat ráð,’ kvað hann, ‘at vér látim ok eigi þá ráða, er mest vilja í gegn gangast, ok miðlum svá mál á milli þeira, at hvártveggju hafi nakkvat síns máls, ok hoфum allir ein lög ok einn sið. Þat mun verða satt, er vér slítum í sundr lögini, at vér munum slíta ok friðinn.’ En hann lauk svá málí sínu, at hvártveggju játtu því, at allir skyldi ein lög hafa, þau sem hann réði upp at segja.

Þá var þat mælt í lögum, at allir menn skyldi kristnir vera ok skírn taka, þeir er áðr váru óskírðir á landi hér. En of barnaútburð<sup>42</sup> skyldu standa in fornu lög ok of hrossakjötsát. Skyldu menn blóta á laun, ef vildu en varða fjørbaugsgarðr, er vástum of kæmi við. En síðar fám vetrum var sú heiðni af numin sem önnur.

Þenna atburð sagði Teitr oss at því, er kristni kom á Ísland. En Óláfr Tryggvason fellit sama sumar at sogu Sæmundar prests<sup>43</sup>. Þá barðist hann við Svein Haraldsson<sup>44</sup>

And he began his speech when the people arrived there, and said that it seemed to him that man's condition would turn into ill state, if men do not all share one law here in this country, and spoke before the people in various ways, and that it should never be allowed to happen. He said that this would turn into discord, which was sure to happen, that fighting would take place between people and the land would be laid waste. He spoke about how the kings of Norway and Denmark had had disagreements and wars between themselves for a long time, until their countrymen made peace between them, even though they didn't want it. And the settlement is established in the way that they sent each other treasures at times, and then the peace held, while they lived. ‘And now I have made up my mind that’, he said, ‘we also should not let the way prevail, which leads to the greatest corruption, and let us make a compromise between them, so that both preserve their way to some extent, and all have one law and custom. It shall be true that when we break the law apart, we will also break our peace.’ So He closed his speech, that both sides agreed all would have one law, which he suggested aloud.

Then it is declared in log that all men should be Christian and take baptism, who had not been baptised here in this country. But the old law about child exposure and eating of horse meat will last. Men should sacrifice in secret, if they wished and wanted to avoid outlawry, which (would happen) if witnesses were at hand. And a few years later, that heathen practice was taken away like the others.

Teit told us this circumstance of how Christianity came to Iceland. And Olaf Tryggvason fell the same summer, according to the account of Saemund the priest. He fought then

<sup>42</sup> 即弃婴，在当时将有残疾或无力抚养的婴儿遗弃一般不受法律处罚。

<sup>43</sup> 即 Sæmundr Sigfússon (1056-1133)，冰岛牧师、学者，又称 Sæmundr inn fróði ‘Saemund the Learned’.

Danakonung ok Óláf inn sánska<sup>45</sup>, Eiríksson at Uppsólum Svíakonungs, ok Eirík, er síðan var jarl at Norvegi, Hákonarson<sup>46</sup>. Þat var hundrað ok þremr tigum vetrar eftir dráp Eadmundar, en þúsund eftir burð Krists at alþýðu tali.

against King Svein Haraldsson of Denmark, Olaf the Swede, who was the son of Eirik and king of the Swedes at Uppsala, and Eirík Hakonarson who was later the jarl of Norway. That was one hundred and thirty years after the death of Edmund, and a thousand after the birth of Christ according to the common tale.

### 中文意译

人们逐渐到齐后，索哥儿开始了他的演说。他认为，假如这里的人们如果不遵守一套法律，而是各执一词的话，就势必会引起纷争和部落间的战争，而那时岛民的处境就会愈发艰难，土地也将荒废。他引证了挪威和丹麦国王的例子，这两个国王长期征战不休，最后迫不得已才达成和解。然而这种和平不过是靠不时的互赠礼金来维系，等到国王一死，便化为泡影。“我现在已经明白，”他说到：“我们绝不能允许不利于我们前途的事情发生。我们当在两种宗教间达成和解，统一宗教和习俗，但允许双方都保留一定的习惯自由。毫无疑问的是，假如我们分裂了律法，也势必要分裂国家。”索哥尔的陈词让双方都同意要统一律法。

于是，法律规定当时未受洗的人都应该改信基督并接受洗礼。但是，过去关于弃婴和食用马肉的旧律法还可以延续。如果人们想要祭祀日耳曼的神又不想犯法，那就应该在私下里祭祀。假如有证人证明拜异神的，则要处以小放逐。然而几年后，这些异教的习俗都逐渐被取缔了。

这就是忒特所述的基督教来到冰岛的过程。据牧师赛蒙德所说，那年是奥拉夫一世驾崩的一年。奥拉夫一世一生征战无数，与丹麦的国王斯文·哈拉尔德松、乌普萨拉的瑞典国王奥拉夫·埃里克松以及后来的挪威伯爵埃里克·哈康松都有交手。这是埃德蒙殉道后的130年，也即大众所说的基督诞生后的一千年。

### 语法

- ráða upp ráða 在这里的意思更倾向于“读”，加 upp 表示 ‘read aloud’.
- váttum of kæmi við koma e-u við 是固定短语，表示 ‘bring about/be able to do sth.’.

<sup>44</sup> Sveinn Haraldrssonr, 绅号 tjúguskegg ‘Forkbeard’, 丹麦克王，986-1014年在位。

<sup>45</sup> 即 Óláfr Eiríkssonr skautkonungr, 瑞典历史上首位有确切记载的国王“胜利者埃里克”（Eiríkr inn sigsæli）的儿子，瑞典第二位国王，995-1022年在位。

<sup>46</sup> 即 Eiríkr Hákonarsonr, 挪威贵族，1000-1012年任挪威总督。

# 索引

afl	hóf, 174	skópu, 87, 88
afla, 88	hverfa	skjóta
aldr	hurfu, 172	skaut, 102
alda, 86	hvarf, 101	skutu, 100
bagall	hönd	skína
bagla, 169	hendi, 87	skein, 87
baglar, 160	hendr, 102	slá
bjóðr	koma	slegin, 95
bjóðum, 87	kvámu, 89	slíta
bregða	leggja	sleit, 101
brá, 100	lögðu, 88	snær
byggja	lúka	snævi, 95
bygði, 86	lauk, 174	sníva(snjóva)
drífa	muna	snivin, 95
drifin, 95	man, 86	sonr
eiga	munr	synir, 87
átti, 87	muni, 97	spjall
fara	mogr	spjoll, 85
farizt, 172	megir, 96	standa
flóa	njóta	stóð, 101, 105
flóuð, 95	nautka, 106	strá
flúga	nár	?sánir, 95
flaug, 102	nás, 94	stíga
fá	orðtak	steig, 103, 104
fái, 103	orðtök, 102	sté, 104
fœða	reka	sök
foedda, 86	rekit, 106	sökum, 93
gera	saga	tóng
gert, 99, 100, 106, 121–124, 126, 127	søgu, 99	tangir, 88
gørðu, 88	segja	uðr(unnr)
gjof	sagðak, 96	unnir, 86
gjafar, 105	segðu, 95	verja
gróa	sjá	varði, 164
gróin, 87	sá, 100	verpa
hafa	sé, 101	varp, 87
haft, 172	sét, 105	verða
hefja	skapa	yrði, 171
		vinna
		unnit, 100

---

vættki	ámáttigr	þokt, 103
vettugis, 89	ámátkar, 89	þiggja
yppa	óss	þegit, 100
ypðu, 87	ossa, 171	þágu, 171
á	ýtar	þvá
árinnar, 103	ýta, 93	þvær, 97
	þakja	

## 参考文献

- [1] Matthew Townend. “Óttarr svarti, Höfuðlausn 8”. In: Skaldic Poetry of the Scandinavian Middle Ages 1 (2012), pp. 750–750.